

---

# **Minimalist Data Wrangling with Python**

*Release v0.5.2*

**Marek Gagolewski**

**2022-07-06T20:38:16+1000**

**Dr habil. Marek Gagolewski**  
Deakin University, Australia  
Warsaw University of Technology, Poland  
<https://www.gagolewski.com>

Copyright (C) 2022 by Marek Gagolewski. Some rights reserved.

This open access textbook is, and will remain, freely available for everyone's enjoyment. It is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License (CC BY-NC-ND 4.0).

Its most recent version can be accessed at <https://datawranglingpy.gagolewski.com/> (both in PDF and HTML). Any bug/typos reports/fixes are appreciated.

---

# **Contents**

---

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>Preface</b>   | <b>xv</b> |
| 0.1 The Art of Data Wrangling . . . . .                              | xv        |
| 0.2 Aims, Scope, and Design Philosophy . . . . .                     | xvi       |
| 0.2.1 We Need Maths . . . . .  | xvii      |
| 0.2.2 We Need Some Computing Environment . . . . .                   | xviii     |
| 0.2.3 We Need Data and Domain Knowledge . . . . .                    | xix       |
| 0.3 Structure . . . . .  | xix       |
| 0.4 The Rules . . . . .  | xxi       |
| 0.5 About the Author . . . . .                                       | xxiii     |
| 0.6 Acknowledgements . . . . .                                       | xxiii     |
| <b>I Introducing Python</b>  | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>1 Getting Started with Python</b>                                 | <b>3</b>  |
| 1.1 Installing Python . . . . .                                      | 3         |
| 1.2 Working with Jupyter Notebooks . . . . .                         | 3         |
| 1.2.1 Launching JupyterLab . . . . .                                 | 5         |
| 1.2.2 First Notebook . . . . .                                       | 5         |
| 1.2.3 More Cells . . . . .   | 5         |
| 1.2.4 Edit vs Command Mode . . . . .                                 | 7         |
| 1.2.5 Markdown Cells . . . . .                                       | 7         |
| 1.3 The Best Note-Taking App . . . . .                               | 8         |
| 1.4 Initialising Each Session and Getting Example Data (!) . . . . . | 9         |
| 1.5 Exercises . . . . .  | 11        |
| <b>2 Scalar Types and Control Structures in Python</b>               | <b>13</b> |
| 2.1 Scalar Types . . . . .   | 13        |
| 2.1.1 Logical Values . . . . .                                       | 13        |
| 2.1.2 Numeric Values . . . . .                                       | 13        |
| Arithmetic Operators . . . . .                                       | 14        |
| Creating Named Variables . . . . .                                   | 15        |
| 2.1.3 Character Strings . . . . .                                    | 16        |
| F-Strings (Formatted String Literals) . . . . .                      | 16        |
| 2.2 Calling Built-in Functions . . . . .                             | 17        |
| 2.2.1 Positional and Keyword Arguments . . . . .                     | 17        |
| 2.2.2 Modules and Packages . . . . .                                 | 18        |

|           |  |           |
|-----------|--|-----------|
| 2.2.3     | Slots and Methods . . . . .  | 18        |
| 2.3       | Controlling Program Flow . . . . .   | 19        |
| 2.3.1     | Relational and Logical Operators . . . . .                                     | 19        |
| 2.3.2     | The <code>if</code> Statement . . . . .  | 20        |
| 2.3.3     | The <code>while</code> Loop . . . . .  | 22        |
| 2.4       | Defining Own Functions . . . . .   | 22        |
| 2.5       | Exercises . . . . .  | 24        |
| <b>3</b>  | <b>Sequential and Other Types in Python</b>                                    | <b>25</b> |
| 3.1       | Sequential Types . . . . .   | 25        |
| 3.1.1     | Lists . . . . .  | 25        |
| 3.1.2     | Tuples . . . . .   | 26        |
| 3.1.3     | Ranges . . . . .   | 26        |
| 3.1.4     | Strings (Again) . . . . .  | 27        |
| 3.2       | Working with Sequences . . . . .   | 27        |
| 3.2.1     | Extracting Elements . . . . .  | 27        |
| 3.2.2     | Slicing . . . . .  | 28        |
| 3.2.3     | Modifying Elements . . . . .   | 29        |
| 3.2.4     | Searching for Elements . . . . .   | 30        |
| 3.2.5     | Arithmetic Operators . . . . .   | 30        |
| 3.3       | Dictionaries . . . . .   | 31        |
| 3.4       | Iterable Types . . . . .   | 32        |
| 3.4.1     | The <code>for</code> Loop . . . . .  | 32        |
| 3.4.2     | Tuple Assignment . . . . .   | 34        |
| 3.4.3     | Argument Unpacking (*) . . . . .   | 36        |
| 3.4.4     | Variadic Arguments: <code>*args</code> and <code>**kwargs</code> (*) . . . . . | 36        |
| 3.5       | Object References and Copying (*) . . . . .                                    | 37        |
| 3.5.1     | Copying References . . . . .   | 37        |
| 3.5.2     | Pass by Assignment . . . . .   | 38        |
| 3.5.3     | Object Copies . . . . .  | 38        |
| 3.5.4     | Modify In Place or Return a Modified Copy? . . . . .                           | 38        |
| 3.6       | Further Reading . . . . .  | 40        |
| 3.7       | Exercises . . . . .  | 40        |
| <b>II</b> | <b>Unidimensional Data</b>   | <b>43</b> |
| <b>4</b>  | <b>Unidimensional Numeric Data and Their Empirical Distribution</b>            | <b>45</b> |
| 4.1       | Creating Vectors in <code>numpy</code> . . . . .                               | 46        |
| 4.1.1     | Enumerating Elements . . . . .   | 47        |
| 4.1.2     | Arithmetic Progressions . . . . .  | 48        |
| 4.1.3     | Repeating Values . . . . .   | 49        |
| 4.1.4     | <code>numpy.r_</code> (*) . . . . .  | 50        |
| 4.1.5     | Generating Pseudorandom Variates . . . . .                                     | 50        |
| 4.1.6     | Loading Data from Files . . . . .  | 51        |
| 4.2       | Mathematical Notation . . . . .  | 51        |

|          |  |           |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 4.3      | Inspecting the Data Distribution with Histograms . . . . .                     | 52        |
| 4.3.1    | heights: A Bell-Shaped Distribution . . . . .                                  | 53        |
| 4.3.2    | income: A Right-Skewed Distribution . . . . .                                  | 54        |
| 4.3.3    | How Many Bins? . . . . .   | 55        |
| 4.3.4    | peds: A Bimodal Distribution (Already Binned) . . . . .                        | 58        |
| 4.3.5    | matura: A Bell-Shaped Distribution (Almost) . . . . .                          | 59        |
| 4.3.6    | marathon (Truncated – Fastest Runners): A Left-Skewed Distribution . . . . .   | 60        |
| 4.3.7    | Log-scale and Heavy-Tailed Distributions . . . . .                             | 61        |
| 4.3.8    | Cumulative Counts and the Empirical Cumulative Distribution Function . . . . . | 63        |
| 4.4      | Exercises . . . . .  | 65        |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Processing Unidimensional Data</b> . . . . .                                | <b>67</b> |
| 5.1      | Aggregating Numeric Data . . . . .   | 67        |
| 5.1.1    | Measures of Location . . . . .   | 68        |
|          | Arithmetic Mean and Median . . . . .   | 68        |
|          | Sensitive to Outliers vs Robust . . . . .                                      | 69        |
|          | Sample Quantiles . . . . .   | 70        |
| 5.1.2    | Measures of Dispersion . . . . .   | 72        |
|          | Standard Deviation (and Variance) . . . . .                                    | 73        |
|          | Interquartile Range . . . . .  | 74        |
| 5.1.3    | Measures of Shape . . . . .  | 74        |
| 5.1.4    | Box (and Whisker) Plots . . . . .  | 75        |
| 5.1.5    | Further Methods (*) . . . . .  | 77        |
| 5.2      | Vectorised Mathematical Functions . . . . .                                    | 79        |
| 5.3      | Arithmetic Operators . . . . .   | 82        |
| 5.3.1    | Vector-Scalar Case . . . . .   | 82        |
| 5.3.2    | Application: Feature Scaling . . . . .   | 83        |
|          | Standardisation and Z-scores . . . . .   | 84        |
|          | Min-Max Scaling and Clipping . . . . .   | 85        |
|          | Normalisation ( $l_2$ ; Dividing by Magnitude) . . . . .                       | 86        |
|          | Normalisation ( $l_1$ ; Dividing by Sum) . . . . .                             | 86        |
| 5.3.3    | Vector-Vector Case . . . . .   | 87        |
| 5.4      | Indexing Vectors . . . . .   | 89        |
| 5.4.1    | Integer Indexing . . . . .   | 89        |
| 5.4.2    | Logical Indexing . . . . .   | 90        |
| 5.4.3    | Slicing . . . . .  | 91        |
| 5.5      | Other Operations . . . . .   | 92        |
| 5.5.1    | Cumulative Sums and Iterated Differences . . . . .                             | 92        |
| 5.5.2    | Sorting . . . . .  | 93        |
| 5.5.3    | Dealing with Tied Observations . . . . .                                       | 93        |
| 5.6      | Determining the Ordering Permutation and Ranking . . . . .                     | 94        |
| 5.6.1    | Searching for Certain Indexes (Argmin, Argmax) . . . . .                       | 95        |
| 5.6.2    | Dealing with Round-off and Measurement Errors . . . . .                        | 95        |

|            |  |            |
|------------|--|------------|
| 5.6.3      | Vectorising Scalar Operations with List Comprehensions . . . . . | 98         |
| 5.7        | Exercises . . . . .  | 99         |
| <b>6</b>   | <b>Continuous Probability Distributions</b>                      | <b>101</b> |
| 6.1        | Normal Distribution . . . . .                                    | 102        |
| 6.1.1      | Estimating Parameters . . . . .                                  | 103        |
| 6.1.2      | Data Models Are Useful . . . . .                                 | 104        |
| 6.2        | Assessing Goodness of Fit . . . . .                              | 105        |
| 6.2.1      | Comparing Cumulative Distribution Functions . . . . .            | 105        |
| 6.2.2      | Comparing Quantiles . . . . .                                    | 107        |
| 6.2.3      | Kolmogorov–Smirnov Test (*) . . . . .                            | 109        |
| 6.3        | Other Noteworthy Distributions . . . . .                         | 112        |
| 6.3.1      | Log-normal Distribution . . . . .                                | 112        |
| 6.3.2      | Pareto Distribution . . . . .                                    | 115        |
| 6.3.3      | Uniform Distribution . . . . .                                   | 119        |
| 6.3.4      | Distribution Mixtures (*) . . . . .                              | 121        |
| 6.4        | Generating Pseudorandom Numbers . . . . .                        | 123        |
| 6.4.1      | Uniform Distribution . . . . .                                   | 123        |
| 6.4.2      | Not Exactly Random . . . . .                                     | 124        |
| 6.4.3      | Sampling from Other Distributions . . . . .                      | 124        |
| 6.4.4      | Natural Variability . . . . .                                    | 126        |
| 6.4.5      | Adding Jitter (White Noise) . . . . .                            | 128        |
| 6.5        | Further Reading . . . . .  | 128        |
| 6.6        | Exercises . . . . .  | 129        |
| <b>III</b> | <b>Multidimensional Data</b>                                     | <b>131</b> |
| <b>7</b>   | <b>Multidimensional Numeric Data at a Glance</b>                 | <b>133</b> |
| 7.1        | Creating Matrices . . . . .                                      | 134        |
| 7.1.1      | Reading CSV Files . . . . .                                      | 134        |
| 7.1.2      | Enumerating Elements . . . . .                                   | 135        |
| 7.1.3      | Repeating Arrays . . . . .                                       | 136        |
| 7.1.4      | Stacking Arrays . . . . .  | 137        |
| 7.1.5      | Other Functions . . . . .  | 137        |
| 7.2        | Reshaping Matrices . . . . .                                     | 138        |
| 7.3        | Mathematical Notion . . . . .                                    | 140        |
| 7.3.1      | Row and Column Vectors . . . . .                                 | 141        |
| 7.3.2      | Transpose . . . . .  | 142        |
| 7.3.3      | Identity and Other Diagonal Matrices . . . . .                   | 142        |
| 7.4        | Visualising Multidimensional Data . . . . .                      | 143        |
| 7.4.1      | 2D Data . . . . .  | 143        |
| 7.4.2      | 3D Data and Beyond . . . . .                                     | 144        |
| 7.4.3      | Scatterplot Matrix (Pairplot) . . . . .                          | 147        |
| 7.5        | Exercises . . . . .  | 149        |
| <b>8</b>   | <b>Processing Multidimensional Data</b>                          | <b>151</b> |

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| 8.1      | From Vectors to Matrices . . . . .                                    | 151        |
| 8.1.1    | Vectorised Mathematical Functions . . . . .                           | 151        |
| 8.1.2    | Componentwise Aggregation . . . . .                                   | 152        |
| 8.1.3    | Arithmetic, Logical, and Comparison Operations . . . . .              | 152        |
|          | Matrix vs Scalar . . . . .  | 153        |
|          | Matrix vs Matrix . . . . .  | 154        |
|          | Matrix vs Any Vector . . . . .  | 156        |
|          | Row Vector vs Column Vector (*) . . . . .                             | 157        |
| 8.1.4    | Other Row and Column Transforms (*) . . . . .                         | 158        |
| 8.2      | Indexing Matrices . . . . .   | 159        |
| 8.2.1    | Slice-Based Indexing . . . . .  | 160        |
| 8.2.2    | Scalar-Based Indexing . . . . .                                       | 160        |
| 8.2.3    | Mixed Boolean/Integer Vector and Scalar/Slice Indexers . . . . .      | 161        |
| 8.2.4    | Two Vectors as Indexers (*) . . . . .                                 | 162        |
| 8.2.5    | Views on Existing Arrays (*) . . . . .                                | 163        |
| 8.2.6    | Adding and Modifying Rows and Columns . . . . .                       | 163        |
| 8.3      | Matrix Multiplication, Dot Products, and the Euclidean Norm . . . . . | 164        |
| 8.4      | Pairwise Distances and Related Methods . . . . .                      | 166        |
| 8.4.1    | The Euclidean Metric . . . . .  | 167        |
| 8.4.2    | Centroids . . . . .   | 169        |
| 8.4.3    | Multidimensional Dispersion and Other Aggregates . . . . .            | 170        |
| 8.4.4    | Fixed-Radius and K-Nearest Neighbour Search . . . . .                 | 170        |
| 8.4.5    | Spatial Search with K-d Trees . . . . .                               | 172        |
| 8.5      | Exercises . . . . .   | 174        |
| <b>9</b> | <b>Exploring Relationships Between Variables</b> . . . . .            | <b>175</b> |
| 9.1      | Measuring Correlation . . . . .                                       | 176        |
| 9.1.1    | Pearson's Linear Correlation Coefficient . . . . .                    | 176        |
|          | Perfect Linear Correlation . . . . .                                  | 177        |
|          | Strong Linear Correlation . . . . .                                   | 178        |
|          | No Linear Correlation Does Not Imply Independence . . . . .           | 180        |
|          | False Linear Correlations . . . . .                                   | 180        |
|          | Correlation Is Not Causation . . . . .                                | 180        |
| 9.1.2    | Correlation Heatmap . . . . .   | 183        |
| 9.1.3    | Linear Correlation Coefficients on Transformed Data . . . . .         | 184        |
| 9.1.4    | Spearman's Rank Correlation Coefficient . . . . .                     | 186        |
| 9.2      | Regression Tasks . . . . .  | 186        |
| 9.2.1    | K-Nearest Neighbour Regression . . . . .                              | 187        |
| 9.2.2    | From Data to (Linear) Models . . . . .                                | 189        |
| 9.2.3    | Least Squares Method . . . . .  | 190        |
| 9.2.4    | Analysis of Residuals . . . . .                                       | 193        |
| 9.2.5    | Multiple Regression . . . . .   | 197        |
| 9.2.6    | Variable Transformation and Linearisable Models (*) . . . . .         | 197        |
| 9.2.7    | Descriptive vs Predictive Power (*) . . . . .                         | 200        |
| 9.2.8    | Fitting Regression Models with <b>scikit-learn</b> (*) . . . . .      | 205        |

|       |   |     |
|-------|---|-----|
| 9.2.9 | Ill-Conditioned Model Matrices (*) . . . . .                    | 206 |
| 9.3   | Finding Interesting Combinations of Variables (*) . . . . .     | 210 |
| 9.3.1 | Dot Products, Angles, Collinearity, and Orthogonality . . . . . | 210 |
| 9.3.2 | Geometric Transformations of Points . . . . .                   | 212 |
| 9.3.3 | Matrix Inverse . . . . .  | 214 |
| 9.3.4 | Singular Value Decomposition . . . . .                          | 215 |
| 9.3.5 | Dimensionality Reduction with SVD . . . . .                     | 217 |
| 9.3.6 | Principal Component Analysis . . . . .                          | 220 |
| 9.4   | Further Reading . . . . .                                       | 223 |
| 9.5   | Exercises . . . . .   | 223 |

|           |                           |            |
|-----------|---------------------------|------------|
| <b>IV</b> | <b>Heterogeneous Data</b> | <b>225</b> |
|-----------|---------------------------|------------|

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| <b>10</b> | <b>Introducing Data Frames</b>                               | <b>227</b> |
| 10.1      | Creating Data Frames . . . . .                               | 228        |
| 10.1.1    | Data Frames are Matrix-Like . . . . .                        | 229        |
| 10.1.2    | Series . . . . .   | 230        |
| 10.1.3    | Index . . . . .  | 231        |
| 10.2      | Aggregating Data Frames . . . . .                            | 234        |
| 10.3      | Transforming Data Frames . . . . .                           | 236        |
| 10.4      | Indexing Series Objects . . . . .                            | 238        |
| 10.4.1    | Do Not Use [...] Directly . . . . .                          | 240        |
| 10.4.2    | <code>loc</code> [...] . . . . .                             | 240        |
| 10.4.3    | <code>iloc</code> [...] . . . . .                            | 242        |
| 10.4.4    | Logical Indexing . . . . .                                   | 242        |
| 10.5      | Indexing Data Frames . . . . .                               | 242        |
| 10.5.1    | <code>loc</code> [...] and <code>iloc</code> [...] . . . . . | 242        |
| 10.5.2    | Adding Rows and Columns . . . . .                            | 244        |
| 10.5.3    | Random Sampling . . . . .                                    | 244        |
| 10.5.4    | Hierarchical Indices (*) . . . . .                           | 246        |
| 10.6      | Further Operations on Data Frames . . . . .                  | 248        |
| 10.6.1    | Sorting . . . . .  | 248        |
| 10.6.2    | Stacking and Unstacking (Long and Wide Forms) . . . . .      | 252        |
| 10.6.3    | Set-Theoretic Operations . . . . .                           | 253        |
| 10.6.4    | Joining (Merging) . . . . .                                  | 255        |
| 10.6.5    | ...And (Too) Many More . . . . .                             | 258        |
| 10.7      | Exercises . . . . .  | 259        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| <b>11</b> | <b>Handling Categorical Data</b>                       | <b>261</b> |
| 11.1      | Representing and Generating Categorical Data . . . . . | 261        |
| 11.1.1    | Encoding and Decoding Factors . . . . .                | 262        |
| 11.1.2    | Categorical Data in <code>pandas</code> . . . . .      | 263        |
| 11.1.3    | Binary Data and Logical Vectors . . . . .              | 264        |
| 11.1.4    | One-Hot Encoding (*) . . . . .                         | 265        |
| 11.1.5    | Binning Numeric Data (Revisited) . . . . .             | 265        |

|           |   |            |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 11.1.6    | Generating Pseudorandom Labels . . . . .                                  | 267        |
| 11.2      | Frequency Distributions . . . . .   | 268        |
| 11.2.1    | Counting . . . . .  | 268        |
| 11.2.2    | Two-Way Contingency Tables: Factor Combinations . . . . .                 | 270        |
| 11.2.3    | Combinations of Even More Factors . . . . .                               | 271        |
| 11.3      | Visualising Factors . . . . .   | 272        |
| 11.3.1    | Bar Plots . . . . .   | 272        |
| 11.3.2    | Political Marketing and Statistics . . . . .                              | 273        |
| 11.3.3    | Pie Cha... Don't Even Trip . . . . .                                      | 276        |
| 11.3.4    | Pareto Charts (*) . . . . .   | 276        |
| 11.3.5    | Heat Maps . . . . .   | 279        |
| 11.4      | Aggregating and Comparing Factors . . . . .                               | 279        |
| 11.4.1    | A Mode . . . . .  | 279        |
| 11.4.2    | Binary Data as Logical Vectors . . . . .                                  | 280        |
| 11.4.3    | Pearson's Chi-Squared Test (*) . . . . .                                  | 281        |
| 11.4.4    | Two-Sample Pearson's Chi-Squared Test (*) . . . . .                       | 282        |
| 11.4.5    | Measuring Association (*) . . . . .                                       | 284        |
| 11.4.6    | Binned Numeric Data . . . . .   | 286        |
| 11.4.7    | Ordinal Data (*) . . . . .  | 286        |
| 11.5      | Exercises . . . . .   | 287        |
| <b>12</b> | <b>Processing Data in Groups</b>  | <b>289</b> |
| 12.1      | Basic Methods . . . . .   | 290        |
| 12.1.1    | Aggregating Data in Groups . . . . .                                      | 292        |
| 12.1.2    | Transforming Data in Groups . . . . .                                     | 293        |
| 12.1.3    | Manual Splitting Into Subgroups (*) . . . . .                             | 294        |
| 12.2      | Plotting Data in Groups . . . . .   | 296        |
| 12.2.1    | Series of Box Plots . . . . .   | 297        |
| 12.2.2    | Series of Bar Plots . . . . .   | 297        |
| 12.2.3    | Semitransparent Histograms . . . . .                                      | 298        |
| 12.2.4    | Scatterplots with Group Information . . . . .                             | 299        |
| 12.2.5    | Grid (Trellis) Plots . . . . .  | 299        |
| 12.2.6    | Comparing ECDFs with the Two-Sample Kolmogorov–Smirnov Test (*) . . . . . | 300        |
| 12.2.7    | Comparing Quantiles . . . . .   | 303        |
| 12.3      | Classification Tasks . . . . .  | 304        |
| 12.3.1    | K-Nearest Neighbour Classification . . . . .                              | 306        |
| 12.3.2    | Assessing the Quality of Predictions . . . . .                            | 309        |
| 12.3.3    | Splitting into Training and Test Sets . . . . .                           | 311        |
| 12.3.4    | Validating Many Models (Parameter Selection) . . . . .                    | 313        |
| 12.4      | Clustering Tasks . . . . .  | 315        |
| 12.4.1    | K-Means Method . . . . .  | 315        |
| 12.4.2    | Solving K-means is Hard . . . . .   | 318        |
| 12.4.3    | Lloyd's Algorithm . . . . .   | 319        |
| 12.4.4    | Local Minima . . . . .  | 319        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 12.4.5    | Random Restarts . . . . .                                      | 322        |
| 12.5      | Further Reading . . . . .                                      | 326        |
| 12.6      | Exercises . . . . .  | 326        |
| <b>13</b> | <b>Accessing Databases (An Interlude)</b>                      | <b>327</b> |
| 13.1      | Example Database . . . . .                                     | 327        |
| 13.2      | Exporting Data . . . . .                                       | 329        |
| 13.3      | Exercises on SQL vs <b>pandas</b> . . . . .                    | 330        |
| 13.3.1    | Filtering . . . . .  | 331        |
| 13.3.2    | Ordering . . . . .   | 332        |
| 13.3.3    | Removing Duplicates . . . . .                                  | 333        |
| 13.3.4    | Grouping and Aggregating . . . . .                             | 334        |
| 13.3.5    | Joining . . . . .  | 335        |
| 13.3.6    | Solutions to Exercises . . . . .                               | 337        |
| 13.4      | Closing the Database Connection . . . . .                      | 342        |
| 13.5      | Common Data Serialisation Formats for the Web . . . . .        | 342        |
| 13.6      | Working with Many Files . . . . .                              | 343        |
| 13.6.1    | File Paths . . . . .   | 344        |
| 13.6.2    | File Search . . . . .  | 345        |
| 13.7      | Exercises . . . . .  | 345        |
| <b>V</b>  | <b>Other Data Types</b>  | <b>347</b> |
| <b>14</b> | <b>Text Data</b>   | <b>349</b> |
| 14.1      | Basic String Operations . . . . .                              | 349        |
| 14.1.1    | Unicode as the Universal Encoding . . . . .                    | 350        |
| 14.1.2    | Normalising Strings . . . . .                                  | 350        |
| 14.1.3    | Substring Searching and Replacing . . . . .                    | 351        |
| 14.1.4    | Locale-Aware Services in <b>ICU</b> (*) . . . . .              | 352        |
| 14.1.5    | String Operations in <b>pandas</b> . . . . .                   | 354        |
| 14.1.6    | String Operations in <b>numpy</b> (*) . . . . .                | 356        |
| 14.2      | Working with String Lists . . . . .                            | 357        |
| 14.3      | Formatted Outputs for Reproducible Report Generation . . . . . | 359        |
| 14.3.1    | Formatting Strings . . . . .                                   | 359        |
| 14.3.2    | <b>str</b> and <b>repr</b> . . . . .                           | 359        |
| 14.3.3    | Justifying Strings . . . . .                                   | 360        |
| 14.3.4    | Direct Markdown Output in Jupyter . . . . .                    | 360        |
| 14.3.5    | Manual Markdown File Output . . . . .                          | 360        |
| 14.4      | Regular Expressions (*) . . . . .                              | 362        |
| 14.4.1    | Regex Matching with <b>re</b> . . . . .                        | 363        |
| 14.4.2    | Regex Matching with <b>pandas</b> . . . . .                    | 364        |
| 14.4.3    | Matching Individual Characters . . . . .                       | 366        |
|           | Matching Any Character . . . . .                               | 367        |
|           | Defining Character Sets . . . . .                              | 367        |
|           | Complementing Sets . . . . .                                   | 368        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Defining Code Point Ranges . . . . .                                      | 368        |
| Using Predefined Character Sets . . . . .                                 | 368        |
| 14.4.4 Alternating and Grouping Subexpressions . . . . .                  | 369        |
| Alternation Operator . . . . .  | 369        |
| Grouping Subexpressions . . . . .   | 369        |
| Non-grouping Parentheses . . . . .  | 369        |
| 14.4.5 Quantifiers . . . . .  | 370        |
| 14.4.6 Capture Groups and References Thereto . . . . .                    | 372        |
| Extracting Capture Group Matches . . . . .                                | 372        |
| Replacing with Capture Group Matches . . . . .                            | 373        |
| Back-Referencing . . . . .  | 373        |
| 14.4.7 Anchoring . . . . .  | 374        |
| Matching at the Beginning or End of a String . . . . .                    | 374        |
| Matching at Word Boundaries . . . . .                                     | 374        |
| Looking Behind and Ahead . . . . .  | 375        |
| 14.5 Exercises . . . . .  | 375        |
| <b>15 Missing, Censored, and Questionable Data</b>                        | <b>377</b> |
| 15.1 Missing Data . . . . .   | 377        |
| 15.1.1 Representing and Detecting Missing Values . . . . .                | 378        |
| 15.1.2 Computing with Missing Values . . . . .                            | 378        |
| 15.1.3 Missing at Random or Not? . . . . .                                | 380        |
| 15.1.4 Discarding Missing Values . . . . .                                | 381        |
| 15.1.5 Mean Imputation . . . . .  | 381        |
| 15.2 Censored and Interval Data (*) . . . . .                             | 384        |
| 15.3 Incorrect Data . . . . .   | 384        |
| 15.3.1 Exercises on Validating Data . . . . .                             | 385        |
| 15.4 Outliers . . . . .   | 386        |
| 15.4.1 The 3/2 IQR Rule for Normally-Distributed Data . . . . .           | 386        |
| 15.4.2 Unidimensional Density Estimation (*) . . . . .                    | 387        |
| 15.4.3 Multidimensional Density Estimation (*) . . . . .                  | 389        |
| 15.5 Exercises . . . . .  | 393        |
| <b>16 Time Series</b>   | <b>395</b> |
| 16.1 Temporal Ordering and Line Charts . . . . .                          | 395        |
| 16.2 Working with Datetimes and Timedeltas . . . . .                      | 397        |
| 16.2.1 Representation: The UNIX Epoch . . . . .                           | 397        |
| 16.2.2 Time Differences . . . . .   | 398        |
| 16.2.3 Datetimes in Data Frames . . . . .                                 | 399        |
| 16.2.4 Modelling Event Times with Exponential Distributions (*) . . . . . | 402        |
| 16.3 Basic Operations . . . . .   | 404        |
| 16.3.1 Iterative Differences and Cumulative Sums Revisited . . . . .      | 404        |
| 16.3.2 Smoothing with Moving Averages . . . . .                           | 406        |
| 16.3.3 Detecting Trends and Seasonal Patterns . . . . .                   | 407        |
| 16.3.4 Imputing Missing Values . . . . .                                  | 409        |

|                     |  |            |
|---------------------|--|------------|
| 16.3.5              | Plotting Multidimensional Time Series . . . . .                | 411        |
| 16.3.6              | Candlestick Plots (*) . . . . .                                | 413        |
| 16.4                | Notes on Signal Processing (Audio, Image, Video) (*) . . . . . | 415        |
| 16.5                | Further Reading . . . . .                                      | 416        |
| 16.6                | Exercises . . . . .  | 417        |
| <b>VI</b>           | <b>Appendix</b>  | <b>419</b> |
| <b>A</b>            | <b>Changelog</b>   | <b>421</b> |
| <b>Bibliography</b> |  | <b>425</b> |

The open access textbook *Minimalist Data Wrangling with Python* by Marek Gagolewski is, and will remain, freely available for everyone's enjoyment (both in [PDF<sup>1</sup>](#) and [HTML<sup>2</sup>](#) forms).

Any [bug/typos reports/fixes<sup>3</sup>](#) are appreciated. Although available online, this is a whole course, and should be read from the beginning to the end. In particular, refer to the [Preface](#) for general introductory remarks.

Copyright (C) 2022 by [Marek Gagolewski<sup>4</sup>](#). Some rights reserved.

This material is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License ([CC BY-NC-ND 4.0<sup>5</sup>](#)).

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://datawranglingpy.gagolewski.com/datawranglingpy.pdf>

<sup>2</sup> <https://datawranglingpy.gagolewski.com/>

<sup>3</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/datawranglingpy/blob/master/CODE\\_OF\\_CONDUCT.md](https://github.com/gagolews/datawranglingpy/blob/master/CODE_OF_CONDUCT.md)

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.gagolewski.com>

<sup>5</sup> <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/>





---

## Preface

---

### o.1 The Art of Data Wrangling

*Data science*<sup>6</sup> aims at making sense of and generating predictions from data that have<sup>7</sup> been collected in copious quantities from various sources, such as physical sensors, surveys, online forms, access logs, and (pseudo)random number generators, to name a few. They can take diverse forms, e.g., vectors, matrices, and other tensors, graphs/networks, audio/video streams, text, etc.

Researchers in psychology, economics, sociology, agriculture, engineering, biotechnology, pharmacy, medicine, and genetics, amongst many others, need statistical methods to make discoveries as well as confirm or falsify existing theories. What is more, with the increased availability of open data, everyone can do remarkable work for the common good, e.g., by volunteering for non-for-profit NGOs or debunking false news and overzealous acts of wishful thinking on any side of the political spectra.

Furthermore, data scientists, machine learning engineers, statisticians, and business analysts are [the most well-paid specialists](#)<sup>8</sup>. This is because data-driven decision-making, modelling, and prediction have already proven themselves especially useful in many domains:

- healthcare,
- food production,
- pharmaceuticals,
- transportation,
- financial services (banking, insurance, investment funds),
- real estate,
- retail.

---

<sup>6</sup> Traditionally known as *statistics*.

<sup>7</sup> Yes, *data* are plural (*datum* is singular).

<sup>8</sup> <https://insights.stackoverflow.com/survey/2021#other-frameworks-and-libraries>

Okay, to be frank, the above list was generated by duckduckgoing the “biggest industries” query. That was an easy task. Data science (and its different flavours, including operational research, machine learning, business and artificial intelligence) can be applied wherever we have some relevant data at hand and there is a need to improve or understand the underlying processes.

**Exercise 0.1** *Miniatrurisation, increased computing power, cheaper storage, and the popularity of various internet services all caused data to become ubiquitous. Think about how much information people consume and generate when they interact with different news feeds or social media on their phones.*

Data usually do not come in a *tidy* and *tamed* form. Also, at first glance, it is rarely known what we can get out of them. And thus, *data wrangling* is the very broad process of appropriately curating raw information chunks and then exploring the underlying data structure so that they become *analysable*.

---

## 0.2 Aims, Scope, and Design Philosophy

This course is envisaged as a student’s first, broad, yet well-structured exposure to data science<sup>9</sup>.

By no means do we have the ambition to be comprehensive with regard to any topic we cover. Time for that will come later in dedicated units related to calculus, matrix algebra, probability, mathematical statistics, continuous and combinatorial optimisation, information theory, stochastic processes, statistical/machine learning, algorithms and data structures, take a deep breath, databases and big data analytics, operational research, graphs and networks, differential equations and dynamical systems, time series analysis, signal processing, etc.

Instead, we lay very solid groundwork for all the above by introducing all the objects at an appropriate level of generality and building the most crucial connections between them. We provide the necessary intuitions behind the more advanced methods and concepts. This way, further courses do not need to waste our time introducing the most elementary definitions and answering the metaphysical questions like “but why do we need that (e.g., matrix multiplication) at all”.

And thus, in this course, we are going to explore methods for:

- performing exploratory data analysis (e.g., aggregation and visualisation),
- working with different types of data (e.g., numerical, categorical, text, time series),

---

<sup>9</sup> We might have entitled it *Introduction to Data Science (with Python)*.

- cleaning data gathered from structured and unstructured sources, e.g., by identifying outliers, normalising strings, extracting numbers from text, imputing missing data,
- transforming, selecting, and extracting features, dimensionality reduction,
- identifying naturally occurring data clusters, comparing data between groups,
- discovering patterns in data via approximation/modelling approaches using the most popular probability distributions and the easiest to understand statistical/machine learning algorithms,
- testing whether two data distributions differ significantly from each other,
- reporting the results of data analysis.

We primarily focus on methods and algorithms that have stood the test of time and that continue to inspire researchers and practitioners. They all meet a reality check that is comprised of the three following properties, which we believe are essential in practice:

- simplicity (and thus interpretability, being equipped with no or only a few underlying tunable parameters; being based on some sensible intuitions that can be explained in our own words),
- mathematical analysability (at least to some extent; so that we can understand their strengths and limitations),
- implementability (not too abstract on the one hand, but also not requiring any advanced computer-y hocus-pocus on the other).

---

**Note:** Many *more complex* algorithms are merely variations on or clever combinations of the more basic ones. This is why we need to study the fundamentals in great detail. We might not see it now, but this will become evident as we progress.

---

### 0.2.1 We Need Maths

The maths we introduce is the most elementary possible, in a good sense. Namely, we do not go beyond:

- simple analytic functions (affine maps, logarithms, cosines),
- the natural linear ordering of points on the real line (and the lack thereof in the case of multidimensional data),
- the sum of squared differences between things (including the Euclidean distance between points),

- linear vector/matrix algebra, e.g., to represent the most useful geometric transforms (rotation, scaling, translation),
- the frequentist interpretation (as in: *in samples of large sizes, we expect that...*) of some common objects from probability theory and statistics.

This is the kind of toolkit that we believe is a *sine qua non* requirement for every prospective data scientist. We cannot escape falling in love with it.

### 0.2.2 We Need Some Computing Environment

We no longer practice data analysis using a piece of paper and a pencil<sup>10</sup>. Even though there are some dedicated computer programs that solve the *most common* problems arising in the most straightforward scenarios (e.g., spreadsheet-like click-here click-there stand-alone statistical packages), we need a tool that will enable us to respond to *any* challenge in a scientifically rigorous (and hence well organised and documented as well as reproducible) manner.

In this course, we will be writing code in Python, which we will introduce from scratch; thus, we do not require any prior programming experience.

The [2021 StackOverflow Developer Survey](#)<sup>11</sup> lists it as the 2nd most popular programming language nowadays (slightly behind JavaScript). Over the last few years, Python has proven to be a very robust choice for learning and applying data wrangling techniques. This is possible thanks to the [famous](#)<sup>12</sup> high-quality packages written by the devoted community of open-source programmers, including but not limited to **numpy**, **scipy**, **pandas**, **matplotlib**, **seaborn**, and **scikit-learn**.

Still, Python and third-party packages which are written therein are amongst *many* software tools which can help gain new knowledge from data. Other<sup>13</sup> open-source choices include, e.g., **R**<sup>14</sup> and **Julia**<sup>15</sup>. And many new ones will emerge in the future.

**Important:** We will emphasise developing *transferable skills*: most of what we learn here can be applied (using a different syntax but the same kind of reasoning) in other environments. In other words, this is a course on data wrangling (*with* Python), not a course *on* Python (with examples in data wrangling).

We want the reader to become an *independent* user of this computing environment.

<sup>10</sup> We acknowledge that some more theoretically inclined readers might ask the question: *but why do we need programming at all?* Unfortunately, some mathematicians have forgotten that probability and statistics are deeply rooted in the so-called real world. We should remember that theory beautifully supplements practice and provides us with very deep insights, but we still need to get our hands dirty from time to time.

<sup>11</sup> <https://insights.stackoverflow.com/survey/2021#technology-most-popular-technologies>

<sup>12</sup> <https://insights.stackoverflow.com/survey/2021#other-frameworks-and-libraries>

<sup>13</sup> There are also some commercial solutions available on the market, but we believe that ultimately all software should be free, therefore we are not going to talk about them here at all.

<sup>14</sup> <https://www.r-project.org/>

<sup>15</sup> <https://julialang.org/>

Somebody who is not overwhelmed when they are faced with any intermediate-level data analysis problem. A user whose habitual response to a new challenge is not to look everything up on the internet even in the simplest possible scenarios. In other words, we value creative thinking.

We believe we have found a good trade-off between the minimal set of tools that need to be mastered and the less frequently used ones that can later be found in the documentation or on the internet. In other words, the reader will discover the joy of programming and using their logical thinking to tinker with things.

### 0.2.3 We Need Data and Domain Knowledge

There is no data science or machine learning without *data*, and data's purpose is to represent a given problem domain. Mathematics allows us to study different processes at a healthy level of abstractness/specificity. Still, we should always be familiar with the reality behind the numbers we have at hand, for example, by working closely with various experts in the field of our interest or pursuing our own study/research therein.

Courses such as this one, out of necessity, must use some generic datasets that are quite familiar to most readers (e.g., data on life expectancy and GDP in different countries, time to finish a marathon, yearly household incomes).

Still, many textbooks introduce statistical concepts using carefully crafted datasets where everything runs smoothly, and all models work out of the box. This gives a false sense of security. In practice, however, most datasets are not only unpolished but also (even after some careful treatment) uninteresting. Such is life. We will not be avoiding the *more difficult* problems in our journey.

---

## 0.3 Structure

This book is a whole course and should be read from the beginning to the end.

The material has been divided into 5 parts.

### 1. Introducing Python:

- Chapter 1 discusses how to execute the first code chunks in Jupyter Notebooks, which are a flexible tool for the reproducible generation of reports from data analyses.
- Chapter 2 introduces the basic scalar types in base Python, ways to call existing and to write our own functions, and control a code chunk's execution flow.
- Chapter 3 mentions sequential and other iterable types in base Python; more

advanced data structures (vectors, matrices, data frames) that we introduce below will build upon these concepts.

## 2. Unidimensional Data:

- [Chapter 4](#) introduces vectors from `numpy`, which we use for storing data on the real line (think: individual columns in a tabular dataset). Then, we look at the most common types of empirical distributions of data (e.g., bell-shaped, right-skewed, heavy-tailed ones).
- In [Chapter 5](#) we list the most basic ways for processing sequences of numbers, including methods for data aggregation, transformation (e.g., standardisation), and filtering. We also mention that a computer's floating-point arithmetic is imprecise and what we can do about it.
- [Chapter 6](#) reviews the most common probability distributions (normal, log-normal, Pareto, Uniform, and mixtures thereof), methods for assessing how well they fit empirical data, and pseudorandom number generation that is crucial for experiments based on simulations.

## 3. Multidimensional Data:

- [Chapter 7](#) introduces matrices from `numpy`. They are a convenient means of storing multidimensional quantitative data (many points described by possibly many numerical features). We also present some methods for their visualisation (and the problems arising from our being three-dimensional creatures).
- [Chapter 8](#) is devoted to basic operations on matrices. We will see that some of them simply extend on what we have learned in [Chapter 5](#), but there is more: for instance, we discuss how to determine the set of each point's nearest neighbours.
- [Chapter 9](#) discusses ways to explore the most basic relationships between the variables in a dataset: the Pearson and Spearman correlation coefficients (and what it means that correlation is not causation),  $k$ -nearest neighbour and linear regression (including the sad cases where a model matrix is ill-conditioned), and finding interesting combinations of variables that can help reduce the dimensionality of a problem (via the so-called principal component analysis).

## 4. Heterogeneous Data:

- [Chapter 10](#) introduces `Series` and `DataFrame` objects from `pandas`, which we can think of as vectors and matrices on steroids. For instance, they allow rows and columns to be labelled and columns to be of different types. We emphasise that most of what we have learned in the previous chapters still applies, but there is even more: for example, methods for joining (merging) many datasets, converting between long and wide formats, etc.

- In [Chapter 11](#) we introduce the ways to represent and handle categorical data as well as how (not) to lie with statistics.
- [Chapter 12](#) covers the case of aggregating, transforming, and visualising data in groups by one or more qualitative variables, including classification with  $k$ -nearest neighbours (when we are asked to fill the gaps in a categorical variable). We will also try to discover the naturally occurring partitions with the  $k$ -means method, which is an example of a computationally hard optimisation problem that needs to be tackled with some imperfect heuristics.
- [Chapter 13](#) is an interlude where we solve some pleasant exercises on data frames and learn the basics of SQL. This will be useful when we are faced with datasets that do not fit into a computer's memory.

## 5. Other Data Types:

- [Chapter 14](#) discusses ways to handle text data and extract information from them, e.g., through regular expressions. We also briefly mention the challenges related to the processing of non-English text, including phrases like *pozdro dla ziomali z Bródna*, *Viele Grüße und viel Spaß*, and *χαίρετε*.
- [Chapter 15](#) emphasises that some data may be missing or be questionable (e.g., censored, incorrect, rare) and what we can do about them.
- In [Chapter 16](#) we cover the most basic methods for the processing of time series, because, ultimately, everything changes, and we should be able to track the evolution of things.

---

**Note:** (\*) Parts marked with a single or double asterisk can be skipped upon first reading as they are of increased difficulty and are not essential for beginner students.

---

## o.4 The Rules

Our goal here, in the long run, is for you, dear reader, to become a skilled expert who is independent, ethical, and capable of critical thinking; one who hopefully will make a small contribution towards making this world a slightly better place.

To guide you through it, we have a few tips for you.

1. *Follow the rules.*
2. *Technical textbooks are not belletristic.* Sometimes a single page will be very meaning-intense. Do not try to consume too much at the same time. Go for a walk, reflect on what you have learned, and build connections between different concepts. In

case of any doubt, go back to one of the previous sections. Learning is an iterative process, not a linear one.

3. *Solve all the suggested exercises.* We might be introducing new concepts or developing crucial intuitions there as well. Also, try implementing most of the methods you learn about from scratch instead of looking for copy-paste solutions on the internet. How else will you master the material and develop the necessary programming skills?
4. *Code is an integral part of the text.* Each piece of good code is worth 1234 words (on average). Do not skip it. On the contrary, you should play and experiment with it. Run every major line of code, inspect the results generated, and read more about the functions you use in the official documentation. What is the type (class) of the object returned? If it is an array or a data frame, what is its shape? What would happen if we replaced X with Y? Do not fret; your computer will not blow up.
5. *Harden up<sup>16</sup>.* Your journey towards expertise will take years, there are no shortcuts, but it will be quite enjoyable every now and then, so don't give up. Still, sitting all day in front of your computer is unhealthy – exercise and socialise between 28 and 31 times per month, because you're not, nor will ever be, a robot.
6. *Learn maths.* Our field has a very long history and stands on the shoulders of many giants; many methods we use these days are merely minor variations on the classical, fundamental results that date back to Newton, Leibniz, Gauss, and Laplace. Therefore, eventually, you will need some working knowledge of mathematics to understand them (linear algebra, calculus, probability and statistics). Remember that software products/APIs seem to change frequently, but they are just a facade, a flashy wrapping around the methods we have been using for quite a while.
7. *Use only methods that you can explain.* Even though they may be easily accessible, you should refrain from working with algorithms/methods/models whose definitions (pseudocode, mathematical formulae, objective functions they are trying to optimise) and properties you do not know, understand, or cannot rephrase in your own words.
8. *Compromises are inevitable<sup>17</sup>.* There will never be a single best metric, algorithm, or way to solve all the problems. Even though some solutions might be better than others with regard to specific criteria, this will only be true under certain assumptions (if they fit a theoretical model). Beware that focusing too much on one aspect leads to undesirable consequences with respect to other factors, especially those that cannot be measured easily. Therefore, refraining from improving things might sometimes be better than pushing too hard. Always apply common sense.
9. *Be scientific and ethical.* Make your reports reproducible, your toolkit well-organised,

---

<sup>16</sup> Cyclists know.

<sup>17</sup> Some people would refer to this rule as *There is no free lunch*, but in our – overall friendly – world, many things are actually free (see Rule #9), therefore this name is strongly misleading.

and all the assumptions you make explicit. Develop a dose of scepticism and impartiality towards everything, from marketing slogans, through your ideological biases, to all hotly debated topics. Most data analysis exercises end up with conclusions like: “it’s too early to tell”, “data don’t show it’s either way”, “there is a difference, but it is hardly significant”, “yeah, but our sample is not representative for the entire population” – and there is nothing wrong with this. Remember that it is highly unethical to use statistics to tell lies; this includes presenting only one side of the overly complex reality and totally ignoring all the other ones (compare Rule#8). Using statistics for doing dreadful things (tracking users to find their vulnerabilities, developing products and services which are addictive) is a huge no-no!

10. *The best things in life are free.* These include the open-source software and open-access textbooks (such as this one) we use in our journey. Spread the good news about them and – if you can – contribute something (even as small as reporting typos in their documentation or helping others in different forums when they are stuck with something) so that you are not only a taker. After all, it is our shared responsibility.
- 

## 0.5 About the Author

I, Marek Gagolewski<sup>18</sup> am currently a Senior Lecturer/Researcher in Applied AI at Deakin University in Melbourne, VIC, Australia and an Associate Professor in Data Science (on long-term leave) at the Faculty of Mathematics and Information Science, Warsaw University of Technology, Poland and Systems Research Institute of the Polish Academy of Sciences.

My research interests include machine learning, data aggregation and clustering, computational statistics, mathematical modelling (the science of science, sport, economics, etc.), and free (*libre*) data analysis software (**stringi**<sup>19</sup>, **genieclust**<sup>20</sup>, among others<sup>21</sup>).

---

## 0.6 Acknowledgements

*Minimalist Data Wrangling with Python* is based on my experience as an author of a quite successful textbook *Przetwarzanie i analiza danych w języku Python* (Data Processing and

<sup>18</sup> <https://www.gagolewski.com>

<sup>19</sup> <https://stringi.gagolewski.com>

<sup>20</sup> <https://genieclust.gagolewski.com>

<sup>21</sup> <https://github.com/gagolews>

Analysis in Python), [[GBC16]] that I have written (in Polish, 2016, published by PWN) with my former (successful) PhD students Maciej Bartoszuk and Anna Cena – thanks! The current book is an entirely different work; however, its predecessor served as an excellent testbed for many ideas conveyed here.

The teaching style exercised in this book has proven successful in many similar courses that yours truly has been responsible for, including at Warsaw University of Technology, Data Science Retreat (Berlin), and Deakin University (Geelong/Melbourne). I thank all my students for the feedback given over the last 10 or so years.

A thank-you to all the authors and contributors of the Python packages that we use throughout this course: **numpy** [[H+20]], **scipy** [[V+20]], **matplotlib** [[Hun07]], **seaborn** [[Was21]], and **pandas** [[McK17]], amongst others (as well as the many C/C++/Fortran libraries they provide wrappers for). Their version numbers are given in Section 1.4.

This book has been prepared in a Markdown superset called **MyST**<sup>22</sup>, **Sphinx**<sup>23</sup>, and TeX (XeLaTeX). Python code chunks have been processed with the R (sic!) package **knitr** [[Xie15]]. A little help from Makefiles, custom shell scripts, and **Sphinx** plugins (**sphinxcontrib-bibtex**<sup>24</sup>, **sphinxcontrib-proof**<sup>25</sup>) dotted the ‘j’s and crossed the ‘f’s. The **Ubuntu Mono**<sup>26</sup> font is used for the display of code.

---

<sup>22</sup> <https://myst-parser.readthedocs.io/en/latest/index.html>

<sup>23</sup> <https://www.sphinx-doc.org/>

<sup>24</sup> <https://pypi.org/project/sphinxcontrib-bibtex/>

<sup>25</sup> <https://pypi.org/project/sphinxcontrib-proof/>

<sup>26</sup> <http://font.ubuntu.com/>

## **Part I**

# **Introducing Python**



# *Getting Started with Python*

---

## 1.1 Installing Python

Python<sup>1</sup> was designed and implemented by Dutch programmer Guido van Rossum in the late 1980s. It is an immensely popular<sup>2</sup> object-oriented programming language particularly suitable for rapid prototyping. Its name is a tribute to the funniest British comedy troupe ever. Therefore we will surely be having a jolly good laugh along our journey.

We will be using the reference implementation of the Python language (called **CPython**), version 3.9 (or any later one).

Users of Unix-like operating systems (GNU/Linux<sup>3</sup>, FreeBSD, etc.) may download Python via their native package manager (e.g., `sudo apt install python3` in Debian and Ubuntu). Then, additional Python packages (see Section 1.4) can be installed<sup>4</sup> by the said manager or directly from the Python Package Index (**PyPI**<sup>5</sup>) via the **pip** tool.

Users of other operating systems can download Python from the project's website or some other distribution available on the market.

---

## 1.2 Working with Jupyter Notebooks

JupyterLab<sup>6</sup> is a web-based development environment supporting numerous<sup>7</sup> programming languages, see Figure 1.1. It is definitely not the most convenient environment for exercising data science in Python (writing standalone scripts in some more

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.python.org/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://insights.stackoverflow.com/survey/2021#technology-most-popular-technologies>

<sup>3</sup> GNU/Linux is the operating system of choice for machine learning engineers and data scientists both on the desktop and in the cloud. Switching to a free system at some point cannot be recommended highly enough.

<sup>4</sup> <https://packaging.python.org/en/latest/tutorials/installing-packages/>

<sup>5</sup> <https://pypi.org/>

<sup>6</sup> <https://jupyterlab.readthedocs.io/en/stable/>

<sup>7</sup> <https://github.com/jupyter/jupyter/wiki/Jupyter-kernels>

advanced editors is the preferred option). Still, we have chosen it here because of its educative advantages (interactive, easy to start with, etc.).

More advanced students can consider, for example, [jupytext](#)<sup>8</sup> as a means to create .ipynb files directly from Markdown files.



Figure 1.1: JupyterLab at a glance

In JupyterLab, we can work with:

- [Jupyter notebooks](#)<sup>9</sup> — .ipynb documents combining code, text, plots, tables, and other rich outputs; importantly, code chunks can be created, modified, and run interactively, which makes it a good reporting tool for our basic data science needs;
- code consoles — terminals for running code chunks interactively (read-eval-print loop);
- source files in many different languages — with syntax highlighting and the ability to send code to the associated consoles;

and many more.

**Exercise 1.1** Head to the official documentation<sup>10</sup> of the JupyterLab project and watch the introductory video linked in the Overview section.

<sup>8</sup> <https://jupytext.readthedocs.io/en/latest/>

<sup>9</sup> <https://jupyterlab.readthedocs.io/en/stable/user/notebook.html>

<sup>10</sup> <https://jupyterlab.readthedocs.io/en/stable/index.html>

### 1.2.1 Launching JupyterLab

How we launch JupyterLab will vary from system to system. Everyone needs to determine the best way to do it by themselves.

Some users will be able to start JupyterLab via their start menu/application launcher. Alternatively, we can open the system terminal (`bash`, `zsh`, etc.) and type:

```
cd our/favourite/directory # change directory  
jupyter lab # or jupyter-lab, depending on the system
```

This should launch the JupyterLab server and open the corresponding web app in the default web browser.

---

**Note:** Some commercial cloud-hosted instances or forks of the open-source JupyterLab project are available on the market, but we endorse none of them (even though they might be provided gratis, there are always strings attached). It is best to run our applications locally, where we are free<sup>11</sup> to be in control over the software environment.

---

### 1.2.2 First Notebook

Here is how we can create our first notebook.

1. From JupyterLab, create a new notebook running a Python 3 kernel (for example, by selecting File → New → Notebook from the menu).
2. Select File → Rename Notebook and change the filename to `HelloWorld.ipynb`.

---

**Important:** The file is stored relative to the current working directory of the running JupyterLab server instance. Make sure you can locate `HelloWorld.ipynb` on your disk using your favourite file explorer (by the way, `.ipynb` is just a JSON file that can also be edited using an ordinary text editor).

---

3. Input the following in the code cell:

```
print("G'day!")
```

4. Press `Ctrl+Enter` (or `Cmd+Return` on macOS) to execute the code cell and display the result; see Figure 1.2.

### 1.2.3 More Cells

Time for some more cells.

---

<sup>11</sup> [https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AgIAKII\\_2GM](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AgIAKII_2GM)



Figure 1.2: “Hello World” in a Jupyter Notebook

1. By pressing **Enter**, we can enter the *Edit mode*. Modify the cell’s contents so that it now reads:

```
# My first code cell (this is a comment)
print("G'day!") # prints a message (this is a comment too)
print(2+5) # prints a number
```

2. Press **Ctrl+Enter** to execute the code and replace the previous outputs with the new ones.
3. Enter a command to print some other message that is to your liking. Note that character strings in Python must be enclosed in either double quotes or apostrophes.
4. Press **Shift+Enter** to execute the code cell, create a new one below, and then enter the edit mode.
5. In the new cell, enter and then execute the following:

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt # basic plotting library
plt.bar(
    ["Python", "JavaScript", "HTML", "CSS"], # a list of strings
    [80, 30, 10, 15] # a list of integers (the corresponding bar heights)
)
plt.title("What makes you happy?")
plt.show()
```

6. Add three more code cells, displaying some text or creating other bar plots.

**Exercise 1.2** Change `print(2+5)` to `PRINT(2+5)`, execute the code chunk and see what happens.

---

**Note:** In the *Edit mode*, JupyterLab behaves like an ordinary text editor. Most keyboard shortcuts known from elsewhere are available, for example:

- Shift+LeftArrow, DownArrow, UpArrow, or RightArrow – select text,
  - Ctrl+c – copy,
  - Ctrl+x – cut,
  - Ctrl+v – paste,
  - Ctrl+z – undo,
  - Ctrl+] – indent,
  - Ctrl+[ – dedent,
  - Ctrl+/ – toggle comment.
- 

#### 1.2.4 Edit vs Command Mode

Moreover:

1. By pressing `ESC`, we can enter the *Command mode*.
2. In the *Command mode*, we can use the arrow `DownArrow` and `UpArrow` keys to move between the code cells.
3. In the *Command mode*, pressing `d,d` (`d` followed by another `d`) deletes the currently selected cell.
4. Press `z` to undo the last operation.
5. Press `a` and `b` to insert a new blank cell, respectively, above and below the current one.
6. Note a simple drag and drop can relocate cells.

---

**Important:** `ESC` and `Enter` switch between the *Command* and *Edit* modes, respectively.

---

#### 1.2.5 Markdown Cells

So far, we have been playing with *Code* cells. We can convert the current cell to a *Markdown* block by pressing `m` in the *Command mode* (note that by pressing `y` we can turn it back to a *Code* cell).

Markdown is a lightweight, human-readable markup language widely used for formatting text documents.

1. Enter the following into a new Markdown cell:

```
# Section

## Subsection

This ~~was~~ *is* **really** nice.

* one
* two
  1. aaa
  2. bbbb
* three

```python
# some code to display (but not execute)
2+2
```
![Python](https://www.python.org/static/img/python-logo.png)
```

2. Press **Ctrl+Enter** to display the formatted text.
3. Notice that Markdown cells can be modified by entering the *Edit mode* as usual (Enter key).

**Exercise 1.3** Read the [official introduction<sup>12</sup>](#) to the Markdown syntax.

**Exercise 1.4** Follow [this<sup>13</sup>](#) interactive Markdown tutorial.

**Exercise 1.5** Apply what you have learned by making the current Jupyter notebook more readable. Add a header at the beginning of the report featuring your name and email address. Before and after each code cell, explain (in your own words) its purpose and how to interpret the obtained results.

---

### 1.3 The Best Note-Taking App

Learning, and this is what we are here for, will not be effective without making notes of the concepts that we come across during this course – many of them will be new to us. We will need to write down some definitions and noteworthy properties of the methods we discuss, draw simple diagrams and mind maps to build connections between

---

<sup>12</sup> <https://daringfireball.net/projects/markdown/syntax>

<sup>13</sup> <https://commonmark.org/help/tutorial/>

different topics, check intermediate results, or derive simple mathematical formulae ourselves.

Let us not waste our time finding the best app for our computers, phones, or tablets. The best and most versatile note-taking solution is an ordinary piece of A4 paper and a pen or a pencil. Loose sheets of paper, 5 mm grid-ruled for graphs and diagrams, work nicely. They can be held together using a cheap landscape clip folder (the one with a clip on the long side). An advantage of this solution is that it can be browsed through like an ordinary notebook. Also, new pages can be added anywhere, and their ordering altered arbitrarily.

---

## 1.4 Initialising Each Session and Getting Example Data (!)

From now on, we assume that the following commands have been issued at the beginning of each session:

```
# import key packages - required:  
import numpy as np  
import scipy.stats  
import pandas as pd  
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt  
import seaborn as sns  
  
# further settings - optional:  
pd.set_option("display.notebook_repr_html", False) # disable "rich" output  
  
import os  
os.environ["COLUMNS"] = "74" # output width, in characters  
np.set_printoptions(linewidth=74)  
pd.set_option("display.width", 74)  
  
plt.style.use("seaborn") # overall plot style  
  
_colours = [ # the "R4" palette  
    "#000000", "#DF536B", "#61D04F", "#2297E6",  
    "#28E2E5", "#CD0BBC", "#F5C710", "#999999"  
]  
  
_linestyles = [  
    "solid", "dashed", "dashdot", "dotted"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

]

```

plt.rcParams["axes.prop_cycle"] = plt.cycler(
    # each plotted line will have a different plotting style
    color=_colours, linestyle=_linestyles*2
)
plt.rcParams["patch.facecolor"] = _colours[0]

plt.rcParams.update({ # further graphical parameters
    "font.size": 11,
    "font.family": "sans-serif",
    "font.sans-serif": ["Alegreya Sans", "Alegreya"],
    "figure.autolayout": True,
    "figure.dpi": 300,
    "figure.figsize": (6, 3.5), # default is [8.0, 5.5],
})
np.random.seed(123) # initialise the pseudorandom number generator

```

The above imports the most frequently used packages (together with their usual aliases, we will get to that later). Then, it sets up some further options that yours truly is particularly fond of. On a side note, for the discussion on the reproducible pseudorandom number generation, please see Section 6.4.2.

The software we use regularly receives feature upgrades, API changes, and bug fixes. Therefore, it is good to know which version of the Python environment was used to evaluate all the code included in this book:

```

import sys
print(sys.version)
## 3.9.7 (default, Sep 10 2021, 14:59:43)
## [GCC 11.2.0]

```

The versions of the packages that we use in this course are given below. They can usually be fetched by calling, for example, `print(np.__version__)`, etc.

| Package                           | Version  |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| <b>numpy</b>                      | 1.22.4   |
| <b>scipy</b>                      | 1.8.1    |
| <b>pandas</b>                     | 1.4.2    |
| <b>matplotlib</b>                 | 3.5.2    |
| <b>seaborn</b>                    | 0.11.2   |
| <b>sklearn (scikit-learn) (*)</b> | 0.24.1   |
| <b>icu (PyICU) (*)</b>            | 2.8.1    |
| <b>IPython (*)</b>                | 8.2.0    |
| <b>mplfinance (*)</b>             | 0.12.8b9 |

We expect 99% of the code listed in this book to work in future versions of our environment. If the reader discovers that this is not the case, filing a bug report at <https://github.com/gagolews/datawranglingpy> will be much appreciated (for the benefit of other readers).

---

**Important:** All example datasets that we use throughout this course are available for download at [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data).

---

**Exercise 1.6** Ensure you are comfortable accessing raw data files from the above repository. Choose any file, e.g., *nhanes\_adult\_female\_height\_2020.txt* in the *marek* folder, and then click Raw. It is the URL that you have now been redirected to, not the previous one, that includes the link to be referred to from within your Python session.

Note that each dataset starts with several comment lines explaining its structure, the meaning of the variables, etc.

---

## 1.5 Exercises

**Exercise 1.7** What is the difference between the Edit and the Command mode in Jupyter?

**Exercise 1.8** What is Markdown?

**Exercise 1.9** How to format a table in Markdown?

---



# 2

---

## *Scalar Types and Control Structures in Python*

---

In this part, we introduce the basics of the Python language itself. As it is a general-purpose tool, various packages supporting data wrangling operations will be provided as third-party extensions. Therefore, based on the concepts discussed here, in further chapters we will be able to use `numpy`, `scipy`, `pandas`, `matplotlib`, `seaborn`, and other packages with some healthy degree of confidence.

---

### 2.1 Scalar Types

The five ubiquitous scalar types (i.e., *single* or *atomic* values) are:

- `bool` – logical,
- `int`, `float`, `complex` – numeric,
- `str` – character.

#### 2.1.1 Logical Values

There are only two possible logical (Boolean) values: `True` and `False`. We can type:

`True`

`## True`

to instantiate one of them. This might seem boring — unless, when trying to play with the above code, the kind reader fell into the following pitfall:

---

**Important:** Python is case-sensitive. Writing “`TRUE`” or “`true`” instead of “`True`” is an error.

---

#### 2.1.2 Numeric Values

The three numeric scalar types are:

- `int` – integers, e.g., `1`, `-42`, `1_000_000`;

- `float` – floating-point (real) numbers, e.g., `-1.0`, `3.14159`, `1.23e-4`;
- `complex (*)` – complex numbers, e.g., `1+2j` (these are infrequently used in our applications).

In practice, `int` and `float` often interoperate seamlessly. We usually do not have to think about them as being of distinctive types.

**Exercise 2.1** `1.23e-4` and `9.8e5` are examples of numbers entered using the so-called scientific notation, where “`e`” stands for “times 10 to the power of”. Moreover, `1_000_000` is a decorated (more human-readable) version of `1000000`. Use the `print` function to check their values.

## Arithmetic Operators

Here is the list of available arithmetic operators:

```
1 + 2      # addition
## 3
1 - 7      # subtraction
## -6
4 * 0.5    # multiplication
## 2.0
7 / 3      # float division (the result is always of type float)
## 2.333333333333335
7 // 3     # integer division
## 2
7 % 3      # division remainder
## 1
2 ** 4     # exponentiation
## 16
```

The precedence of these operators is quite predictable<sup>1</sup>, e.g., exponentiation has higher priority than multiplication and division, which in turn bind more strongly than addition and subtraction. Hence:

```
1 + 2 * 3 ** 4  # the same as 1+(2*(3**4))
## 163
```

is different from, e.g., `((1+2)*3)**4`.

**Note:** Keep in mind that computers’ floating-point arithmetic is precise only up to a few significant digits. Hence, the result of `7/3` is only approximate (`2.333333333333335`). We will get back to this topic in [Section 5.6.2](#).

<sup>1</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/reference/expressions.html#operator-precedence>

## Creating Named Variables

Named variables can be introduced using the *assignment operator*, `=`. They can store arbitrary Python objects and be referred to at any time. Names of variables can include any lower- and uppercase letters, underscores, and digits (but not at the beginning). It is best to make them self-explanatory, like:

```
x = 7 # read: let `x` from now on be equal to 7 (or: `x` becomes 7)
```

We can check that `x` (great name, by the way: it means *something of general interest* in mathematics) is now available for further reference by printing out the value that is bound therewith:

```
print(x) # or just `x`
## 7
```

New variable can easily be created based on existing ones:

```
my_2nd_variable = x/3 - 2 # creates `my_2nd_variable`
print(my_2nd_variable)
## 0.3333333333333335
```

Also, existing variables can be re-bound to any other value whenever we please:

```
x = x/3 # let the new `x` be equal to the old `x` (7) divided by 3
print(x)
## 2.3333333333333335
```

**Exercise 2.2** Create two named variables `height` (in centimetres) and `weight` (in kilograms). Based on them, determine your BMI<sup>2</sup>.

**Note:** (\*) Augmented assignments are also available. For example:

```
x *= 3
print(x)
## 7.0
```

In this context, the above is equivalent to `x = x*3`, i.e., a new variable has been created. However, in other scenarios, augmented assignments modify the objects they act upon in-place, compare Section 3.5.

<sup>2</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Body\\_mass\\_index](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Body_mass_index)

### 2.1.3 Character Strings

Character strings (objects of type `str`), which can consist of arbitrary text, are created using either double quotes or apostrophes:

```
print("spam, spam, #, bacon, and spam")
## spam, spam, #, bacon, and spam
print("Cześć! ¿Qué tal?")
## Cześć! ¿Qué tal?
print('G\'day, howya goin\', " he asked.\n"Fine, thanks," she responded.\\"')
## "G'day, howya goin', " he asked.
## "Fine, thanks," she responded. |
```

Above, `\'` (a way to include an apostrophe in an apostrophe-delimited string), `\\` (a backslash), and `\\n` (a newline character) are examples of *escape sequences*<sup>3</sup>.

Multiline strings are also possible:

```
"""
spam\\spam
tasty\t"spam"
lovely\t'spam'
"""

## '|nspam|spam|ntasty|t"spam"|nlovely|t|'spam|'|n'
```

**Exercise 2.3** Call the `print` function on the above object to reveal the special meaning of the included escape sequences.

**Important:** Many string operations are available. They are related, for example to formatting, pattern searching, or extracting matching chunks. They are especially important in the art of data wrangling as oftentimes information comes to us in textual form. We shall be covering this topic in detail in Chapter 14.

### F-Strings (Formatted String Literals)

Also, the so-called *f-strings* (formatted string literals) can be used to prepare nice output messages:

```
x = 2
f"x is {x}"
## 'x is 2'
```

Notice the `f` prefix. The `{x}` part was replaced with the value stored in the `x` variable.

<sup>3</sup> [https://docs.python.org/3/reference/lexical\\_analysis.html#string-and-bytes-literals](https://docs.python.org/3/reference/lexical_analysis.html#string-and-bytes-literals)

There are many options available. As usual, it is best to study the [documentation<sup>4</sup>](#) in search of interesting features. Here, let us just mention that we will frequently be referring to placeholders like {variable:width} and {variable:width.precision}, which specify the field width and the number of fractional digits of a number. This can result in a series of values nicely aligned one below another.

```
n = 3.14159265358979323846
e = 2.71828182845904523536
print(f"""
n = {n:10.8f}
e = {e:10.8f}
""")
## n = 3.14159265
## e = 2.71828183
```

10.8f means that a value should be formatted as a float, be of at least width 10, and use eight fractional digits.

---

## 2.2 Calling Built-in Functions

There are quite a few built-in functions ready for use. For instance:

```
e = 2.718281828459045
round(e, 2)
## 2.72
```

Rounds e to 2 decimal digits.

**Exercise 2.4** Call `help("round")` to access the function's manual. Note that the second argument, called `ndigits`, which we have set to 2, has a default value of `None`. Check what happens when we omit it during the call.

### 2.2.1 Positional and Keyword Arguments

As `round` has two parameters, `number` and `ndigits`, the following (and no other) calls are equivalent:

```
print(
    round(e, 2), # two arguments matched positionally
    round(e, ndigits=2), # positional and keyword argument
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>4</sup> [https://docs.python.org/3/reference/lexical\\_analysis.html#f-strings](https://docs.python.org/3/reference/lexical_analysis.html#f-strings)

(continued from previous page)

```
round(number=e, ndigits=2), # two keyword arguments
round(ndigits=2, number=e) # the order does not matter for keyword args
)
## 2.72 2.72 2.72 2.72
```

That no other form is allowed is left as an exercise, i.e., positionally matched arguments must be listed before the keyword ones.

## 2.2.2 Modules and Packages

Other functions are available in numerous Python modules and packages (which are collections of modules).

For example, `math` features many mathematical functions:

```
import math # the math module must be imported prior its first use
print(math.log(2.718281828459045)) # the natural logarithm (base e)
## 1.0
print(math.floor(-7.33)) # the floor function
## -8
print(math.sin(math.pi)) # sin(pi) equals 0 (with some numeric error)
## 1.2246467991473532e-16
```

See the [official documentation](#)<sup>5</sup> for the comprehensive list of objects defined therein. On a side note, all floating-point computations in any programming language are subject to round-off errors and other inaccuracies, hence the result of  $\sin \pi$  not being exactly 0, but some value very close thereto. We will elaborate on this topic in Section 5.6.2.

Packages can be given aliases, for the sake of code readability or due to our being lazy. For instance, we are used to importing the `numpy` package under the `np` alias:

```
import numpy as np
```

And now, instead of writing, for example, `numpy.random.rand()`, we can call instead:

```
np.random.rand() # a pseudorandom value in [0.0, 1.0]
## 0.6964691855978616
```

## 2.2.3 Slots and Methods

Python is an object-oriented programming language. Each object is an instance of some *class* whose name we can reveal by calling the `type` function:

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/library/math.html>

```
x = 1+2j
type(x)
## <class 'complex'>
```

---

**Important:** Classes define the following kinds of *attributes*:

- *slots* – associated data,
  - *methods* – associated functions.
- 

**Exercise 2.5** Call `help("complex")` to reveal that the `complex` class features, amongst others, the `conjugate` method and the `real` and `imag` slots.

Here is how we can read the two slots:

```
print(x.real) # access slot `real` of object `x` of class `complex`
## 1.0
print(x.imag)
## 2.0
```

And here is an example of a method call:

```
x.conjugate() # equivalently: complex.conjugate(x)
## (1-2j)
```

Notably, the documentation of this function can be accessed by typing `help("complex.conjugate")` (*class name – dot – method name*).

---

## 2.3 Controlling Program Flow

### 2.3.1 Relational and Logical Operators

Further, we have several operators which return a single logical value:

```
1 == 1.0 # is equal to?
## True
2 != 3 # is not equal to?
## True
"spam" < "egg" # is less than? (with respect to the lexicographic order)
## False
```

Some more examples:

```
math.sin(math.pi) == 0.0 # well, numeric error...
## False
abs(math.sin(math.pi)) <= 1e-9 # is close to 0?
## True
```

Logical results might be combined using `and` (conjunction; for testing if both operands are true) and `or` (alternative; for determining whether at least one operand is true). Furthermore, `not` (negation) is available too.

```
3 <= math.pi and math.pi <= 4
## True
not (1 > 2 and 2 < 3) and not 100 <= 3
## True
```

Notice that `not 100 <= 3` is equivalent to `100 > 3`. Also, based on the de Morgan's laws, `not (1 > 2 and 2 < 3)` is true if and only if `1 <= 2 or 2 >= 3` holds.

**Exercise 2.6** Assuming that  $p, q, r$  are logical and  $a, b, c, d$  are float-type variables, simplify the following expressions:

- `not not p,`
- `not p and not q,`
- `not (not p or not q or not r),`
- `not a == b,`
- `not (b > a and b < c),`
- `not (a>=b and b>=c and a>=c),`
- `(a>b and a<c) or (a<c and a>d).`

### 2.3.2 The if Statement

The `if` statement allows us to execute a chunk of code conditionally, based on whether the provided expression is true or not.

For instance, given some variable:

```
x = np.random.rand() # a pseudorandom value in [0.0, 1.0)
```

we can react enthusiastically to its being less than 0.5 (note the colon after the tested condition):

```
if x < 0.5: print("spam!")
```

which did not happen, because it is equal to:

```
print(x)
## 0.6964691855978616
```

Further, multiple **elif** (*else-if*) parts can be added, followed by an optional **else** part, which is executed if all the conditions tested are not true.

```
if x < 0.25:    print("spam!")
elif x < 0.5:   print("ham!")    # i.e., x in [0.25, 0.5)
elif x < 0.75:  print("bacon!") # i.e., x in [0.5, 0.75)
else:           print("eggs!")  # i.e., x >= 0.75
## bacon!
```

If more than one statement is to be executed conditionally, an indented code block can be introduced.

```
if x >= 0.25 and x <= 0.75:
    print("spam!")
    print("I love it!")

else:
    print("I'd rather eat spam!")
print("more spam!") # executed regardless of the condition's state
## spam!
## I love it!
## more spam!
```

**Important:** The indentation must be neat and consistent. We recommend using four spaces. The reader is encouraged to try to execute the following code chunk and note what kind of error is generated:

```
if x < 0.5:
    print("spam!")
    print("ham!")    # :(
```

**Exercise 2.7** For a given BMI, print out the corresponding category as defined by the WHO (*underweight* if below 18.5, *normal range* up to 25.0, etc.). Let us bear in mind that the BMI is a simplistic measure. Both the medical and statistical communities point out its inherent limitations. Read the Wikipedia article thereon for more details (and appreciate the amount of data wrangling required for its preparation – tables, charts, calculations; something that we will be able to do quite soon, given good reference data, of course).

**Exercise 2.8** (\*) Check if it is easy to find on the internet (in reliable sources) some raw data sets related to the body mass studies, e.g., measuring subjects' height, weight, body fat and muscle percentage, etc.

### 2.3.3 The `while` Loop

The `while` loop executes a given statement or a series of statements as long as a given condition is true.

For example, here is a simple simulator determining how long we have to wait until drawing the first number not greater than 0.01 whilst generating numbers in the unit interval:

```
count = 0
while np.random.rand() > 0.01:
    count = count + 1
print(count)
## 117
```

**Exercise 2.9** Using the `while` loop, determine the arithmetic mean of 10 randomly generated numbers (i.e., the sum of the numbers divided by 10).

---

## 2.4 Defining Own Functions

We can also define our own functions as a means for code reuse. For instance, below is one that computes the minimum (with respect to the `<` relation) of three given objects:

```
def min3(a, b, c):
    """
    A function to determine the minimum of three given inputs.

    By the way, this is a docstring (documentation string);
    call help("min3") later.
    """
    if a < b:
        if a < c:
            return a
        else:
            return c
    else:
        if b < c:
            return b
        else:
            return c
```

Example calls:

```
print(min3(10, 20, 30),
      min3(10, 30, 20),
      min3(20, 10, 30),
      min3(20, 30, 10),
      min3(30, 10, 20),
      min3(30, 20, 10))
## 10 10 10 10 10 10
```

Note that the function *returns* a value. Hence, the result can be fetched and used in further computations.

```
x = min3(np.random.rand(), 0.5, np.random.rand()) # minimum of 3 numbers
x = round(x, 3) # do something with the result
print(x)
## 0.5
```

**Exercise 2.10** Write a function named *bmi* which computes and returns a person's BMI, given their weight (in kilograms) and height (in centimetres). As documenting functions constitutes a good development practice, do not forget about including a docstring.

We can also introduce new variables inside a function's body. This can help the function perform what it has been designed to do.

```
def min3(a, b, c):
    """
    A function to determine the minimum of three given inputs
    (alternative version).
    """
    m = a # a local (temporary/auxiliary) variable
    if b < m:
        m = b
    if c < m: # be careful! no `else` or `elif` here - it's a separate `if`
        m = c
    return m
```

Example call:

```
m = 7
n = 10
o = 3
min3(m, n, o)
## 3
```

All *local variables* cease to exist after the function is called. Notice that *m* inside the function is a variable independent of *m* in the global (calling) scope.

```
print(m) # this is still the global `m` from before the call
## 7
```

**Exercise 2.11** Write a function `max3` which determines the maximum of 3 given values.

**Exercise 2.12** Write a function `med3` which defines the median of 3 given values (the one value that is in-between the other ones).

**Exercise 2.13** (\*) Write a function `min4` to compute the minimum of 4 values.

**Note:** Lambda expressions give us an uncomplicated way to define functions using a single line of code. Their syntax is: `lambda argument_name: return_value`.

```
square = lambda x: x**2 # i.e., def square(x): return x**2
square(4)
## 16
```

Objects generated through lambda expressions do not have to be assigned a name – they can be anonymous. This is useful when calling methods that take other functions as their arguments. With lambdas, the latter can be generated on the fly.

```
def print_x_and_fx(x, f):
    """
    Arguments: x - some object; f - a function to be called on x
    """
    print(f"x = {x} and f(x) = {f(x)}")

print_x_and_fx(4, lambda x: x**2)
## x = 4 and f(x) = 16
print_x_and_fx(math.pi/4, lambda x: round(math.cos(x), 5))
## x = 0.7853981633974483 and f(x) = 0.70711
```

## 2.5 Exercises

**Exercise 2.14** What does `import xxxxxxx as x` mean?

**Exercise 2.15** What is the difference between `if` and `while`?

**Exercise 2.16** Name the scalar types we have introduced in this chapter.

**Exercise 2.17** What is a docstring and how to create and access it?

**Exercise 2.18** What are keyword arguments?

# 3

---

## *Sequential and Other Types in Python*

---

### 3.1 Sequential Types

*Sequential* objects store data items that can be accessed by index (position). The three main types of sequential objects are: lists, tuples, and ranges.

Actually, strings (which we often treat as scalars) can also be classified as such. Therefore, the four main types of sequential objects are:

- lists,
- tuples,
- ranges, and
- strings.

#### 3.1.1 Lists

*Lists* consist of arbitrary Python objects and are created using square brackets:

```
x = [True, "two", 3, [4j, 5, "six"], None]
print(x)
## [True, 'two', 3, [4j, 5, 'six'], None]
```

Above is an example list featuring objects of type: `bool`, `str`, `int`, `list` (yes, it is possible to have a list inside another list), and `None` (the `None` object is the only of this kind, it represents a placeholder for nothingness), in this order.

---

**Note:** We will often be using lists when creating vectors in `numpy` or data frame columns in `pandas`. Further, lists of lists of equal lengths can be used to create matrices.

---

Each list is *mutable* and hence its state may be changed arbitrarily. For instance, we can append a new object at its end:

```
x.append("spam")
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
print(x)
## [True, 'two', 3, [4j, 5, 'six'], None, 'spam']
```

Thus, the `list.append` method modified `x` in-place.

### 3.1.2 Tuples

Next, *tuples* are like lists, but they are *immutable* (read-only) – once created, they cannot be altered.

```
("one", [], (3j, 4))
## ('one', [], (3j, 4))
```

This gave us a triple (3-tuple) featuring a string, an empty list, and a pair (2-tuple). Let us stress that we can drop the round brackets and still get a tuple:

```
1, 2, 3 # the same as `'(1, 2, 3)`
## (1, 2, 3)
```

Also:

```
42, # equivalently: `'(42, )`
## (42,)
```

Note the trailing comma; the above notation defines a 1-tuple. It is not the same as the simple 42 or (42), which is an object of type `int`.

**Note:** Having a separate data type representing an immutable sequence makes sense in certain contexts. For example, a data frame's *shape* is its inherent property that should not be tinkered with. If a tabular dataset has 10 rows and 5 columns, we should not allow the user to set the former to 15 (without making further assumptions, providing extra data, etc.).

When creating collections of items, we usually prefer lists, as they are more flexible a data type. Yet, in [Section 3.4.2](#) we will mention that many functions return tuples. Therefore, we should be able to handle them with confidence.

### 3.1.3 Ranges

Objects defined by calling `range(from, to)` or `range(from, to, by)` represent arithmetic progressions of integers. For the sake of illustration, let us convert a few of them to ordinary lists:

```
list(range(0, 5)) # i.e., range(0, 5, 1) - from 0 to 5 (exclusive) by 1
## [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
list(range(10, 0, -1)) # from 10 to 0 (exclusive) by -1
## [10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1]
```

Let us point out that the rightmost boundary (to) is exclusive and that by defaults to 1.

### 3.1.4 Strings (Again)

Recall that we have already discussed character strings in [Section 2.1.3](#).

```
"example\nstring"
## 'example\nstring'
```

Strings are often treated as scalars (atomic entities, as in: a string as a whole). However, as we will soon find out, the individual characters are also accessible by index.

Furthermore, in [Chapter 14](#) we will discuss numerous operations on text.

## 3.2 Working with Sequences

### 3.2.1 Extracting Elements

The index operator, ` [...]`, can be applied on any sequential object to extract an element at a position specified by a single integer.

```
x = ["one", "two", "three", "four", "five"]
x[0] # the first element
## 'one'
x[1] # the second element
## 'two'
x[len(x)-1] # the last element
## 'five'
```

Therefore, the valid indexes are  $0, 1, \dots, n-2, n-1$ , where  $n$  is the length (size) of the sequence, which can be fetched by calling `len`.

**Important:** Think of an index as the distance from the start of a sequence. For example, `x[3]` means “3 items away from the beginning”, hence, the 4th element.

Negative indexes count from the end:

```
x[-1] # the last element (ultimate)
## 'five'
x[-2] # the next to last (the last but one, penultimate)
## 'four'
x[-len(x)] # the first element
## 'one'
```

The index operator can be applied on any sequential object:

```
"string"[3]
## 'i'
```

Indexing a string returns a string – that is why we have classified strings as scalars too.

More examples:

```
range(0, 10)[-1] # the last item in an arithmetic progression
## 9
(1,)[:0] # extract from a 1-tuple
## 1
```

### 3.2.2 Slicing

We can also use slices of the form `from:to` or `from:to:by` to select a subsequence of a given sequence. Slices are similar to ranges, but `:` can only be used within square brackets.

```
x = ["one", "two", "three", "four", "five"]
x[1:4] # from 2nd to 5th (exclusive)
## ['two', 'three', 'four']
x[-1:0:-2] # from last to first (exclusive) by every 2nd backwards
## ['five', 'three']
```

Actually, `from` and `to` are optional – when omitted, they default to one of the sequence boundaries.

```
x[3:] # from 3rd to end
## ['four', 'five']
x[:2] # first two
## ['one', 'two']
x[:0] # none (first zero)
## []
x[::-2] # every 2nd from the start
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## ['one', 'three', 'five']
x[::-1] # elements in reverse order
## ['five', 'four', 'three', 'two', 'one']
```

And, of course, they can be applied on other sequential objects as well:

```
"spam, bacon, spam, and eggs"[13:17] # fetch a substring
## 'spam'
```

**Important:** Knowing the difference between element extraction and subsetting a sequence (creating a subsequence) is crucial.

For example:

```
x[0] # extraction (indexing with a single integer)
## 'one'
```

gives the object *at* that index.

```
x[0:1] # subsetting (indexing with a slice)
## ['one']
```

gives the object of the same type as x (here, a list) featuring the items at that indexes (in this case, only the first object, but a slice can potentially select any number of elements, including none).

**pandas** data frames and **numpy** arrays will behave similarly, but there will be many more indexing options (as discussed in [Section 5.4](#), [Section 8.2](#), and [Section 10.5](#)).

### 3.2.3 Modifying Elements

Lists are *mutable* – their state may be changed. The index operator can be used to replace the elements at given indexes.

```
x = ["one", "two", "three", "four", "five"]
x[0] = "spam" # replace the first element
x[-3:] = ["bacon", "eggs"] # replace last three with given two
print(x)
## ['spam', 'two', 'bacon', 'eggs']
```

**Exercise 3.1** There are quite a few methods that we can use to modify list elements: not only the aforementioned **append**, but also **insert**, **remove**, **pop**, etc. Invoke **help("list")** to access their descriptions and call them on a few example lists.

**Exercise 3.2** Verify that we cannot perform anything similar to the above on tuples, ranges, and strings.

### 3.2.4 Searching for Elements

The `in` operator and its negation, `not in`, determine whether an element exists in a given sequence:

```
7 in range(0, 10)
## True
[2, 3] in [1, [2, 3], [4, 5, 6]]
## True
```

For strings, `in` tests whether a string features a specific *substring*, so we do not have to restrict ourselves to single characters:

```
"spam" in "lovely spams"
## True
```

**Exercise 3.3** Check out the `count` and `index` methods for the `list` and other classes.

### 3.2.5 Arithmetic Operators

Some arithmetic operators have been *overloaded* for certain sequential types, but they carry different meanings than those for integers and floats.

In particular, `+` can be used to join (concatenate) strings, lists, and tuples:

```
"spam" + " " + "bacon"
## 'spam bacon'
[1, 2, 3] + [4]
## [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

and `\*` duplicates (recycles) a given sequence:

```
"spam" * 3
## 'spamspamspam'
(1, 2) * 4
## (1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2)
```

In each case, a new object has been returned.

### 3.3 Dictionaries

Dictionaries (objects of type `dict`) are sets of `key:value` pairs, where the `values` (any Python object) can be accessed by `key` (usually a string).

```
x = {
    "a": [1, 2, 3],
    "b": 7,
    "z": "spam!"
}
print(x)
## {'a': [1, 2, 3], 'b': 7, 'z': 'spam!'}
```

We can also create a dictionary with string keys using the `dict` function which accepts any keyword arguments:

```
dict(a=[1, 2, 3], b=7, z="spam!")
## {'a': [1, 2, 3], 'b': 7, 'z': 'spam!'}
```

The index operator can be used to extract specific elements:

```
x["a"]
## [1, 2, 3]
```

In this context, `x[0]` is not valid – it is not an object of sequential type; a key of `0` does not exist in a given dictionary.

The `in` operator checks whether a given key exists:

```
"a" in x, 0 not in x, "z" in x, "w" in x # a tuple of 4 tests' results
## (True, True, True, False)
```

We can also add new elements to a dictionary:

```
x["f"] = "more spam!"
print(x)
## {'a': [1, 2, 3], 'b': 7, 'z': 'spam!', 'f': 'more spam!'}
```

**Example 3.4** (\*) In practice, we often import JSON files (which is a popular data exchange format on the internet) exactly in the form of Python dictionaries. Let us demo it quickly:

```
import requests
x = requests.get("https://api.github.com/users/gagolews/starred").json()
```

Now `x` is a sequence of dictionaries giving the information on the repositories starred by yours truly on GitHub. As an exercise, the reader is encouraged to inspect its structure.

---

## 3.4 Iterable Types

All the objects we have discussed here are *iterable*. In other words, we can iterate through each element contained therein.

In particular, the `list` and `tuple` functions take any iterable object and convert it to a sequence of the corresponding type, for instance:

```
list("spam")
## ['s', 'p', 'a', 'm']
tuple(range(0, 10, 2))
## (0, 2, 4, 6, 8)
list({ "a": 1, "b": ["spam", "bacon", "spam"] })
## ['a', 'b']
```

**Exercise 3.5** Take a look at the documentation of the `extend` method for the `list` class. The manual page suggests that this operation takes any iterable object. Feed it with a `list`, `tuple`, `range`, and a string and see what happens.

The notion of iterable objects is essential, as they appear in many contexts. There are quite a few other iterable types that are, for example, non-sequential (we cannot access their elements at random using the index operator).

**Exercise 3.6** (\*) Check out the `enumerate`, `zip`, and `reversed` functions and what kind of iterable objects they return.

### 3.4.1 The for Loop

The `for` loop iterates over every element in an iterable object, allowing us to perform a specific action. For example:

```
x = [1, "two", ["three", 3j, 3], False] # some iterable object
for el in x: # for every element in `x`, let's call it `el`
    print(el) # do something on `el`
## 1
## two
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## ['three', 3j, 3]
## False
```

Another example:

```
for i in range(len(x)):
    print(i, x[i], sep=":") # sep=" " is the default (element separator)
## 0: 1
## 1: two
## 2: ['three', 3j, 3]
## 3: False
```

One more example – computing the elementwise multiply of two vectors of equal lengths:

```
x = [1, 2, 3, 4, 5] # for testing
y = [1, 10, 100, 1000, 10000] # just a test
z = [] # result list - start with an empty one
for i in range(len(x)):
    z.append(x[i] * y[i])
print(z)
## [1, 20, 300, 4000, 50000]
```

Yet another example: here is a function that determines the minimum of a given iterable object (compare the built-in `min` function, see `help("min")`).

```
import math
def mymin(x):
    """
    The smallest element in an iterable object x.
    We assume that x consists of numbers only.
    """
    curmin = math.inf # infinity is greater than any other number
    for e in x:
        if e < curmin:
            curmin = e # a better candidate for the minimum
    return curmin
```

**Exercise 3.7** Write your own basic versions (using the `for` loop) of the built-in `max`, `sum`, `any`, and `all` functions.

**Exercise 3.8** (\*) The `glob` function in the `glob` module can be used to list all files in a given directory whose names match a specific wildcard, e.g., `glob.glob("~/Music/*.mp3")` ("~" points to the current user's home directory, see Section 13.6.1). Moreover, `getsize` from the `os.path`

*module returns the size of a given file, in bytes. Write a function that determines the total size of all the files in a given directory.*

### 3.4.2 Tuple Assignment

We can create many variables in one line of code by using the syntax `tuple_of_identifiers = iterable_object`, which unpacks the iterable:

```
a, b, c = [1, "two", [3, 3j, "three"]]
print(a)
## 1
print(b)
## two
print(c)
## [3, 3j, 'three']
```

This is useful, for example, when the swapping of two elements is needed:

```
a, b = 1, 2 # the same as (a, b) = (1, 2)
a, b = b, a # swap a and b
print(a)
## 2
print(b)
## 1
```

Another use case is where we fetch outputs of functions that return many objects at once. For instance, later we will learn about `numpy.unique` which (depending on arguments passed) may return a tuple of arrays:

```
import numpy as np
result = np.unique([1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1], return_counts=True)
print(result)
## (array([1, 2, 3]), array([5, 3, 1]))
```

That this is indeed a tuple of length two (which we should be able to tell already by merely looking at the result: note the round brackets and two objects separated by a comma) can be verified as follows:

```
type(result), len(result)
## (<class 'tuple'>, 2)
```

Now, instead of:

```
values = result[0]
counts = result[1]
```

we can write:

```
values, counts = np.unique([1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1], return_counts=True)
```

This gives two separate variables, each storing a different array:

```
print(values)
## [1 2 3]
print(counts)
## [5 3 1]
```

If only the second item was of our interest, we could have written:

```
counts = np.unique([1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1], return_counts=True)[1]
print(counts)
## [5 3 1]
```

because a tuple is a sequential object.

**Example 3.9** (\*) Knowing that the `dict.items` method generates an iterable object that can be used to traverse through all the (key, value) pairs:

```
x = { "a": 1, "b": ["spam", "bacon", "spam"] }
print(list(x.items())) # just a demo
## [('a', 1), ('b', ['spam', 'bacon', 'spam'])]
```

we can utilise tuple assignments in contexts such as:

```
for k, v in x.items(): # or: for (k, v) in x.items()...
    print(k, v, sep=":")
## a: 1
## b: ['spam', 'bacon', 'spam']
```

**Note:** (\*\*\*) If there are too many values to unpack, we can use the notation like `*name` inside the `tuple_of_identifiers`. This will serve as a placeholder that gathers all the remaining values and wraps them up in a list:

```
a, b, *c, d = range(10)
print(a, b, c, d, sep="\n")
## 0
## 1
## [2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8]
## 9
```

This placeholder may appear only once on the lefthand side of the assignment operator.

### 3.4.3 Argument Unpacking (\*)

Sometimes we will need to call a function with many parameters or call a series of functions with similar arguments (e.g., when plotting many objects using the same plotting style like colour, shape, font). In such scenarios, it may be convenient to pre-prepare the data to be passed as their inputs beforehand.

Consider the following function that takes four arguments and prints them out:

```
def test(a, b, c, d):
    "It is just a test - simply prints the arguments passed"
    print("a = ", a, ", b = ", b, ", c = ", c, ", d = ", d, sep="")
```

Arguments to be matched positionally can be wrapped inside any iterable object and then unpacked using the asterisk operator:

```
args = [1, 2, 3, 4] # merely an example
test(*args) # just like test(1, 2, 3, 4)
## a = 1, b = 2, c = 3, d = 4
```

Furthermore, keyword arguments can be wrapped inside a dictionary and unpacked with a double asterisk:

```
kwargs = dict(a=1, c=3, d=4, b=2)
test(**kwargs)
## a = 1, b = 2, c = 3, d = 4
```

The unpackings can be intertwined, hence the following calls are equivalent:

```
test(1, *range(2, 4), 4)
## a = 1, b = 2, c = 3, d = 4
test(1, **dict(d=4, c=3, b=2))
## a = 1, b = 2, c = 3, d = 4
test(*range(1, 3), **dict(d=4, c=3))
## a = 1, b = 2, c = 3, d = 4
```

### 3.4.4 Variadic Arguments: `*args` and `**kwargs` (\*)

We can also construct a function that takes any number of positional or keyword arguments by including `*args` or `**kwargs` (those are customary names) in their parameter list:

```
def test(a, b, *args, **kwargs):
    "simply prints the arguments passed"
    print(
        "a = ", a, ", b = ", b,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
", args = ", args, ", kwargs = ", kwargs, sep=""  
)
```

For example:

```
test(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, spam=6, eggs=7)  
## a = 1, b = 2, args = (3, 4, 5), kwargs = {'spam': 6, 'eggs': 7}
```

We see that `*args` gathers all the positionally matched arguments (except `a` and `b`, which were set explicitly) into a tuple. On the other hand, `**kwargs` is a dictionary that stores all keyword arguments not featured in the function's parameter list.

**Exercise 3.10** From time to time, we will be coming across `*args` and `**kwargs` in various contexts. Study what `matplotlib.pyplot.plot` uses them for (by calling `help(plt.plot)`).

---

## 3.5 Object References and Copying (\*)

### 3.5.1 Copying References

It is important to always keep in mind that when writing:

```
x = [1, 2, 3]  
y = x
```

the assignment operator does not create a copy of `x`; both `x` and `y` refer to the same object in the computer's memory.

---

**Important:** If `x` is mutable, any change made to it will affect `y` (as, again, they are two different means to access the same object). This will also be true for `numpy` arrays and `pandas` data frames.

---

Hence:

```
x.append(4)
```

And now:

```
print(y)  
## [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

gives the same result as a call to `print(x)`.

### 3.5.2 Pass by Assignment

Arguments are passed to functions by assignment too. In other words, they behave as if `=` was used – what we get is another reference to the existing object.

```
def myadd(z, i):
    z.append(i)
```

And now:

```
myadd(x, 5)
myadd(y, 6)
print(x)
## [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]
```

### 3.5.3 Object Copies

If we find the above behaviour undesirable, we can always make a copy of an object. It is customary for the mutable objects to be equipped with a relevant method:

```
x = [1, 2, 3]
y = x.copy()
x.append(4)
print(y)
## [1, 2, 3]
```

This did not change the object referred to as `y`, because it is now a different entity.

### 3.5.4 Modify In Place or Return a Modified Copy?

We now know that we *can* have functions or methods that change the state of a given object. Hence, for all the functions we apply, it is important to read their documentation to determine if they modify their inputs in-place or return an entirely new object.

Consider the following examples. The `sorted` function returns a sorted version of the input iterable:

```
x = [5, 3, 2, 4, 1]
print(sorted(x)) # returns a sorted copy of x (does not change x)
## [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
print(x) # unchanged
## [5, 3, 2, 4, 1]
```

The `list.sorted` method modifies the list it is applied on in-place:

```
x = [5, 3, 2, 4, 1]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
x.sort() # modifies x in place and returns nothing
print(x)
## [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
```

To add to joy, `random.shuffle` is a *function* (not: a method) that changes the state of the argument:

```
x = [5, 3, 2, 4, 1]
import random
random.shuffle(x) # modifies x in place, returns nothing
print(x)
## [4, 1, 5, 2, 3]
```

Moreover, later we will learn about the `Series` class in `pandas`, which represents data frame columns. It has the `sort_values` method which by default returns a sorted copy of the object it acts upon:

```
import pandas as pd
x = pd.Series([5, 3, 2, 4, 1])
print(list(x.sort_values())) # inplace=False
## [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
print(list(x)) # unchanged
## [5, 3, 2, 4, 1]
```

However, this behaviour might be changed:

```
x = pd.Series([5, 3, 2, 4, 1])
x.sort_values(inplace=True) # note the argument now
print(list(x)) # changed
## [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
```

---

**Important:** We should always study the official<sup>1</sup> documentation of every function we call. Although surely some patterns arise (such as: a method is likely to modify an object in place whereas a similar standalone function will be returning a copy), ultimately, the functions' developers are free to come up with some exceptions to them if they deem it more sensible or convenient.

---

<sup>1</sup> And not some random tutorial on the internet displaying numerous ads.

### 3.6 Further Reading

Our overview of the Python language is by no means exhaustive. However, it touches upon the most important topics from the perspective of data wrangling.

We will mention a few additional language elements in this course (list comprehensions, file handling, string formatting, regular expressions, etc.). Yet, we have deliberately decided *not* to introduce some language constructs which we can easily do without (e.g., `else` clauses on `for` and `while` loops, the `match` statement) or are perhaps too technical for an introductory course (`yield`, `iter` and `next`, sets, name binding scopes, deep copying of objects, defining own classes, overloading operators, function factories and closures).

Also, we skipped the constructs that do not work well with the third-party packages we will soon be using (e.g., a notation like  $x < y < z$  is not valid if the three involved variables are `numpy` vectors of lengths greater than 1).

The said simplifications have been brought in so the reader is not overwhelmed – we strongly advocate for minimalism in software development. Python is the basis for one of many possible programming environments for exercising data science. Thus, in the long run, it is best to focus on developing the most *transferable* skills, as other software solutions might not enjoy all the Python's syntactic sugar, and vice versa.

The reader is encouraged to skim through at least the following chapters in the [official Python 3 tutorial](#)<sup>2</sup>:

- [3. An Informal Introduction to Python](#)<sup>3</sup>,
  - [4. More Control Flow Tools](#)<sup>4</sup>,
  - [5. Data Structures](#)<sup>5</sup>.
- 

### 3.7 Exercises

**Exercise 3.11** Name the sequential objects we have introduced.

**Exercise 3.12** Is every iterable object sequential?

**Exercise 3.13** Is `dict` an instance of a sequential type?

**Exercise 3.14** What is the meaning of `+` and `*` operations on strings and lists?`

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/tutorial/index.html>

<sup>3</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/tutorial/introduction.html>

<sup>4</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/tutorial/controlflow.html>

<sup>5</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/tutorial/datastructures.html>

**Exercise 3.15** Given a list  $x$  featuring numeric scalars, how to create a new list of the same length giving the squares of all the elements in the former?

**Exercise 3.16** (\*) How to make an object copy and when we should do so?

**Exercise 3.17** What is the difference between  $x[0]$ ,  $x[1]$ ,  $x[:0]$ , and  $x[:1]$ , where  $x$  is a sequential object?

---



## **Part II**

# **Unidimensional Data**



# 4

---

## Unidimensional Numeric Data and Their Empirical Distribution

---

Our data wrangling adventure starts the moment we get access to, or decide to collect, dozens of data points representing some measurements, such as sensor readings for some industrial processes, body measures for patients in a clinic, salaries of employees, sizes of cities, etc.

For instance, consider the heights of adult females ( $\geq 18$  years old, in cm) in the longitudinal study called National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey ([NHANES<sup>1</sup>](#)) conducted by the US Centres for Disease Control and Prevention.

```
heights = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +  
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_height_2020.txt")
```

Let us preview a few observations:

```
heights[:6] # first six  
## array([160.2, 152.7, 161.2, 157.4, 154.6, 144.7])
```

This is an example of *quantitative* (numeric) data. They are in the form of a series of numbers. It makes sense to apply various mathematical operations on them, including subtraction, division, taking logarithms, comparing which one is greater than the other, and so forth.

Most importantly, here, all the observations are *independent* of each other. Each value represents a different person. Our data sample consists of 4221 points on the real line (a *bag* of points whose actual ordering of does not matter). From [Figure 4.1](#), we see that merely looking at the numbers themselves tells us nothing. There are too many of them.

This is why we are interested in studying a multitude of methods that can bring some insight into the reality behind the numbers. For example, inspecting their distribution.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://wwwn.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes/search/datapage.aspx>

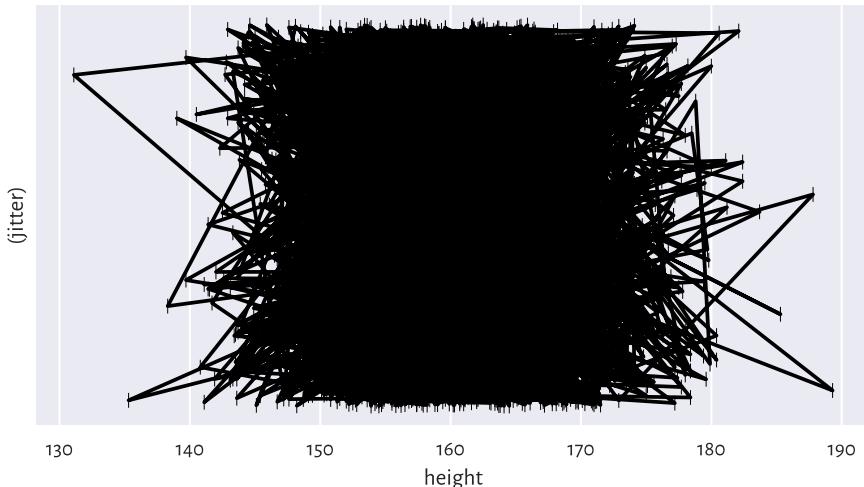


Figure 4.1: The `heights` dataset is comprised of independent points on the real line. We have added some jitter on the y-axis for dramatic effects only: the points are too plentiful

## 4.1 Creating Vectors in `numpy`

In this chapter we introduce basic ways to create `numpy` vectors, which are an efficient data structure for storing and operating on numeric data just like the ones above.

`numpy`<sup>2</sup> [[H+20]] is an open-source add-on for numerical computing written by Travis Oiphant and other developers in 2005 (although the project has a much longer history<sup>3</sup> and stands on the shoulders of many giants (e.g., concepts from the APL and Fortran languages). It adds support for multi-dimensional arrays and numerous operations on them, similar to those available in R, S, GNU Octave, Scilab, Julia, Perl (via `Perl Data Language`), and some numerical analysis libraries such as `LAPACK`, `GNU GSL`, etc.

Many other packages are built on top of `numpy` (including `scipy` [[V+20]], `pandas` [[McK17]], and `sklearn` [[PVG+11]]), hence our studying it in very detail is utterly important. Whatever we learn about vectors will be greatly transferable to the case of the processing of data frame columns.

It is customary to import the `numpy` package under the `np` alias:

<sup>2</sup> <https://numpy.org/doc/stable/reference/index.html>

<sup>3</sup> [https://scipy.github.io/old-wiki/pages/History\\_of\\_SciPy](https://scipy.github.io/old-wiki/pages/History_of_SciPy)

```
import numpy as np
```

Hence, our code can now refer to the objects defined therein as `np.spam`, `np.bacon`, or `np.spam`.

### 4.1.1 Enumerating Elements

One way to create a vector is by calling the `numpy.array` function:

```
x = np.array([10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60])
x
## array([10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60])
```

Here, the vector elements were specified by means of an ordinary list. Ranges and tuples can also be used as content providers, which the kind reader is encouraged to check themself.

A vector of length (size)  $n$  is often used to represent a point in an  $n$  dimensional space (for example, GPS coordinates of a place on Earth assume  $n=2$ ) or  $n$  readings of some 1-dimensional quantity (e.g., recorded heights of  $n$  people).

The said length can either be read using the previously mentioned `len` function:

```
len(x)
## 6
```

or by reading the array's `shape` slot:

```
x.shape
## (6,)
```

A vector is a *1-dimensional array*, hence its shape is stored as a tuple of length 1 (the number of dimensions is given by querying `x.ndim`). We can therefore get its length by accessing `x.shape[0]`.

On a side note, matrices (2-dimensional arrays), which we shall study in [Chapter 7](#), will be of shape like (`number_of_rows`, `number_of_columns`).

Recall that Python lists, e.g., `[1, 2, 3]`, represent simple sequences of objects of any kind. Their use cases are very broad, which is both an advantage and something quite the opposite. *Vectors* in `numpy` are like lists, but on steroids. They are powerful in scientific computing because of the underlying assumption that each object they store is of the same type<sup>4</sup>. Although it is possible to save references to arbitrary objects

---

<sup>4</sup> (\*) Vectors are directly representable as simple arrays in the C programming language, in which `numpy`

therein, in most scenarios we will be dealing with vectors of logical values, integers, and floating-point numbers. Thanks to this, a wide range of applicable methods could have been defined to enable the performing of the most popular mathematical operations.

And so, above we have created a sequence of integers:

```
x.dtype # data type
## dtype('int64')
```

However, other element types are possible too. For instance, we can convert the above to a `float` vector:

```
x.astype(float) # or np.array(x, dtype=float)
## array([10., 20., 30., 40., 50., 60.])
```

Let us emphasise that the above is now printed differently (compare the output of `print(x)` above).

Furthermore:

```
np.array([True, False, False, True])
## array([ True, False, False,  True])
```

gave a logical vector; the constructor detected that the common type of all the elements is `bool`. Also:

```
np.array(["spam", "spam", "bacon", "spam"])
## array(['spam', 'spam', 'bacon', 'spam'], dtype='<U5')
```

This yielded an array of strings in Unicode (i.e., capable of storing any character in any alphabet, emojis, mathematical symbols, etc.), each of no more than 5 code points in length. It is important to know this, because, as we will point out in [Chapter 14](#), replacing any element with new content will result in the too long strings' truncation. This can be remedied by calling `x.astype("<U10")`, for example.

### 4.1.2 Arithmetic Progressions

`numpy's` `arange` is similar to the built-in `range`, but outputs a vector:

```
np.arange(0, 10, 2) # from 0 to 10 (exclusive) by 2
## array([0, 2, 4, 6, 8])
```

---

procedures are written. Hence, operations on vectors will be very fast provided that we are using the functions working on them *as a whole*. The readers who have some background in other lower-level languages, will need to get out of the habit of processing *individual* elements using a `for`-like loop.

**numpy.linspace** (*linear space*) creates a sequence of equidistant points in a given interval:

```
np.linspace(0, 1, 5) # from 0 to 1 (inclusive), 5 equispaced values
## array([0. , 0.25, 0.5 , 0.75, 1. ])
```

**Exercise 4.1** Call `help(np.linspace)` or `help("numpy.linspace")` to study the meaning of the `endpoint` argument. Find the same documentation page at the `numpy` project's website<sup>5</sup>. Another way is to use your favourite search engine such as DuckDuckGo and query “`linspace site: numpy.org`”<sup>6</sup>. Always remember to gather information from first-hand sources. You should become a frequent visitor of this page (and similar ones). In particular, every so often it is a good idea to check out for significant updates at <https://numpy.org/news/>.

### 4.1.3 Repeating Values

**numpy.repeat** repeats each value a given number of times:

```
np.repeat(5, 6)
## array([5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5])
np.repeat([1, 2], 3)
## array([1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2])
np.repeat([1, 2], [3, 5])
## array([1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2])
```

In each case, every element from the list passed as the 1st argument was repeated the corresponding number of times, as defined by the 2nd argument. The kind reader should not expect us to elaborate upon the obtained results any further, because everything is evident: they need to look at the example calls, carefully study all the displayed outputs, and make the conclusions by themselves. If something is unclear, they should consult the official documentation and apply Rule #4.

Moving on. **numpy.tile**, on the other hand, repeats a whole sequence with *recycling*:

```
np.tile([1, 2], 3)
## array([1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2])
```

Notice the difference between the above and the result of `numpy.repeat([1, 2], 3)`.

See also<sup>7</sup> **numpy.zeros** and **numpy.ones** for some specialised versions of the above.

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://numpy.org/doc/stable/reference/index.html>

<sup>6</sup> DuckDuckGo also supports *search bangs* like “!numpy linspace” which redirect to the official documentation automatically.

<sup>7</sup> When we write *See also*, it means that this is an exercise for the reader (Rule #3), in this case: to look something up in the official documentation.

#### 4.1.4 `numpy.r_(*)`

`numpy.r_` gives perhaps the most flexible means for creating vectors involving quite a few of the aforementioned scenarios, however it has a quirky syntax.

For example:

```
np.r_[1, 2, 3, np.nan, 5, np.inf]
## array([ 1.,  2.,  3., nan,  5., inf])
```

Here, `nan` stands for a *not-a-number* and is used as a placeholder for missing values (discussed in [Section 15.1](#)) or *wrong* results, such as the square root of  $-1$  in the domain of reals. The `inf` object, on the other hand, means *infinity*,  $\infty$ . We can think of it as value that is too large to be represented in the set of floating-point numbers.

We see that `numpy.r_` uses square brackets instead of the round ones. This is actually smart, because we have mentioned in [Section 3.2.2](#) that slices (`:``) cannot be used outside them. And so:

```
np.r_[0:10:2] # like np.arange(0, 10, 2)
## array([0, 2, 4, 6, 8])
```

What is more, it accepts the following syntactic sugar:

```
np.r_[0:1:5j] # like np.linspace(0, 1, 5)
## array([0. , 0.25, 0.5 , 0.75, 1. ])
```

Here, `5j` does not have the literal meaning (a complex number). By an arbitrary convention, and only in this context, it denotes the output length of the sequence to be generated. Could the `numpy` authors do that? Well, they could, and they did. End of story.

Finally, we can combine many chunks into one:

```
np.r_[1, 2, [3]*2, 0:3, 0:3:3j]
## array([1. , 2. , 3. , 3. , 0. , 1. , 2. , 0. , 1.5, 3. ])
```

#### 4.1.5 Generating Pseudorandom Variates

The automatically attached `numpy.random` module defines many functions to generate pseudorandom numbers. We will be discussing the reason for our using the *pseudo* prefix in [Section 6.4](#), so now let us only quickly take note of a way to sample from the uniform distribution on the unit interval:

```
np.random.rand(5) # 5 pseudorandom observations in [0, 1]
## array([0.49340194, 0.41614605, 0.69780667, 0.45278338, 0.84061215])
```

and to pick a few values from a given set with replacement (so that any number can be generated multiple times):

```
np.random.choice(np.arange(1, 10), 20) # replace=True
## array([7, 7, 4, 6, 6, 2, 1, 7, 2, 1, 8, 9, 5, 5, 9, 8, 1, 2, 6, 6])
```

#### 4.1.6 Loading Data from Files

We will usually be reading whole heterogeneous tabular data sets using `pandas.read_csv`, being the topic we shall cover in Chapter 10.

It is worth knowing, though, that arrays with elements of the same type can be read efficiently from text (e.g., CSV) files using `numpy.loadtxt`. See the code chunk at the beginning of this chapter for an example.

**Exercise 4.2** Use `numpy.loadtxt` to read the `population_largest_cities_unnamed`<sup>8</sup> dataset from GitHub (click Raw to get access to its contents).

## 4.2 Mathematical Notation

Mathematically, we will be denoting number sequences with:

$$\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n),$$

where  $x_i$  is the  $i$ -th element therein and  $n$  is the length (size) of the tuple. Using the programming syntax,  $n$  corresponds to `len(x)` or, equivalently, `x.shape[0]`. Furthermore,  $x_i$  is `x[i-1]` (because the first element is at index 0).

The bold font (hopefully visible) is to emphasise that  $\mathbf{x}$  is not an atomic entity ( $x$ ), but rather a collection thereof. For brevity, instead of saying “let  $\mathbf{x}$  be a real-valued sequence<sup>9</sup> of length  $n$ ”, we shall write “let  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ”. Here:

- the “ $\in$ ” symbol stands for “is in” or “is a member of”,
- $\mathbb{R}$  denotes the set of real numbers (the very one that features, 0,  $-358745.2394$ , 42 and  $\pi$ , amongst uncountably many others), and
- $\mathbb{R}^n$  is the set of real-valued sequences of length  $n$  (i.e.,  $n$  such numbers considered at a time); e.g.,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  includes pairs such as  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(\pi/3, \sqrt{2}/2)$ , and  $(1/3, 10^3)$ .

---

<sup>8</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/population\\_largest\\_cities\\_unnamed.txt](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/population_largest_cities_unnamed.txt)

<sup>9</sup> If  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then we often say that  $\mathbf{x}$  is a sequence of  $n$  numbers, a (numeric)  $n$ -tuple, a  $n$ -dimensional real vector, a point in a  $n$ -dimensional real space, or an element of a real  $n$ -space, etc. In many contexts, they are synonymous.

---

**Note:** Mathematical notation is pleasantly *abstract* (general) in the sense that  $x$  can be anything, e.g., data on the incomes of households, sizes of the largest cities in some country, or heights of participants in some longitudinal study. At a first glance, such a representation of objects from the so-called *real world* might seem overly simplistic, especially if we wish to store information on very complex entities. However, in most cases, expressing them as *vectors* (i.e., establishing a set of numeric attributes that best describe them in a task at hand) is not only natural but also perfectly sufficient for achieving whatever we aim at.

---

**Exercise 4.3** Consider the following problems:

- How would you represent a patient in a clinic (for the purpose of conducting research in cardiology)?
- How would you represent a car in an insurance company's database (for the purpose of determining how much a driver should pay annually for the mandatory policy)?
- How would you represent a student in a university (for the purpose of granting them scholarships)?

In each case, list a few numeric features that best describe the reality of concern. On a side note, descriptive (categorical) labels can always be encoded as numbers, e.g.,  $\text{female}=1$ ,  $\text{male}=2$ , but this will be the topic of [Chapter 11](#).

Furthermore, by  $x_{(i)}$  (notice the bracket<sup>10</sup>) we will denote the  $i$ -th smallest value in  $x$  (also called the  $i$ -th *order statistic*). In particular,  $x_{(1)}$  is the sample minimum and  $x_{(n)}$  is the maximum. The same in Python:

```
x = np.array([5, 4, 2, 1, 3]) # just an example
x_sorted = np.sort(x)
x_sorted[0], x_sorted[-1] # the minimum and the maximum
## (1, 5)
```

Also, to avoid the clutter of notation, in certain formulae (e.g., in the definition of the type-7 quantiles in [Section 5.1.1](#)), we will be assuming that  $x_{(0)}$  is the same as  $x_{(1)}$  and  $x_{(n+1)}$  is equivalent to  $x_{(n)}$ .

---

## 4.3 Inspecting the Data Distribution with Histograms

*Histograms* are one of the most intuitive tools for depicting the empirical distribution of a data sample. We will be drawing them using the statistical data visualisation pack-

---

<sup>10</sup> Some textbooks denote the  $i$ -th order statistic with  $x_{i:n}$ , but we will not.

age called `seaborn`<sup>11</sup> [[Was21]] (written by Michael Waskom), which was built on top of the classic plotting library `matplotlib`<sup>12</sup> [[Hun07]] (originally developed by John D. Hunter). Let us import both packages and set their traditional aliases:

```
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
import seaborn as sns
```

---

**Note:** It is customary to call a single function from `seaborn` and then perform a series of additional calls to `matplotlib` to tweak the display details. It is important to remember that the former uses the latter to achieve its goals, not the other way around. In many exercises, `seaborn` might not even have the required functionality at all, and we will be using `matplotlib` only, and nothing else.

---

#### 4.3.1 heights: A Bell-Shaped Distribution

Let us draw a histogram of the `heights` dataset, see Figure 4.2.

```
sns.histplot(heights, bins=11, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

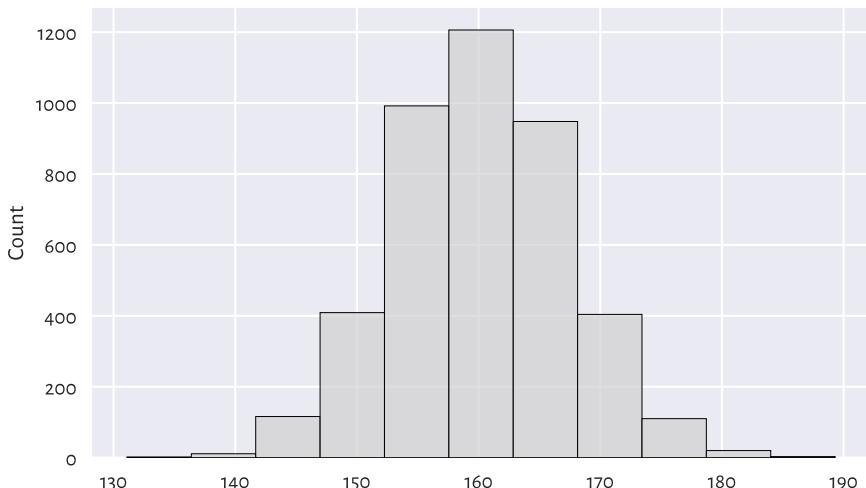


Figure 4.2: Histogram of the `heights` dataset; the empirical distribution is nicely bell-shaped

---

<sup>11</sup> <https://seaborn.pydata.org>

<sup>12</sup> <https://matplotlib.org/>

The data were split into 11 bins and plotted in such a way that the bar heights are proportional to the number of observations falling into each interval. The bins are non-overlapping, adjacent to each other, and of equal lengths. We can read their coordinates by looking at the bottom side of each rectangular bar. For example, there are ca. 1200 observations falling into the interval [158, 163] (more or less) and ca. 400 in [168, 173] (approximately).

This distribution is bell-shaped<sup>13</sup> – nicely symmetrical around about 160 cm. The most typical (*normal*) observations are somewhere in the middle, and the probability mass decreases quickly on both sides. Actually, in [Chapter 6](#) we will model this dataset using a *normal* distribution and obtain an excellent fit. In particular, we will mention that observations outside the interval [139, 181] are very rare (probability less than 1%; via the *3σ rule*, i.e., expected value  $\pm 3$  standard deviations).

### 4.3.2 income: A Right-Skewed Distribution

For some of us, a normal distribution is a prototypical one – we might expect (wishfully think) that many phenomena yield similar regularities. And that is indeed the case<sup>14</sup>, e.g., in psychology (IQ or personality tests), physiology (the above heights), or when measuring stuff with not-so-precise devices (distribution of errors). We might be tempted to think now that *everything* is normally distributed, but this is very much untrue.

Let us therefore consider another dataset. In [Figure 4.3](#) we depict the distribution of a simulated sample of disposable income of 1000 randomly chosen UK households, in British Pounds, for the financial year ending 2020 (unfortunately, the UK Office for National Statistics does not provide us with details on each taxpayer, for privacy and other reasons, hence we needed to recreate it based on data from [this report](#)<sup>15</sup>):

```
income = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/uk_income_simulated_2020.txt")
sns.histplot(income, stat="percent", bins=20, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

We have normalised (`stat="percent"`) the bar heights so that they all sum to 1 (or, equivalently, 100%), which resulted in a *probability histogram*.

Now we see that the probability density quickly increases, reaches its peak at around £15,500–£35,000 and then slowly goes down. We say that it has a *long tail* on the right (and hence it is *right- or positive-skewed*), which means that high or even very high salar-

<sup>13</sup> A rather traditional name, but we will get used to it.

<sup>14</sup> In fact, we have a proposition stating that the sum or average of many observations or otherwise simpler components of some more complex entity, assuming that they are independent and follow the same (any!) distribution with finite variance, is approximately normally distributed. This is called the Central Limit Theorem and it is a very strong mathematical result.

<sup>15</sup> <https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/personalandhouseholdfinances/incomeandwealth/bulletins/householddisposableincomeandinequality/financialyear2020>

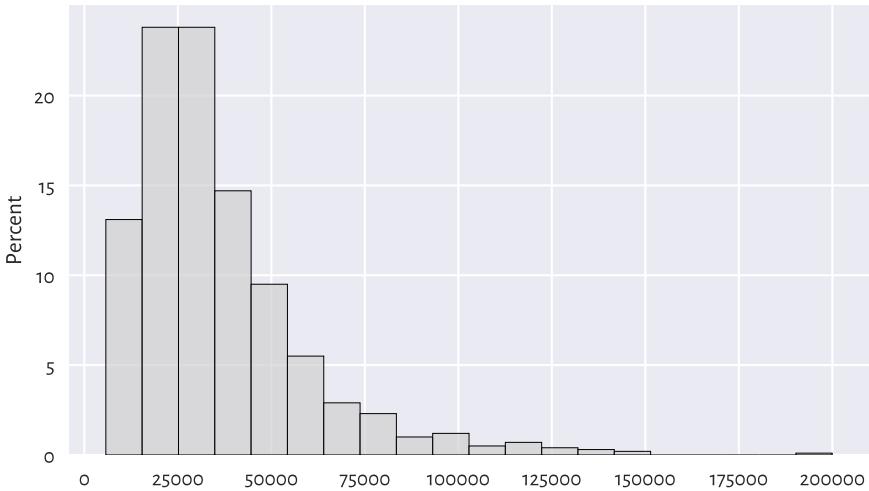


Figure 4.3: Histogram of the `income` dataset; the distribution is right-skewed

ies are still quite likely. Thus, it is quite a non-normal distribution. Most people are rather poor, they do not earn the average salary. We will get back to that later.

---

**Note:** Looking at Figure 4.3, we might have taken note of the relatively higher bars, as compared to their neighbours, at ca. £100,000 and £120,000. We might be tempted to try to invent a story about why there can be some difference in the relative probability mass, but we should refrain from it. Our data sample is quite small, and it is likely that they are merely due to some natural variability (Section 6.4.4). Of course, there might be some reasons behind it (theoretically), but we cannot read this only by looking at a single histogram. In other words, it is a tool that we use to identify some rather general features of the data distribution (like the overall shape), not the specifics.

---

**Exercise 4.4** There is also the `nhanes_adult_female_weight_2020`<sup>16</sup> dataset in our data repository, giving corresponding weights (in kilograms) of the NHANES study participants. Draw a histogram. Does its shape resemble the `income` or `heights` distribution more?

### 4.3.3 How Many Bins?

Unless some stronger assumptions about the data distribution are made, choosing the right number of bins is more art than science:

- too many will result in a rugged histogram,

---

<sup>16</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes\\_adult\\_female\\_weight\\_2020.txt](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_weight_2020.txt)

- too few might result in our missing of important details.

Figure 4.4 illustrates this.

```
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1) # 1 row, 2 columns, 1st plot
sns.histplot(income, bins=5, color="lightgray")
plt.subplot(1, 2, 2) # 1 row, 2 columns, 2nd plot
sns.histplot(income, bins=200, color="lightgray")
plt.ylabel(None)
plt.show()
```

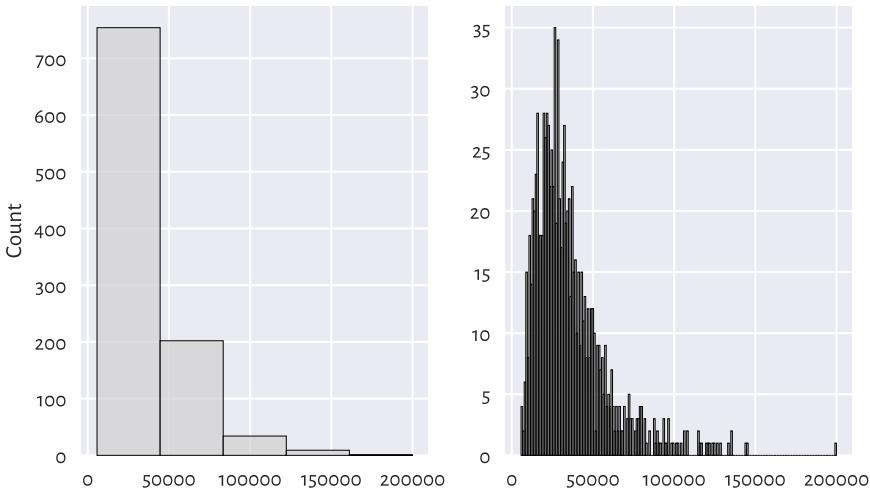


Figure 4.4: Too few and too many histogram bins (the `income` dataset)

For example, in the histogram with 5 bins, we miss the information that the ca. £20,000 income is more popular than the ca. £10,000 one. (as given by the first two bars in Figure 4.3).

On the other hand, the histogram with 200 bins already seems too fine-grained.

---

**Important:** Usually, the “truth” is probably somewhere in-between. When preparing histograms for publication (e.g., in a report or on a webpage), we might be tempted to think “one must choose one and only one bin count”. In fact, we do not have to – even though some people will insist on it, remember that it is we who are responsible for the data be presented in the most unambiguous fashion possible. Thus providing 2 or 3 histograms can sometimes be a much better idea.

Further, let us be aware that someone might want to trick us by choosing the number of bins that depict the reality in good light, when the truth is quite the opposite. For

instance, the histogram on the left above hides the poorest households inside the first bar – the first income bracket is very wide. If we cannot request access to the original data, best thing we can do is to simply ignore such a data visualisation instance and warn others not to trust it. A true data scientist must be a sceptic.

---

The documentation of `seaborn.histplot` (and the underlying `matplotlib.pyplot.hist`), states that the `bins` argument is passed to `numpy.histogram_bin_edges` to determine the intervals into which our data are to be split. `numpy.histogram` uses the same function and additionally returns the corresponding counts (how many observations fall into each bin) instead of plotting them.

```
counts, bins = np.histogram(income, 20)
counts
## array([131, 238, 238, 147, 95, 55, 29, 23, 10, 12, 5, 7, 4,
##        3, 2, 0, 0, 0, 1])
bins
## array([ 5750. , 15460.95, 25171.9 , 34882.85, 44593.8 , 54304.75,
##        64015.7 , 73726.65, 83437.6 , 93148.55, 102859.5 , 112570.45,
##        122281.4 , 131992.35, 141703.3 , 151414.25, 161125.2 , 170836.15,
##        180547.1 , 190258.05, 199969. ])

```

Thus, there are 238 observations both in the [15,461;25,172) and [25,172;34,883) intervals.

---

**Note:** A table of ranges and the corresponding counts can be useful for data reporting. It is more informative and takes less space than a series of raw numbers, especially if we present them like in the table below.

Table 4.1: Incomes of selected British households; the bin edges are pleasantly round numbers

| income bracket [£1000s] | count |
|-------------------------|-------|
| 0-200                   | 236   |
| 200-400                 | 459   |
| 400-600                 | 191   |
| 600-800                 | 64    |
| 800-1000                | 26    |
| 1000-1200               | 11    |
| 1200-1400               | 10    |
| 1400-1600               | 2     |
| 1600-1800               | 0     |
| 1800-2000               | 1     |

Reporting data in tabular form can also increase privacy of the subjects (making sub-

jects less identifiable, which is good) or hide some uncomfortable facts (which is not so good; “there are 10 people in our company earning *more* than £200,000 p.a.” – this can be as much as £10,000,000, but shush).

---

**Exercise 4.5** Find how we can provide the `seaborn.histplot` and `numpy.histogram` functions with custom bin breaks. Plot a histogram where the bin edges are 0, 20,000, 40,000, etc. (just like in the above table). Also let us highlight the fact that bins do not have to be of equal sizes: set the last bin to [140,000; 200,000].

**Example 4.6** Let us also inspect the bin edges and counts that we see in Figure 4.2:

```
counts, bins = np.histogram(heights, 11)
counts
## array([    2,     11,    116,   409,   992,  1206,   948,   404,   110,    20,      3])
bins
## array([131.1        , 136.39090909, 141.68181818, 146.97272727,
##        152.26363636, 157.55454545, 162.84545455, 168.13636364,
##        173.42727273, 178.71818182, 184.00909091, 189.3        ])
```

**Exercise 4.7** (\*) There are quite a few heuristics to determine the number of bins automatically, see `numpy.histogram_bin_edges` for a few formulae. Check out how different values of the `bins` argument (e.g., “`sturges`”, “`fd`”) affect the histogram shapes on both `income` and `heights` datasets. Each has its own limitations, none is perfect, but some might be a good starting point for further fine-tuning.

We will get back to the topic of manual data binning in Section 11.1.5.

#### 4.3.4 peds: A Bimodal Distribution (Already Binned)

Sometimes data we get access to have already been binned by somebody else. For instance, here are the December 2021 hourly average pedestrian counts<sup>17</sup> near the Southern Cross Station in Melbourne:

```
peds = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
                  "teaching_data/master/marek/southern_cross_station_peds_2019_dec.txt")
peds
## array([ 31.22580645,  18.38709677,  11.77419355,   8.48387097,
##        8.58064516,  58.70967742,  332.93548387, 1121.96774194,
##       2061.87096774, 1253.41935484,  531.64516129,  502.35483871,
##       899.06451613,  775.          ,  614.87096774,  825.06451613,
##      1542.74193548, 1870.48387097,  884.38709677,  345.83870968,
##      203.48387097, 150.4516129 ,  135.67741935,  94.03225806])
```

---

<sup>17</sup> <http://www.pedestrian.melbourne.vic.gov.au/>

We cannot thus use `seaborn.histplot` to depict them. Instead, we can rely on a more low-level function, `matplotlib.pyplot.bar`, see Figure 4.5.

```
plt.bar(np.arange(0, 24), width=1, height=peds,
       color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8)
plt.show()
```

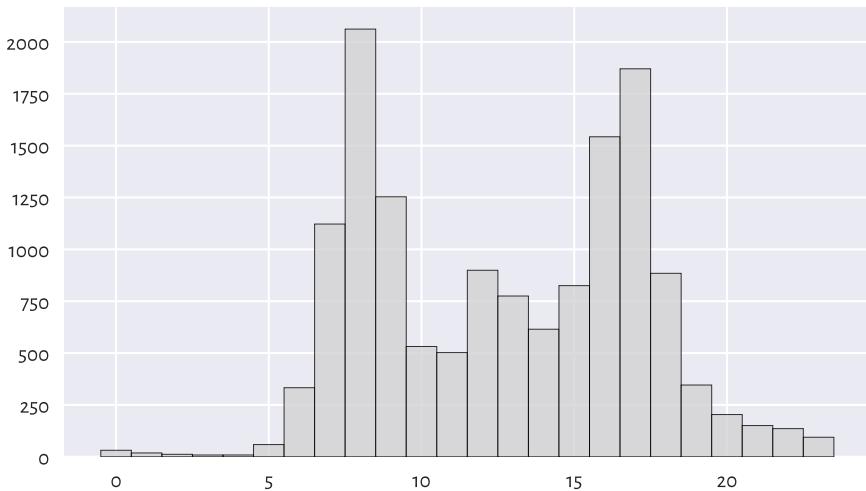


Figure 4.5: Histogram of the `peds` dataset; a bimodal (trimodal?) distribution

This is an example of a bimodal (or even trimodal) distribution: there is a morning peak and an evening peak (and some analysts probably would distinguish a lunchtime one too).

#### 4.3.5 `matura`: A Bell-Shaped Distribution (Almost)

Figure 4.6 depicts a histogram of another interesting dataset which comes in an already pre-summarised form.

```
matura = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
                     "teaching_data/master/marek/matura_2019_polish.txt")
plt.bar(np.arange(0, 71), width=1, height=matura,
       color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8)
plt.show()
```

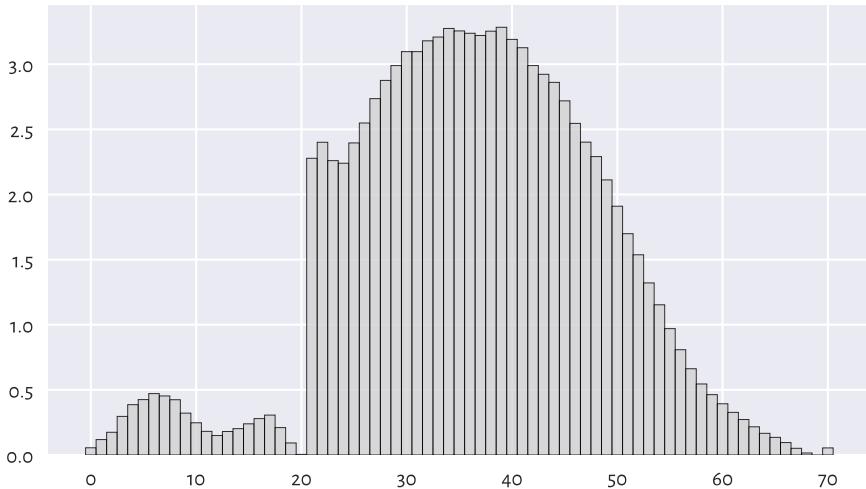


Figure 4.6: Histogram of `matura` dataset; a bell-shaped distribution... almost

This gives the [distribution<sup>18</sup>](#) of the 2019 Matura (end of high school) exam scores in Poland (in %) – Polish literature<sup>19</sup> at basic level.

It seems that the distribution should be bell-shaped, but someone tinkered with it. However, knowing that:

- the examiners are good people – we teachers love our students,
- 20 points were required to pass,
- 50 points were given for an essay – and beauty is in the eye of beholder,

this actually starts to make sense. Without graphically depicting this dataset, we would not know that such (albeit lucky for some students) *anomalies* occurred.

#### 4.3.6 marathon (Truncated – Fastest Runners): A Left-Skewed Distribution

Next, let us consider the 37th PZU Warsaw Marathon (2015) results.

```
marathon = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/37_pzu_warsaw_marathon_mins.txt")
```

Here are the top 5 gun times (in minutes):

<sup>18</sup> [https://cke.gov.pl/images/\\_EGZAMIN\\_MATURALNY\\_OD\\_2015/Informacje\\_o wynikach/2019/sprawozdanie/Sprawozdanie%202019%20-%20J%C4%99zyk%20polski.pdf](https://cke.gov.pl/images/_EGZAMIN_MATURALNY_OD_2015/Informacje_o wynikach/2019/sprawozdanie/Sprawozdanie%202019%20-%20J%C4%99zyk%20polski.pdf)

<sup>19</sup> Gombowicz, Nalkowska, Miłosz, Tuwim, etc. – I recommend.

```
marathon[:5] # preview first 5 (data are already sorted increasingly)
## array([129.32, 130.75, 130.97, 134.17, 134.68])
```

Plotting the histogram of the data on the participants who finished the 42.2 km run in less than three hours, i.e., a *truncated* version of this dataset, reveals that the data are highly *left-skewed*, see Figure 4.7.

```
sns.histplot(marathon[marathon < 180], color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

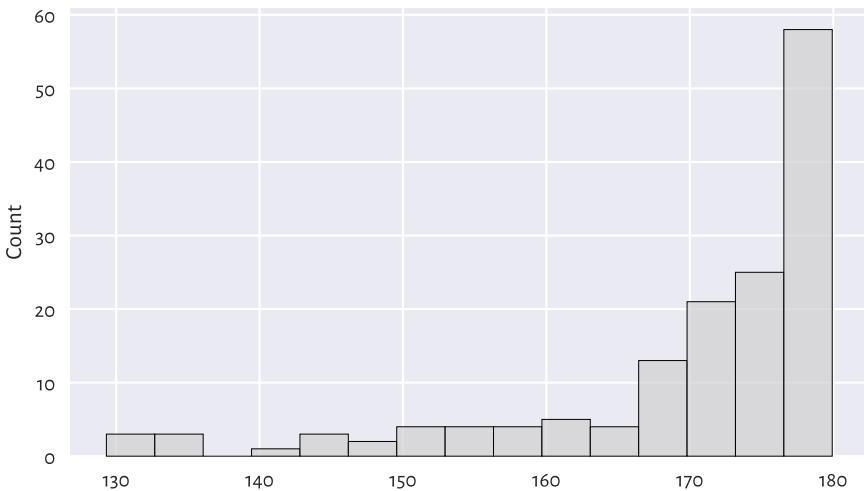


Figure 4.7: Histogram of a truncated version of the `marathon` dataset; the distribution is left-skewed

This was of course expected – there are only few elite runners in the game. Yours truly wishes his personal best becomes < 180 minutes someday. We shall see. Running is fun, so is walking; why not taking a break for an hour and going outside?

**Exercise 4.8** Plot the histogram of the untruncated (complete) version of this dataset.

### 4.3.7 Log-scale and Heavy-Tailed Distributions

Consider the dataset on the populations of cities in the 2000 US Census:

```
cities = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
"teaching_data/master/other/us_cities_2000.txt")
```

Let us restrict ourselves only to the cities whose population is not less than 10,000 (another instance of truncating, this time on the other side of the distribution). It turns

out that, even though they constitute ca. 14% of all the US settlements, as much as about 84% of all the citizens live there.

```
large_cities = cities[cities >= 10000]
```

Here are the populations of the 5 largest cities (can we guess which ones are they?):

```
large_cities[-5:] # preview last 5 - data are sorted increasingly
## array([1517550., 1953633., 2896047., 3694742., 8008654.])
```

The histogram is depicted in [Figure 4.8](#). It is virtually unreadable, because the distribution is not just right-skewed; it is extremely *heavy-tailed*: most cities are small, and those that are large – such as New York – are *really* unique. Had we plotted the whole dataset (`cities` instead of `large_cities`), the results' intelligibility would be even worse.

```
sns.histplot(large_cities, bins=20, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

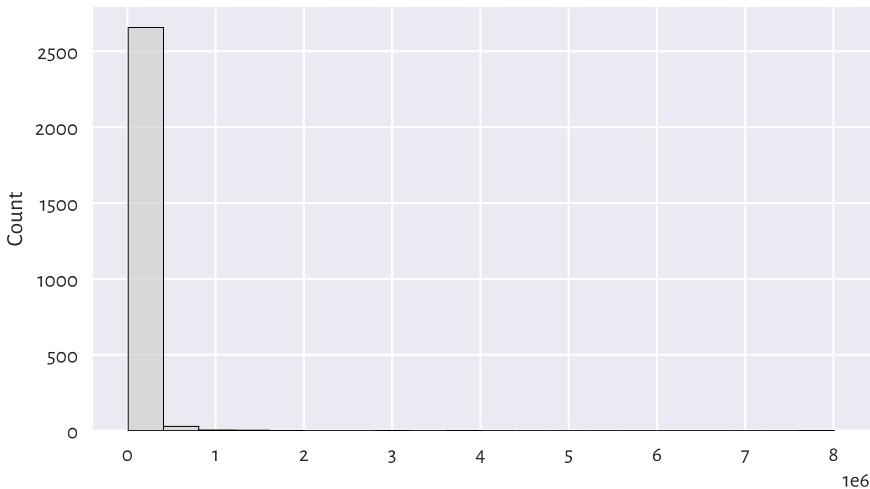


Figure 4.8: Histogram of the `large_cities` dataset; it is extremely heavy-tailed

This is why we should rather draw such a distribution on the *logarithmic* scale, see [Figure 4.9](#).

```
sns.histplot(large_cities, bins=20, log_scale=True, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

The log-scale on the x-axis does not increase linearly: it is not based on steps of equal

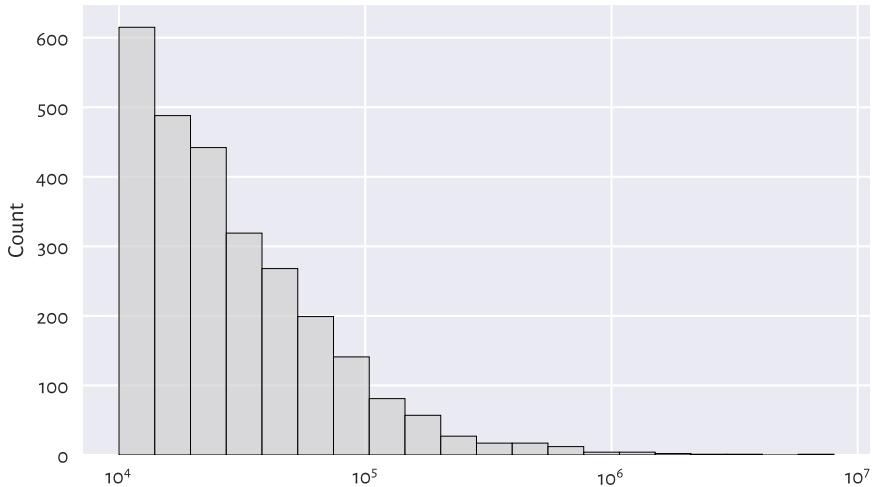


Figure 4.9: Another histogram of the `large_cities` dataset; it is right-skewed even on a logarithmic scale

sizes like 0, 1,000,000, 2,000,000, ..., and so forth. Instead, now the increases are geometrical: 10,000, 100,000, 1,000,000, etc.

This is a right-skewed distribution even on the logarithmic scale. Many real-world datasets have a similar behaviour, for instance, the frequencies of occurrences of words in books. On a side note, [Chapter 6](#) we will discuss the Pareto distribution family which yields similar histograms.

**Exercise 4.9** Draw the histogram of `income` on the logarithmic scale. Does it resemble a bell-shaped distribution?

**Exercise 4.10** (\*) Use `numpy.geomspace` and `numpy.histogram` to apply logarithmic binning of the `large_cities` dataset manually, i.e., to create bins of equal lengths on the log-scale.

### 4.3.8 Cumulative Counts and the Empirical Cumulative Distribution Function

Let us go back to the `heights` dataset. The histogram in [Figure 4.2](#) told us that, amongst others, 28.6% (1206 of 4221) of women are approximately  $160.2 \pm 2.65$  cm tall.

However, sometimes we might be more interested in cumulative counts, see [Figure 4.10](#). They have a different interpretation: we can read that, e.g., 80% of all women are no more than ca. 166 cm tall (or that only 20% are taller than this height).

```
sns.histplot(heights, stat="percent", cumulative=True, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

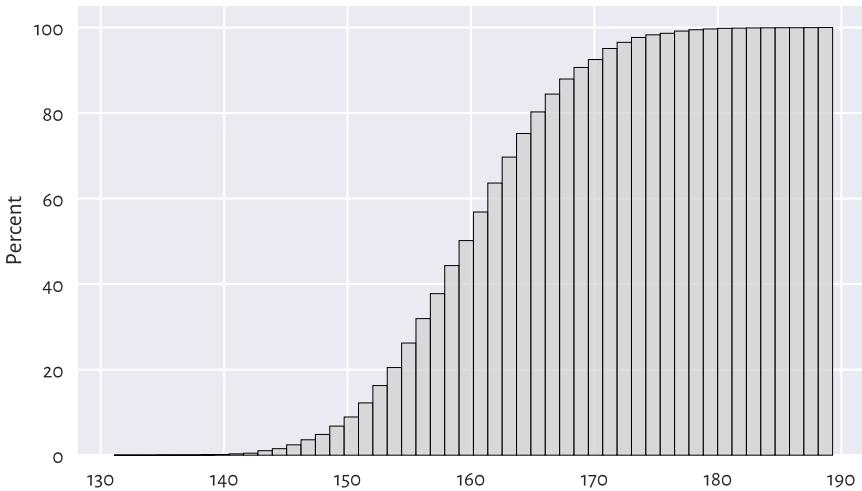


Figure 4.10: Cumulative histogram of the `heights` dataset

Very similar is the plot of the *empirical cumulative distribution function* (ECDF), which for a sample  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  we denote as  $\hat{F}_n$ . And so, at any given point  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\hat{F}_n(t)$  is a step function<sup>20</sup> that gives the proportion of observations in our sample that are not greater than  $t$ :

$$\hat{F}_n(t) = \frac{|i : x_i \leq t|}{n}.$$

We read  $|i : x_i \leq t|$  as the number of indexes like  $i$  such that the corresponding  $x_i$  is less than or equal to  $t$ . It can be shown that, given the ordered inputs,  $x_{(1)} \leq x_{(2)} \leq \dots \leq x_{(n)}$ , it holds:

$$\hat{F}_n(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < x_{(1)}, \\ k/n & \text{for } x_{(k)} \leq t < x_{(k+1)}, \\ 1 & \text{for } t \geq x_{(n)}. \end{cases}$$

Let us underline the fact that drawing the ECDF does not involve binning – we only need to arrange the observations in an ascending order. Then, assuming that all observations are unique (there are no ties), the arithmetic progression  $1/n, 2/n, \dots, n/n$  is plotted against them, see Figure 4.11<sup>21</sup>.

<sup>20</sup> We cannot see the steps in Figure 4.11, because the points are too plentiful.

<sup>21</sup> (\*) We are using (La)TeX maths typesetting within "\$\dots\$" to obtain nice plot labels, see [[O+21]] for a good introduction.

```

n = len(heights)
heights_sorted = np.sort(heights)
plt.plot(heights_sorted, np.arange(1, n+1)/n, drawstyle="steps-post")
plt.xlabel("$t$") # LaTeX maths
plt.ylabel("$\hat{F}_n(t)$, i.e., Prob(height $\leq t$)")
plt.show()

```

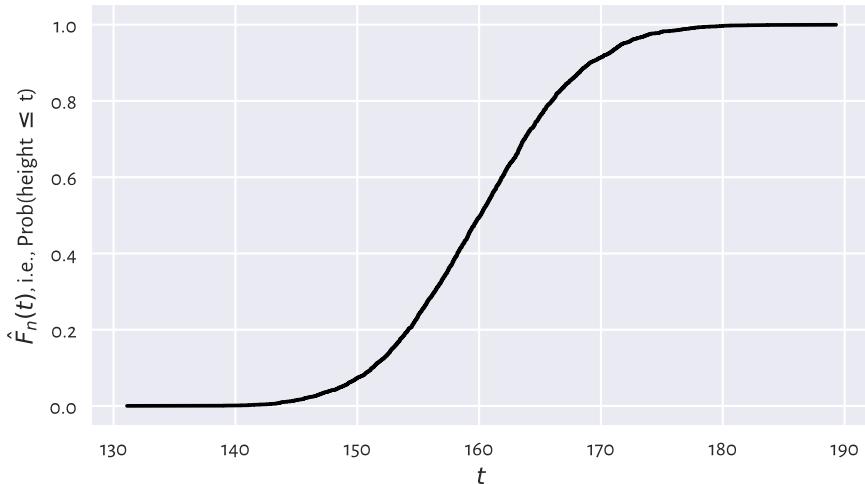


Figure 4.11: Empirical cumulative distribution function for the heights dataset

**Exercise 4.11** Check out `seaborn.ecdfplot` for a built-in method implementing the drawing of an ECDF.

---

**Note:** (\*) Quantiles (which we introduce in Section 5.1.1) can be considered a generalised inverse of the ECDF.

---

## 4.4 Exercises

**Exercise 4.12** What is the difference between `numpy.arange` and `numpy.linspace`?

**Exercise 4.13** (\*) What happens when we convert a logical vector to a numeric one? And what about when we convert a numeric vector to a logical one? We will discuss that later, but you might want to check it yourself now.

**Exercise 4.14** Check what happens when we try to create a vector featuring a mix of logical, integer, and floating-point values.

**Exercise 4.15** What is a bell-shaped distribution?

**Exercise 4.16** What is a right-skewed distribution?

**Exercise 4.17** What is a heavy-tailed distribution?

**Exercise 4.18** What is a multi-modal distribution?

**Exercise 4.19** (\*) When does logarithmic binning make sense?

---

# 5

---

## Processing Unidimensional Data

---

It is extremely rare for our datasets to bring interesting and valid insights out of the box. The ones we are using for illustrational purposes in the first part of our book have already been curated. After all, this is an introductory course, and we need to build up the necessary skills and not overwhelm the kind reader with too much information at the same time. We learn simple things first, learn them well, and then we move to more complex matters with a healthy level of confidence.

In real life, various *data cleansing* and *feature engineering* techniques will need to be performed on data. Most of them are based on the simple operations on vectors that we cover in this chapter:

- summarising data (for example, computing the median or sum),
- transforming values (applying mathematical operations on each element, such as subtracting a scalar or taking the natural logarithm),
- filtering (selecting or removing observations that meet specific criteria, e.g., those that are larger than the arithmetic mean  $\pm 5$  standard deviations).

---

**Important:** The same operations we are going to be applying on individual data frame columns in [Chapter 10](#).

---

### 5.1 Aggregating Numeric Data

Recall that in the previous chapter we have been discussing the `heights` and `income` datasets whose histograms were given in [Figure 4.2](#) and [Figure 4.3](#), respectively. Such graphical summaries are based on binned data and hence provide us with snapshots of how much probability mass is allocated in different parts of the data domain.

Instead of dealing with large datasets, we have obtained a few counts. The process of binning and its textual or visual depictions is useful in determining whether the distribution is unimodal or multimodal, skewed or symmetric around some point, what range of values contains most of the observations, how small or large extreme values are, etc.

Still, too much information may sometimes be overwhelming. Also, revealing it might not be a clever idea for privacy or confidentiality reasons (although we strongly advocate for all information of concern to the public be openly available, so that *experienced statisticians* can put them in good use).

Thus, oftentimes we will be interested in even more synthetic descriptions – data aggregates which reduce the whole dataset into a *single* number reflecting one of its many characteristics and thus providing a kind of bird's eye view on some aspect of it. We refer to such a process as data *aggregation* [[Gag15a], [GMMP09]].

In this part we discuss a few noteworthy *measures* of:

- *location*; e.g., central tendency measures such as mean and median;
- *dispersion*; e.g., standard deviation and interquartile range;
- distribution *shape*; e.g., skewness.

We also introduce *box and whisker plots*.

### 5.1.1 Measures of Location

#### Arithmetic Mean and Median

Two main measures of *central tendency* are:

- *the arithmetic mean* (sometimes for simplicity called the mean or average), defined as the sum of all observations divided by the sample size:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n)}{n} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i,$$

- *the median*, being the middle value in a sorted version of the sample if its length is odd or the arithmetic mean of the two middle values otherwise:

$$m = \begin{cases} \frac{x_{(n+1)/2}}{2} & \text{if } n \text{ is odd,} \\ \frac{x_{(n/2)} + x_{(n/2+1)}}{2} & \text{if } n \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

They can be computed using the `numpy.mean` and `numpy.median` functions.

```
heights = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_height_2020.txt")
np.mean(heights), np.median(heights)
## (160.13679222932953, 160.1)
income = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/uk_income_simulated_2020.txt")
np.mean(income), np.median(income)
## (35779.994, 30042.0)
```

Let us underline what follows:

- for symmetric distributions, the arithmetic mean and the median are expected to be more or less equal,
- for skewed distributions, the arithmetic mean will be biased towards the heavier tail.

**Exercise 5.1** Compute the arithmetic mean and median for the `37_pzu_warsaw_marathon_mins` dataset mentioned in [Chapter 4](#).

**Exercise 5.2** (\*) Write a function that computes the median without the use of `numpy.median` (based on its mathematical definition and `numpy.sort`).

**Note:** (\*) Technically, the arithmetic mean can also be computed using the `mean` method for the `numpy.ndarray` class – it will sometimes be the case that we have many ways to perform the same operation. We can even “implement” it manually using the `sum` function. Thus, all the following expressions are equivalent:

```
print(
    np.mean(income),
    income.mean(),
    np.sum(income)/len(income),
    income.sum()/income.shape[0]
)
## 35779.994 35779.994 35779.994 35779.994
```

On the other hand, there exists the `numpy.median` function but, unfortunately, the `median` method for vectors is not available. This is why we prefer sticking with functions.

## Sensitive to Outliers vs Robust

The arithmetic mean is strongly influenced by very large or very small observations (which in some contexts we refer to as *outliers*). For instance, assume that we are inviting a billionaire to the `income` dataset:

```
income2 = np.append(income, [1_000_000_000])
print(np.mean(income), np.mean(income2))
## 35779.994 1034745.2487512487
```

Comparing this new result to the previous one, oh we all feel much richer now, right? In fact, the arithmetic mean reflects the income each of us would get if all the wealth were gathered in a single Santa Claus (or Robin Hood) sack and then distributed equally amongst all of us. A noble idea provided that everyone contributes equally to the society, which unfortunately is not the case.

On the other hand, the median is the value such that 50% of the observations are less than or equal to it and 50% of the remaining ones are not less than it. Hence, it is completely insensitive to most of the data points – on both the left and the right side of the distribution:

```
print(np.median(income), np.median(income2))
## 30042.0 30076.0
```

Because of this, we cannot say that one measure is better than the other. Certainly, for symmetrical distributions with no outliers (e.g., `heights`), the mean will be better as it uses *all* data (and its efficiency can be proven for certain statistical models). For skewed distributions (e.g., `income`), the median has a nice interpretation, as it gives the value in the middle of the ordered sample. Let us still remember that these data summaries allow us to look at a single data aspect only, and there can be many different, valid perspectives. The reality is complex.

## Sample Quantiles

Quantiles generalise the notions of the sample median and of the inverse of the empirical cumulative distribution function (Section 4.3.8). They provide us with the value that is not exceeded by the elements in a given sample with a predefined probability.

Before proceeding with a formal definition, which is quite technical, let us point out that for larger sample sizes, we have the following rule of thumb.

---

**Important:** For any  $p$  between 0 and 1, the  $p$ -quantile, denoted  $q_p$ , is a value dividing the sample in such a way that approximately  $100p\%$  of observations are not greater than  $q_p$ , and the remaining ca.  $100(1 - p)\%$  are not less than  $q_p$ .

---

Quantiles appear under many different names, but they all refer to the same concept. In particular, we can speak about  $100p$ -th *percentiles*, e.g., the 0.5-quantile is the same as the 50th percentile.

Furthermore:

- 0-quantile ( $q_0$ ) – the minimum (also: `numpy.min`),
- 0.25-quantile ( $q_{0.25}$ ) – the 1st quartile (denoted  $Q_1$ ),
- 0.5-quantile ( $q_{0.5}$ ) – the 2nd quartile a.k.a. median (denoted  $m$  or  $Q_2$ ),
- 0.75-quantile ( $q_{0.75}$ ) – the 3rd quartile (denoted  $Q_3$ ),
- 1.0-quantile ( $q_1$ ) – the maximum (also: `numpy.max`).

Here are the above five aggregates for our two datasets:

```
np.quantile(heights, [0, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1])
## array([131.1, 155.3, 160.1, 164.8, 189.3])
np.quantile(income, [0, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1])
## array([ 5750. , 20669.75, 30042. , 44123.75, 199969. ])
```

**Exercise 5.3** What is the income bracket for 95% of the “most typical” UK taxpayers? In other words, determine the 2.5- and 97.5-percentiles.

**Exercise 5.4** Compute the midrange of `income` and `heights`, being the arithmetic mean of the minimum and the maximum. Let us emphasise that this measure is extremely sensitive to outliers.

**Note:** (\*) As we do not like the *approximately* part in the “asymptotic definition” given above, in this course we shall assume that for any  $p \in [0, 1]$ , the  $p$ -quantile is given by

$$q_p = x_{(\lfloor k \rfloor)} + (k - \lfloor k \rfloor)(x_{(\lfloor k \rfloor + 1)} - x_{(\lfloor k \rfloor)}),$$

where  $k = (n - 1)p + 1$  and  $\lfloor k \rfloor$  is the floor function, i.e., the greatest integer less than or equal to  $k$  (e.g.,  $\lfloor 2.0 \rfloor = \lfloor 2.001 \rfloor = \lfloor 2.999 \rfloor = 2$ ,  $\lfloor 3.0 \rfloor = \lfloor 3.999 \rfloor = 3$ ,  $\lfloor -3.0 \rfloor = \lfloor -2.999 \rfloor = \lfloor -2.001 \rfloor = -3$ , and  $\lfloor -2.0 \rfloor = \lfloor -1.001 \rfloor = -2$ ).

$q_p$  is thus a function that linearly interpolates between the points featuring the consecutive order statistics,  $((k - 1)/(n - 1), x_{(k)})$  for  $k = 1, \dots, n$ . For instance, for  $n = 5$ , we are linearly interpolating between the points  $(0, x_{(1)}), (0.25, x_{(2)}), (0.5, x_{(3)}), (0.75, x_{(4)}), (1, x_{(5)})$ , whereas for  $n = 6$ , we do the same for  $(0, x_{(1)}), (0.2, x_{(2)}), (0.4, x_{(3)}), (0.6, x_{(4)}), (0.8, x_{(5)}), (1, x_{(6)})$ , see Figure 5.1 for an illustration.

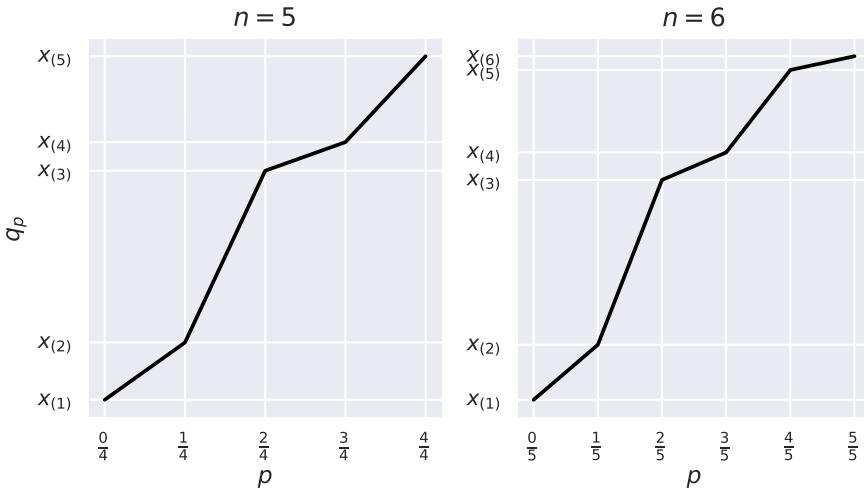


Figure 5.1:  $q_p$  as a function of  $p$  for an example vector of length 5 (left subfigure) and 6 (right)

---

Notice that for  $p=0.5$  we get the median regardless of whether  $n$  is even or not.

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) There are many definitions of quantiles across statistical software, see the `method` argument to `numpy.quantile`. They have been nicely summarised in [[HF96]] as well as in the corresponding Wikipedia<sup>1</sup> article. They are all approximately equivalent for large sample sizes (i.e., asymptotically), but the best practice is to be explicit about which variant we are using in the computations when reporting data analysis results. And thus, in our case, we say that we are relying on the type-7 quantiles as described in [[HF96]], see also [[Gum39]].

---

Actually, simply mentioning that our computations are done with `numpy` version 1.xx (Section 1.4) implicitly implies that the default method parameters are used everywhere, unless otherwise stated. In many contexts, that is good enough.

### 5.1.2 Measures of Dispersion

Measures of central tendency quantify the location of the most *typical* value (whatever that means, and we already know it is complicated). That of dispersion (spread), on the other hand, will tell us how much *variability* is in our data. After all, when we say that the height of a group of people is 160 cm (on average)  $\pm$  14 cm (here, 2 standard

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quantile>

deviations), the latter piece of information is a valuable addition (and is much different than the imaginary  $\pm 4$  cm case).

Some degree of variability might be good in certain contexts and bad in other ones. A bolt factory should keep the variance of the fasteners' diameters as low as possible – after all, this is how we define quality products (assuming that they all meet, on average, the required specification). On the other hand, too much diversity in human behaviour, where everyone feels that they are special, is not really sustainable (but lack thereof would be extremely boring), and so forth.

Let us therefore look at different ways in which we can quantify it.

### Standard Deviation (and Variance)

The standard deviation<sup>2</sup>, is the average distance to the arithmetic mean:

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{(x_1 - \bar{x})^2 + (x_2 - \bar{x})^2 + \dots + (x_n - \bar{x})^2}{n}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2},$$

Computing the above with `numpy`:

```
np.std(heights), np.std(income)
## (7.062021850008261, 22888.77122437908)
```

The standard deviation quantifies the typical amount of spread around the arithmetic mean. It is overall useful for making comparisons across different samples measuring similar things (e.g., heights of males vs of females, incomes in the UK vs in South Africa). However, without further assumptions, it is quite difficult to express the meaning of a particular value of  $s$  (e.g., the statement that the standard deviation of income is £22,900 is hard to interpret). Thus, it makes most sense for data distributions that are symmetric around the mean.

**Note:** (\*) For bell-shaped data (more precisely: for normally-distributed samples, see the next chapter) such as `heights`, we sometimes report  $\bar{x} \pm 2s$ , because the theoretical expectancy is that ca. 95% of data points fall into the  $[\bar{x} - 2s, \bar{x} + 2s]$  interval (the so-called  $2\sigma$  rule).

Further, the *variance* is the square of the standard deviation,  $s^2$ . Mind that if data are expressed in centimetres, then the variance is in centimetres squared, which is not very intuitive. The standard deviation does not have this drawback. Mathematicians find

<sup>2</sup> (\*\*\*) Based on the so-called *uncorrected for bias* version of the sample variance. We prefer it here for didactical reasons (simplicity, better interpretability). Plus, it is the default one in `numpy`. Passing `ddof=1` (*delta degrees of freedom*) to `numpy.std` will apply division by  $n - 1$  instead of by  $n$ . When used as an estimator of the distribution's standard deviation, the latter has slightly better statistical properties (which we normally explore in a course on mathematical statistics, which this one is not). Interestingly, the `std` methods in the `pandas` package have `ddof=1` by default, therefore we might be interested in setting `ddof=0` therein.

the square root annoying though (for many reasons); that is why we will come across the  $s^2$  every now and then too.

## Interquartile Range

The interquartile range (IQR) is another popular measure of dispersion. It is defined as the difference between the 3rd and the 1st quartile:

$$\text{IQR} = q_{0.75} - q_{0.25} = Q_3 - Q_1.$$

Computing the above is almost effortless:

```
np.quantile(heights, 0.75) - np.quantile(heights, 0.25)
## 9.5
np.quantile(income, 0.75) - np.quantile(income, 0.25)
## 23454.0
```

The IQR has an appealing interpretation: it is the range comprised of the 50% *most typical* values. It is a quite robust measure, as it ignores the 25% smallest and 25% largest observations. Standard deviation, on the other hand, is extremely sensitive to outliers.

Furthermore, by *range* (or support) we will mean a measure based on extremal quantiles: it is the difference between the maximal and minimal observation.

### 5.1.3 Measures of Shape

From a histogram we can easily read whether a dataset is symmetric or skewed. It turns out that we can easily quantify such a characteristic. Namely, the *skewness* is given by:

$$g = \frac{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^3}{\left( \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2} \right)^3}.$$

For symmetric distributions, skewness is approximately zero. Positive and negative skewness indicates a heavier right and left tail, respectively.

For example, heights are an instance of an almost-symmetric distribution:

```
scipy.stats.skew(heights)
## 0.0811184528074054
```

Income, on the other hand, is right-skewed:

```
scipy.stats.skew(income)
## 1.9768735693998942
```

And now we have both expressed as a single number.

**Note:** (\*) It is worth stressing that  $g > 0$  does not imply that the sample mean is greater than the median. As an alternative measure of skewness, sometime practitioners use:

$$g' = \frac{\bar{x} - m}{s}.$$

Furthermore, *Yule's coefficient* is an example of a robust skewness measure:

$$g'' = \frac{Q_3 + Q_1 - 2m}{Q_3 - Q_1}.$$

The computation thereof on our example datasets is left as an exercise.

Furthermore, *kurtosis* (or Fisher's excess kurtosis, compare `scipy.stats.kurtosis`) can be used to describe whether an empirical distribution is heavy- or thin-tailed.

#### 5.1.4 Box (and Whisker) Plots

A *box and whisker* plot (*box plot* for short) depicts some noteworthy features of a data sample.

```
plt.subplot(2, 1, 1) # 2 rows, 1 column, 1st subplot
sns.boxplot(data=heights, orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.yticks([0], ["heights"])
plt.subplot(2, 1, 2) # 2 rows, 1 column, 2nd subplot
sns.boxplot(data=income, orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.yticks([0], ["income"])
plt.show()
```

Each box plot (compare Figure 5.2) consists of:

- the box, which spans between the 1st and the 3rd quartile:
  - the median is clearly marked by a vertical bar inside the box;
  - the width of the box corresponds to the IQR;
- the whiskers, which span<sup>3</sup> between:
  - the smallest observation (the minimum) or  $Q_1 - 1.5\text{IQR}$  (the left side of the box minus 3/2 of its width), whichever is larger, and
  - the largest observation (the maximum) or  $Q_3 + 1.5\text{IQR}$  (the right side of the box plus 3/2 of its width), whichever is smaller.

<sup>3</sup> The 1.5IQR rule is the most popular in the statistical literature, but some plotting software may use different whisker ranges. See Section 15.4.1 for further discussion.

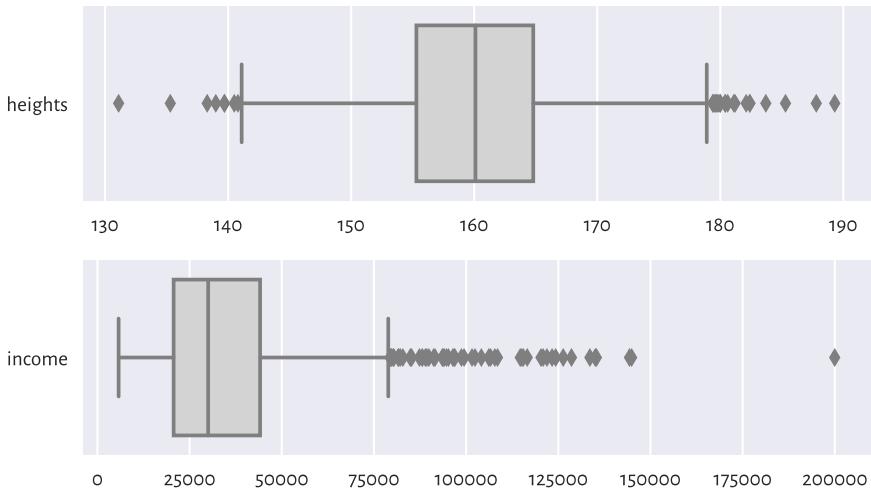


Figure 5.2: Example box plots

Additionally, all observations that are less than  $Q_1 - 1.5\text{IQR}$  (if any) or greater than  $Q_3 + 1.5\text{IQR}$  (if any) are separately marked.

---

**Note:** We are used to referring to the individually marked points as *outliers*, however, it does not automatically mean there is anything *anomalous* about them. They are *atypical* in the sense that they are considerably farther away from the box. However, they might also indicate some problems in data quality (e.g., when someone made a typo entering the data). Actually, box plots are calibrated (via the nicely round magic constant 1.5) in such a way that we expect there to be no or only few outliers if the data are normally distributed. For skewed distributions, there will naturally be many outliers on either side. See [Section 15.4](#) for more details.

---

Box plots are based solely on sample quantiles. Most of the statistical packages *do not* draw the arithmetic mean. If they do, it is marked with a distinctive symbol.

**Exercise 5.5** Call `matplotlib.pyplot.plot(numpy.mean(..data..), 0, "wX")` after `seaborn.boxplot` to mark the arithmetic mean with a white cross.

Box plots are particularly useful for comparing data samples with each other (e.g., body measures of men and women separately); both in terms of the relative shift (location) as well as spread and skewness, see, e.g., [Figure 12.1](#).

**Example 5.6** (\*) We may also sometimes be interested in a violin plot ([Figure 5.3](#)), which combines a box plot (although with no outliers marked) and the so-called kernel density estimator (which is a smoothed version of a histogram, see [Section 15.4.2](#)).

```
plt.subplot(2, 1, 1) # 2 rows, 1 column, 1st subplot
sns.violinplot(data=heights, orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.yticks([0], ["heights"])
plt.subplot(2, 1, 2) # 2 rows, 1 column, 2nd subplot
sns.violinplot(data=income, orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.yticks([0], ["income"])
plt.show()
```

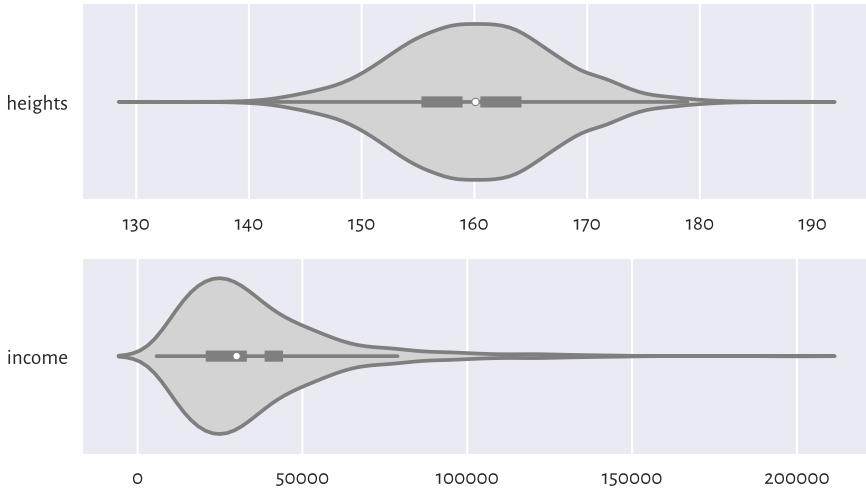


Figure 5.3: Example violin plots

### 5.1.5 Further Methods (\*)

We have said that the arithmetic mean is overly sensitive to extreme observations. The sample median is an example of a *robust* aggregate — it ignores all but 1-2 middle observations (we would say it has a high *breakdown point*). Some measures of central tendency that are in-between the mean-median extreme include:

- *trimmed means* – the arithmetic mean of all the observations except a number of, say  $p$ , the smallest and the greatest ones,
- *winsorised means* – the arithmetic mean with  $p$  smallest and  $p$  greatest observations replaced with the  $(p+1)$ -smallest the  $(p+1)$ -largest one.

The arithmetic mean is not the only mean of interest. The two other famous means are the *geometric* and *harmonic* ones. The former is more meaningful for averaging growth rates and speedups whilst the latter can be used for computing the average speed from speed measurements at sections of identical lengths, see also the notion

of the F-measure in [Section 12.3.2](#). Also, the quadratic mean is featured in the definition of the standard deviation (it is the quadratic mean of the distances to the mean).

As far as spread measures are concerned, the interquartile range (IQR) is a robust statistic. If necessary, standard deviation might be replaced with:

- mean absolute deviation from the mean:  $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - \bar{x}|$ ,
- mean absolute deviation from the median:  $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - m|$ ,
- median absolute deviation from the median: the median of  $(|x_1 - m|, |x_2 - m|, \dots, |x_n - m|)$ .

The *coefficient of variation*, being the standard deviation dived by the arithmetic mean, is an example of a *relative* (or normalised) spread measure. It can be useful for comparing data on different scales, as it is unit-less (think how standard deviation changes when you convert between metres and centimetres).

The *Gini index* widely used in economics, can also serve as a measure of relative dispersion, but assumes that all data points are nonnegative.

$$G = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n |x_i - x_j|}{2(n-1)n\bar{x}} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (n-2i+1)x_{(n-i+1)}}{(n-1) \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}.$$

It is normalised so that it takes values in the unit interval. An index of 0 reflects the situation where all values in a sample are the same (0 variance; perfect equality). If there is a single entity in possession of all the “wealth”, and the remaining ones are 0, then the index is equal to 1.

**Exercise 5.7** (\*) It may be shown that the sample variance is equal to

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n |x_i - x_j|}{n^2}.$$

Based on this, show the relationship between the Gini index and the coefficient of variation.

For a more generic (algebraic) treatment of aggregation functions for unidimensional data, see, e.g., [\[\[Bulo03\]](#), [\[Gag15a\]](#), [\[Gag15b\]](#), [\[GMMP09\]](#)]. Some measures might be better than others under certain (often strict) assumptions usually explored in a course on mathematical statistics, e.g., [\[\[Gen20\]\]](#).

Overall, numerical aggregates should be used in cases where data are unimodal. For multimodal mixtures or data in groups, they should rather be applied to summarise each cluster/class separately, compare [Chapter 12](#). Also, in [Chapter 8](#) we will extend consider a few summaries for multidimensional data.

## 5.2 Vectorised Mathematical Functions

`Numpy`, just like any other comprehensive numerical computing package, library, or environment (e.g., R, GNU Octave, Scilab, and Julia), defines many basic mathematical functions:

- absolute value: `numpy.abs`,
- square and square root: `numpy.square` and `numpy.sqrt`, respectively,
- (natural) exponential function: `numpy.exp`,
- logarithms: `numpy.log` (the natural logarithm, i.e., base  $e$ ), `numpy.log10` (base 10), etc.,
- trigonometric functions: `numpy.cos`, `numpy.sin`, `numpy.tan`, etc., and their inverses: `numpy.arccos`, etc.
- rounding and truncating: `numpy.round`, `numpy.floor`, `numpy.ceil`, `numpy.trunc`.

Each of these functions is *vectorised*: if we apply, say,  $f$ , on a vector like  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , we obtain a sequence of the same size with all elements appropriately transformed:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = (f(x_1), f(x_2), \dots, f(x_n)).$$

We will frequently be using such operations for adjusting the data, e.g., as in [Figure 6.7](#) where we discover that the *logarithm* of the UK incomes has a bell-shaped distribution.

An example call to the vectorised version of the rounding function:

```
np.round([-3.249, -3.151, 2.49, 2.51, 3.49, 3.51], 1)
## array([-3.2, -3.2,  2.5,  2.5,  3.5,  3.5])
```

The input list has been automatically converted to a `numpy` vector.

**Important:** Thanks to the vectorised functions, our code is not only more readable, but also runs faster: we do not have to employ the generally slow Python-level `while` or `for` loops to traverse through each element in a given sequence.

Here are some significant properties of the natural logarithm and its inverse, the exponential function. By convention, the Euler's number  $e \approx 2.718$ ,  $\log x = \log_e x$ , and  $\exp(x) = e^x$ .

- $\log 1 = 0$ ,  $\log e = 1$ ; note that logarithms are only defined for  $x > 0$ : in the limit as  $x \rightarrow 0$ , we have that  $\log x \rightarrow -\infty$ ,

- $\log x^y = y \log x$  and hence  $\log e^x = x$ ,
- $\log(xy) = \log x + \log y$  and thus  $\log(x/y) = \log x - \log y$ ,
- $e^0 = 1$ ,  $e^1 = e$ , and  $e^x \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow -\infty$ ,
- $e^{\log x} = x$ ,
- $e^{x+y} = e^x e^y$  and hence  $e^{x-y} = e^x / e^y$ .

Both functions are strictly increasing. For  $x \geq 1$ , the logarithm grows very slowly whereas the exponential function increases very rapidly, see Figure 5.4.

```
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
x = np.linspace(np.exp(-2), np.exp(3), 1001)
plt.plot(x, np.log(x), label="$y=\\log x$")
plt.legend()
plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
x = np.linspace(-2, 3, 1001)
plt.plot(x, np.exp(x), label="$y=\\exp(x)$")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

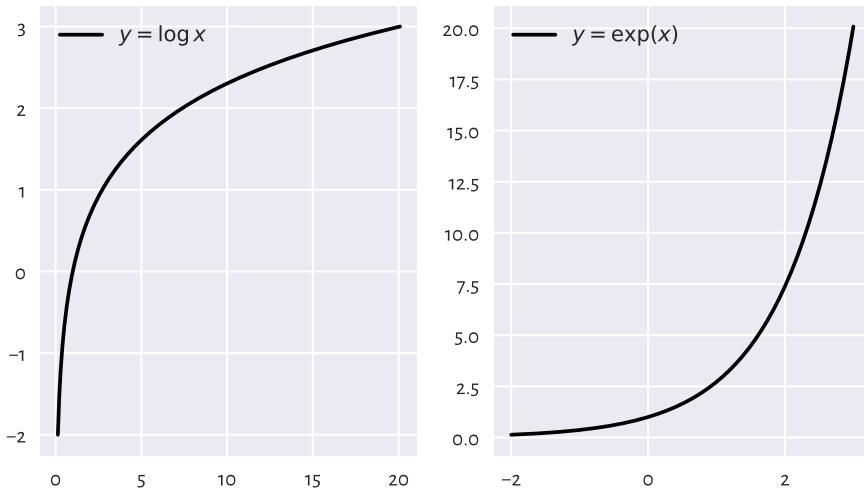


Figure 5.4: The natural logarithm (left) and the exponential function (right)

Logarithms of different bases and non-natural exponential functions are also available. In particular, when drawing plots, we have already used the base-10 logarithmic scales on the axes. It holds  $\log_{10} x = \frac{\log x}{\log 10}$  and its inverse is  $10^x$ . For example:

```
10.0**np.array([-1, 0, 1, 2]) # see below
## array([ 0.1,  1. , 10. , 100. ])
np.log10([-1, 0.01, 0.1, 1, 2, 5, 10, 100, 1000, 10000])
## array([ nan, -2., -1., 0., 0.30103, 0.69897,
##        1., 2., 3., 4.])
##
## <string>:1: RuntimeWarning: invalid value encountered in log10
```

Take note of the warning and the not-a-number (NaN) generated.

**Exercise 5.8** Check that when using the log-scale on the x-axis (`plt.xscale("log")`), the plot of the logarithm (of any base) is a straight line. Similarly, the log-scale on the y-axis (`plt.yscale("log")`) makes the exponential function linear.

Moving on, the trigonometric functions in `numpy` accept angles in radians; if  $x$  is the degree in angles, then to compute its cosine we will thus be writing  $\cos(x\pi/180)$  instead; see Figure 5.5.

```
x = np.linspace(-2*np.pi, 4*np.pi, 1001)
plt.plot(x, np.cos(x))
plt.xticks(
    [-2*np.pi, -np.pi, 0, np.pi/2, np.pi, 3*np.pi/2, 2*np.pi, 4*np.pi],
    ["$-2\pi$", "$-\pi$", "$0$", "$\pi/2$", "$\pi$", 
     "$3\pi/2$", "$2\pi$", "$4\pi$"]
)
plt.show()
```

Some identities worth memorising:

- $\sin x = \cos(\pi/2 - x)$ ,
- $\cos(-x) = \cos x$ ,
- $\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$ , where  $\cos^2 x = (\cos x)^2$ ,
- $\cos(x + y) = \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y$ ,
- $\cos(x - y) = \cos x \cos y + \sin x \sin y$ .

We will refer to them later.

**Important:** The classical handbook of mathematical functions and the (in)equalities related to them is [[AS72]], see [[O+22]] for its updated version.

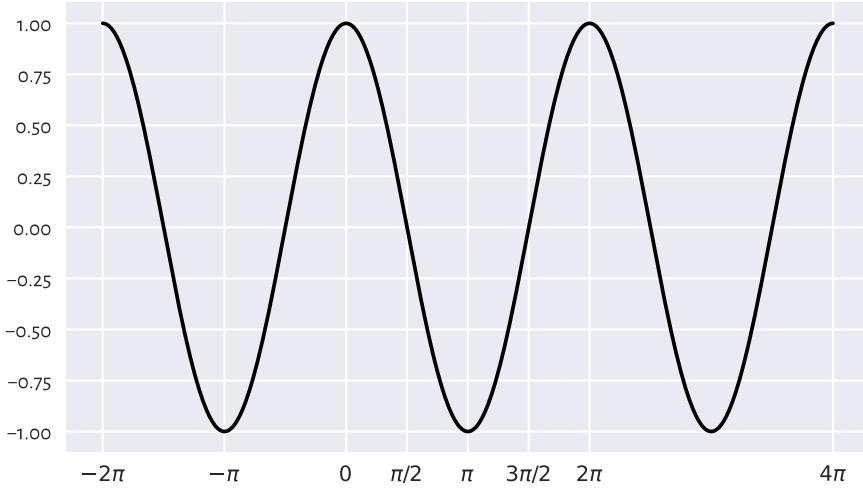


Figure 5.5: The cosine

## 5.3 Arithmetic Operators

We can apply the standard binary (two-argument) arithmetic operators `+`, `-`, `\*`, `/`, `\*\*`, `%`, and `//` on vectors too. Below we discuss the possible cases of the operands' lengths.

### 5.3.1 Vector-Scalar Case

Often, we will be referring to the binary operators in contexts where one operand is a vector and the other one is a single value (scalar), for example:

```
np.array([-2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3])**2
## array([4, 1, 0, 1, 4, 9])
(np.array([-2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3])+2)/5
## array([0. , 0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8, 1. ])
```

In such a case, each element in the vector is being operated upon (e.g., squared, divided by 5) and we get a vector of the same length in return. Hence, in this case the operators behave just like the vectorised mathematical functions discussed above.

Mathematically, it is common to assume that scalar multiplication and, less commonly, addition is performed in this way.

$$cx + t = (cx_1 + t, cx_2 + t, \dots, cx_n + t).$$

We will also become used to writing,  $(x - t)/c$  which is of course equivalent to  $(1/c)x + (-t/c)$ .

### 5.3.2 Application: Feature Scaling

Vector-scalar operations and aggregation functions are the basis for the most commonly applied *feature scalers*:

- standardisation,
- normalisation,
- min-max scaling and clipping.

They can increase the interpretability of data points by bringing them onto a common, unitless scale. They might also be essential when computing pairwise distances between multidimensional points, see Section 8.4.

All the above are linear transforms of the form  $y = cx + t$ , which geometrically we can interpret as scaling (stretching or shrinking) and shifting (translating), see Figure 5.6 for an illustration.

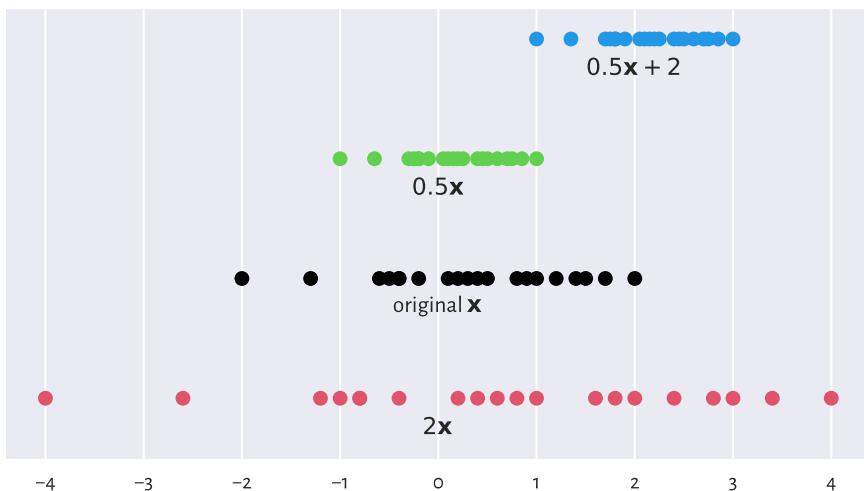


Figure 5.6: Scaled and shifted versions of an example vector

---

**Note:** Let  $y = cx + t$  and let  $\bar{x}, \bar{y}, s_x, s_y$  denote the vectors' arithmetic means and standard deviations. The following properties hold.

- The arithmetic mean and all the quantiles (including, of course, the median), are equivariant with respect to translation and scaling; it holds, for instance,  $\bar{y} = c\bar{x} + t$ .

- The standard deviation, the interquartile range, and the range are invariant to translations and equivariant to scaling; e.g.,  $s_y = cs_x$ .

As a by-product, for variance we get of course...  $s_y^2 = c^2 s_x^2$ .

---

## Standardisation and Z-scores

A *standardised* version of a vector  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  consists in subtracting, from each element, the sample arithmetic mean (which we call *centring*) and then dividing it by the standard deviation, i.e.,  $z = (\mathbf{x} - \bar{x})/s$ .

Thus, we transform each  $x_i$  to obtain:

$$z_i = \frac{x_i - \bar{x}}{s}.$$

Consider again the female heights dataset:

```
heights[-5:] # preview
## array([157. , 167.4, 159.6, 168.5, 147.8])
```

whose mean  $\bar{x}$  and standard deviation  $s$  are equal to:

```
np.mean(heights), np.std(heights)
## (160.13679222932953, 7.062021850008261)
```

With **numpy**, standardisation is as simple as applying 2 aggregation functions and 2 arithmetic operations:

```
heights_std = (heights-np.mean(heights))/np.std(heights)
heights_std[-5:] # preview
## array([-0.44417764, 1.02848843, -0.07601113, 1.18425119, -1.74692071])
```

What we obtained is sometimes referred to as the *z-scores*. They are nicely interpretable:

- z-score of 0 corresponds to an observation equal to the sample mean (perfectly average);
- z-score of 1 is obtained for a datum 1 standard deviation above the mean;
- z-score of -2 means that it is a value 2 standard deviations below the mean;

and so forth.

Because of the way they emerge, the mean of the z-scores is always 0 and standard deviation is 1 (up to a tiny numerical error, as usual; see [Section 5.6.2](#)):

```
np.mean(heights_std), np.std(heights_std)
## (1.8920872660373198e-15, 1.0)
```

Even though the original `heights` were measured in centimetres, the z-scores are *unitless* (centimetres/centimetres = 1).

**Important:** Standardisation enables the comparison of measurements on different scales (think: height in centimetres vs weight in kilograms or apples vs oranges).

It makes most sense for bell-shaped distributions, in particular normally-distributed ones. In the next chapter we will note that, due to the  $2\sigma$  rule for the normal family, we *expect* that 95% of observations should have z-scores between -2 and 2. Further, z-scores less than -3 and greater than 3 are highly unlikely.

**Exercise 5.9** We have a patient whose height z-score is 1 and weight z-score is -1. How to interpret this information?

**Exercise 5.10** How about a patient whose weight z-score is 0 but BMI z-score is 2?

On a side note, sometimes we might be interested in performing some form of *robust* standardisation (e.g., for skewed data or those that feature some outliers). In such a case, we can replace the mean with the median and the standard deviation with the IQR.

### Min-Max Scaling and Clipping

A less frequently but still noteworthy transformation is called *min-max scaling* and involves subtracting the minimum and then dividing by the range,  $(x - x_{(1)}) / (x_{(n)} - x_{(1)})$ .

```
x = np.array([-1.5, 0.5, 3.5, -1.33, 0.25, 0.8])
(x - np.min(x))/(np.max(x)-np.min(x))
## array([0.        , 0.4       , 1.        , 0.034     , 0.35      , 0.46      ])
```

Here, the smallest value is mapped to 0 and the largest becomes equal to 1. Let us stress that, in this context, 0.5 does not represent the value which is equal to the mean (unless we are incredibly lucky).

Also, *clipping* can be used to replace all values less than 0 with 0 and those greater than 1 with 1.

```
np.clip(x, 0, 1)
## array([0.        , 0.5       , 1.        , 0.        , 0.25      , 0.8      ])
```

The function is of course flexible; another popular choice is clipping to  $[-1, 1]$ . This can

also be implemented manually by means of the vectorised pairwise minimum and maximum functions.

```
np.minimum(1, np.maximum(0, x))
## array([0. , 0.5 , 1. , 0. , 0.25, 0.8 ])
```

### Normalisation ( $l_2$ ; Dividing by Magnitude)

*Normalisation* is the scaling of a given vector so that it is of *unit length*. Usually, by *length* we mean the square root of the sum of squares, i.e., the Euclidean ( $l_2$ ) norm also known as the *magnitude*:

$$\|(x_1, \dots, x_n)\| = \sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2},$$

Its special case for  $n=2$  we know well from high school: the length of a vector  $(a, b)$  is  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ , e.g.,  $\|(1, 2)\| = \sqrt{5} \approx 2.236$ . Also, it is good to program our brains so that when next time we see  $\|x\|^2$ , we immediately think of the *sum of squares*.

We can thus write:

```
x = np.array([1, 5, -4, 2, 2.5])
x/np.sqrt(np.sum(x**2)) # x divided by the Euclidean norm of x
## array([ 0.13834289, 0.69171446, -0.55337157, 0.27668579, 0.34585723])
```

to mean the normalised vector

$$\frac{\mathbf{x}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|} = \left( \frac{x_1}{\|\mathbf{x}\|}, \frac{x_2}{\|\mathbf{x}\|}, \dots, \frac{x_n}{\|\mathbf{x}\|} \right).$$

**Exercise 5.11** Normalisation is similar to standardisation if data are already centred (when mean was subtracted). Show that we can obtain one from the other via the scaling by  $\sqrt{n}$ .

**Important:** A common confusion is that normalisation is supposed to make data more “normally” distributed. This is not the case, as we only scale (stretch or shrink) the observations here.

### Normalisation ( $l_1$ ; Dividing by Sum)

At other times, we might be interested in considering the Manhattan ( $l_1$ ) norm,

$$\|(x_1, \dots, x_n)\|_1 = |x_1| + |x_2| + \dots + |x_n| = \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|,$$

being the sum of absolute values.

```
x / np.sum(np.abs(x))
## array([ 0.06896552,  0.34482759, -0.27586207,  0.13793103,  0.17241379])
```

$l_1$  normalisation is frequently applied on vectors of nonnegative values, whose normalised versions can be interpreted as *probabilities* or *proportions*: values between 0 and 1 which sum to 1 (or, equivalently, 100%).

**Example 5.12** Given some binned data:

```
c, b = np.histogram(heights, [-np.inf, 150, 160, 170, np.inf])
print(c) # counts
## [ 306 1776 1773 366]
```

We can convert the counts to empirical probabilities:

```
p = c/np.sum(c) # np.abs is not needed here
print(p)
## [0.07249467 0.42075338 0.42004264 0.08670931]
```

We did not apply `numpy.abs`, because the values were already nonnegative.

### 5.3.3 Vector-Vector Case

So far we have been applying `\*`, `+`, etc., on vectors and scalars only. All arithmetic operators can also be applied on two vectors of equal lengths. In such a case, they will act *elementwisely*: taking each element from the first operand and combining it with the *corresponding* element from the second argument:

```
np.array([2, 3, 4, 5]) * np.array([10, 100, 1000, 10000])
## array([ 20,   300,  4000, 50000])
```

We see that the first element in the left operand (2) was multiplied by the first element in the right operand (10). Then, we computed  $3 \cdot 100$  (the second elements), and so forth.

Such a behaviour of the binary operators is inspired by the usual convention in vector algebra where applying  $+$  (or  $-$ ) on  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$  means exactly:

$$\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n).$$

Using other operators this way (elementwisely) is less standard in mathematics (for instance multiplication might denote the dot product), but in `numpy` it is really convenient.

**Example 5.13** Let us compute the value of the expression  $h = -(p_1 \log p_1 + \dots + p_n \log p_n)$ , i.e.,  $h = -\sum_{i=1}^n p_i \log p_i$  (the so-called *entropy*):

```
p = np.array([0.1, 0.3, 0.25, 0.15, 0.12, 0.08]) # example vector
-np.sum(p*np.log(p))
## 1.6790818544987114
```

The above involves the use of a unary vectorised minus (change sign), an aggregation function (`sum`), a vectorised mathematical function (`log`), and an elementwise multiplication of two vectors of the same lengths.

**Example 5.14** Let us assume that – for whatever the reason – we would like to plot two mathematical functions, the sine,  $f(x) = \sin x$ , and a polynomial of degree 7,  $g(x) = x - x^3/6 + x^5/120 - x^7/5040$  for  $x$  in the interval  $[-\pi, 3\pi/2]$ .

To do this, we can probe the values of  $f$  and  $g$  at sufficiently many points using the vectorised operations discussed so far and then use the `matplotlib.pyplot.plot` function to draw what we see in Figure 5.7.

```
x = np.linspace(-np.pi, 1.5*np.pi, 1001) # many points in the said interval
yf = np.sin(x)
yg = x - x**3/6 + x**5/120 - x**7/5040
plt.plot(x, yf, 'k-', label="f(x)") # black solid line
plt.plot(x, yg, 'r:', label="g(x)") # red dotted line
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

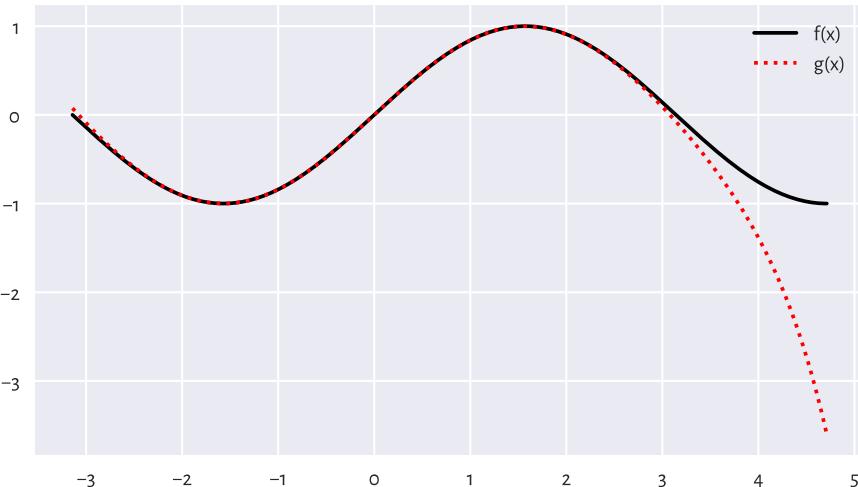


Figure 5.7: With vectorised functions, it is easy to generate plots like this one; we used different line styles so that the plot is readable also when printed in black and white

Decreasing the number of points in  $x$  will reveal that the plotting function merely draws a series of straight-line segments. Computer graphics is essentially discrete.

**Exercise 5.15** Based on the `nhanes_adult_female_height_20204` and `nhanes_adult_female_weight_20205` datasets (discussed in the part on histograms), using a single line of code, compute the vector of BMIs of all persons. It is assumed that the  $i$ -th elements therein both refer to the same person.

---

## 5.4 Indexing Vectors

Recall from Section 3.2.1 and Section 3.2.2 that sequential objects in Python (lists, tuples, strings, ranges) support indexing using scalars and slices:

```
x = [10, 20, 30, 40, 50]
x[1] # scalar index - extract
## 20
x[1:2] # slice index - subset
## [20]
```

**numpy** vectors support two *additional* indexing schemes: using integer and boolean sequences.

### 5.4.1 Integer Indexing

Indexing with a single integer *extracts* a particular element:

```
x = np.array([10, 20, 30, 40, 50])
x[0] # first
## 10
x[1] # second
## 20
x[-1] # last
## 50
```

We can also use lists of vectors of integer indexes, which return a subvector with elements at the specified indices:

```
x[ [0] ]
## array([10])
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>4</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes\\_adult\\_female\\_height\\_2020.txt](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_height_2020.txt)

<sup>5</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes\\_adult\\_female\\_weight\\_2020.txt](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_weight_2020.txt)

(continued from previous page)

```
x[ [0, 1, -1, 0, 1, 0, 0] ]
## array([10, 20, 50, 10, 20, 10, 10])
x[ [] ]
## array([], dtype=int64)
```

We added some spaces between the square brackets, but only because, for example, `x[[0]]` might seem slightly more enigmatic. (What are these double square brackets? Nah, it is a list inside the index operator.)

### 5.4.2 Logical Indexing

Subsetting using a logical vector of the same length as the indexed vector is possible too:

```
x[ [True, False, True, True, False] ]
## array([10, 30, 40])
```

This returned the 1st, 3rd, and 4th element (select 1st, omit 2nd, select 3rd, select 4th, omit 5th).

This is particularly useful as a *data filtering* technique. Knowing that the relational operators `<`, `<=`, `==`, `!=`, `>=`, and `>` on vectors are performed elementwisely (just like `+`, `\*`, etc.), for instance:

```
x >= 30
## array([False, False, True, True, True])
```

we can write:

```
x[ x >= 30 ]
## array([30, 40, 50])
```

to mean “select the elements in `x` which are not less than 30”.

Of course, the indexed vector and the vector specifying the *filter* do not<sup>6</sup> have to be the same:

```
y = (x/10) % 2 # whatever
y # equal to 0 if a number is a multiply of 10 times an even number
## array([1., 0., 1., 0., 1.])
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>6</sup> (\*) This is because the indexer is computed first, and its *value* is passed as an argument to the index operator. Python neither is a symbolic programming language, nor does it feature any nonstandard evaluation techniques. In other words, [...] does not care how the indexer was obtained.

(continued from previous page)

```
x[ y == 0 ]
## array([20, 40])
```

**Important:** If we would like to combine many logical vectors, sadly we cannot use the **and**, **or**, and **not** operators, because they are not vectorised (this is a limitation of our language per se).

In **numpy**, we use the `&`, `|`, and `~` operators instead. Unfortunately, they have a lower order of precedence than `<`, `<=`, `==`, etc. Therefore, the bracketing of the comparisons is obligatory.

For example:

```
x[ (20 <= x) & (x <= 40) ] # check what happens if we skip the brackets
## array([20, 30, 40])
```

means “elements in  $x$  between 20 and 40” (greater than or equal to 20 and less than or equal to 40).

**Exercise 5.16** Compute the BMIs only of the women whose height is between 150 and 170 cm.

### 5.4.3 Slicing

Just as with ordinary lists, slicing with `:` can be used to fetch the elements at indexes in a given range like `from:to` or `from:to:by`.

```
x[::-1]
## array([50, 40, 30, 20, 10])
x[3:]
## array([40, 50])
x[1:4]
## array([20, 30, 40])
```

**Important:** For efficiency reasons, slicing returns a *view* on existing data. It does not have to make an independent copy of the subsetted elements, because sliced ranges are *regular* by definition.

In other words, both  $x$  and its sliced version share the same memory. This is important when we apply operations which modify a given vector in place, such as the `sort` method.

```
y = np.array([6, 4, 8, 5, 1, 3, 2, 9, 7])
y[::-2] *= 10 # modifies parts of y in place
y # has changed
## array([60, 4, 80, 5, 10, 3, 20, 9, 70])
```

This multiplied every second element in `y` by 10 (i.e., [6, 8, 1, 2, 7]). On the other hand, indexing with an integer or logical vector always returns a copy.

```
y[ [1, 3, 5, 7] ] *= 10 # modifies a new object and then forgets about it
y # has not changed since the last modification
## array([60, 40, 80, 50, 10, 30, 20, 90, 70])
```

This *did not* modify the original vector, because we have applied ``*=`` on a different object, which has not even been memorised after that operation took place.

---

## 5.5 Other Operations

### 5.5.1 Cumulative Sums and Iterated Differences

Recall that the `+` operator acts on two vectors elementwisely and that the `numpy.sum` function aggregates all values into a single one. We have a similar function, but vectorised in a slightly different fashion. Namely, `numpy.cumsum` returns the vector of *cumulative sums*:

```
np.cumsum([5, 3, -4, 1, 1, 3])
## array([5, 8, 4, 5, 6, 9])
```

This gave, in this order: the first element, the sum of first two elements, the sum of first three elements, ..., the sum of all elements.

Further, *iterative differences* are a somewhat inverse operation:

```
np.diff([5, 8, 4, 5, 6, 9])
## array([-3, -4, 1, 1, 3])
```

returned the difference between the 2nd and 1st element, then the difference between the 3rd and the 2nd, and so forth. The resulting vector is 1 element shorter than the input one.

We often make use of cumulative sums and iterated differences when processing time series, e.g., stock exchange data (e.g., by how much the price changed since the previous day?; [Section 16.3.1](#)) or determining cumulative distribution functions ([Section 4.3.8](#)).

## 5.5.2 Sorting

The `numpy.sort` function returns a sorted copy of a given vector, i.e., determines the order statistics.

```
x = np.array([40, 10, 20, 40, 40, 30, 20, 40, 50, 10, 10, 70, 30, 40, 30])
np.sort(x)
## array([10, 10, 10, 20, 20, 30, 30, 30, 40, 40, 40, 40, 50, 70])
```

The `sort` method (as in: `x.sort()`), on the other hand, sorts the vector in place (and returns nothing).

**Exercise 5.17** Readers interested more in chaos than in bringing order should give `numpy.random.permutation` a try. This function shuffles the elements in a given vector.

## 5.5.3 Dealing with Tied Observations

Some statistical methods, especially for continuous data<sup>7</sup>, assume that all observations in a vector are unique, i.e., there are no *ties*. In real life, however, a situation where one value occurs many times can happen. For instance, two marathoners might finish their runs in exactly the same time, data can be rounded up to a certain number of fractional digits, or observations are inherently integer. We should thus be able to detect it.

`numpy.unique` is a workhorse for dealing with tied observations.

```
x = np.array([40, 10, 20, 40, 40, 30, 20, 40, 50, 10, 10, 70, 30, 40, 30])
np.unique(x)
## array([10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 70])
```

Returns a *sorted*<sup>8</sup> version of a given vector with duplicates removed.

We can also get the corresponding counts:

```
np.unique(x, return_counts=True) # returns a tuple of length 2
## (array([10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 70]), array([3, 2, 3, 5, 1, 1]))
```

This can be used to determine if all the values in a vector are unique:

```
np.all(np.unique(x, return_counts=True)[1] == 1)
## False
```

**Exercise 5.18** Play with the `return_index` argument to `numpy.unique` that allows to pinpoint the indexes of the first occurrences of each unique value.

---

<sup>7</sup> Where, theoretically, the probability of obtaining a tie is equal to 0.

<sup>8</sup> Later we will mention `pandas.unique` which lists the values in the order of appearance.

## 5.6 Determining the Ordering Permutation and Ranking

`numpy.argsort` returns a sequence of indexes that lead to an ordered version of a given vector (i.e., an ordering permutation).

```
x = np.array([40, 10, 20, 40, 40, 30, 20, 40, 50, 10, 10, 70, 30, 40, 30])
np.argsort(x)
## array([ 1,  9, 10,  2,  6,  5, 12, 14,  0,  3,  4,  7, 13,  8, 11])
```

Which means that the smallest element is at index 1, then the 2nd smallest is at index 9, 3rd smallest at index 10, etc. Therefore:

```
x[np.argsort(x)]
## array([10, 10, 20, 20, 30, 30, 30, 40, 40, 40, 40, 50, 70])
```

is equivalent to `numpy.sort(x)`.

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) If there are tied observations in a vector `x`, `numpy.argsort(x, kind="stable")` will use a *stable* sorting algorithm (`timsort`<sup>9</sup>, a variant of mergesort), which guarantees that the ordering permutation is unique: tied elements are placed in the order of appearance.

---

Next, `scipy.stats.rankdata` returns a vector of *ranks*.

```
x = np.array([10, 40, 50, 20, 30])
scipy.stats.rankdata(x)
## array([1., 4., 5., 2., 3.])
```

Element 10 is the smallest (“the winner”, say, the quickest racer), hence it has rank 1. Element 40 is the 4th on the podium, hence its rank is 4. And so on.

There are many methods in nonparametric statistics (those that do not make any too particular assumptions about the underlying data distribution) that are based on ranks, e.g., the Spearman correlation coefficient which we cover in [Section 9.1.4](#).

**Exercise 5.19** Consult the manual page of `scipy.stats.rankdata` and test various methods for dealing with ties.

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) Readers with some background in discrete mathematics will be interested in the fact that calling `numpy.argsort` on a vector representing a permutation

<sup>9</sup> <https://github.com/python/cpython/blob/3.7/Objects/listsort.txt>

of elements in fact generates its inverse. In particular, `np.argsort(np.argsort(x, kind="stable"))+1` is equivalent to `scipy.stats.rankdata(x, method="ordinal")`.

---

### 5.6.1 Searching for Certain Indexes (Argmin, Argmax)

`numpy.argmin` and `numpy.argmax` return the index at which we can find the smallest and the largest observation in a given vector.

```
x = np.array([10, 30, 50, 40, 20, 50])
np.argmin(x), np.argmax(x)
## (0, 2)
```

If there are tied observations, the smallest index is returned.

Using mathematical notation, we can denote the former with:

$$i = \arg \min_j x_j$$

and read it as: let  $i$  be the index of the smallest element in the sequence. Alternatively, it is the *argument of the minimum*, whenever:

$$x_i = \min_j x_j,$$

i.e., the  $i$ -th element is the smallest.

We can use `numpy.flatnonzero` to fetch the indexes where a logical vector has elements equal to True (in Section 11.1.3 we mention that a value equal to zero is treated as the logical False, and as True in all other cases). For example:

```
np.flatnonzero(x == np.max(x))
## array([2, 5])
```

It is a version of `numpy.argmax` that lets us decide what we would like to do with the tied maxima (there are two).

**Exercise 5.20** Let  $x$  be a vector with possible ties. Write an expression that returns a randomly chosen index pinpointing one of the sample maxima.

### 5.6.2 Dealing with Round-off and Measurement Errors

Mathematics tells us (the easy proof is left as an exercise to the reader) that a centred version of a given vector  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x} - \bar{x}$ , has arithmetic mean 0, i.e.,  $\bar{y} = 0$ .

Of course, it is also true on a computer. Or is it?

```
heights_centred = (heights - np.mean(heights))
np.mean(heights_centred) == 0
## False
```

Actually, the average is:

```
np.mean(heights_centred)
## 1.3359078775153175e-14
```

which is *almost* zero (`0.ooooooooooooo134`), but not *exactly* zero (it is a zero for an engineer, not a mathematician). We have seen a similar result when performing standardisation (which involves centring) in [Section 5.3.2](#).

**Important:** All floating-point operations on a computer<sup>10</sup> (not only in Python) are performed with *finite* precision of 15–17 decimal digits.

We know it from school – for example, some fractions cannot be represented as decimals. Therefore, when asked to add or multiply them, we will always have to apply some rounding that ultimately leads to precision loss; e.g., we know that  $1/3 + 1/3 + 1/3 = 1$ , but using a decimal representation with 1 fractional digit, we get  $0.3 + 0.3 + 0.3 = 0.9$ ; with 2 digits we obtain  $0.33 + 0.33 + 0.33 = 0.99$ , and so forth. This sum will never be equal exactly to 1 when using a finite precision.

Moreover, errors induced in one operation will propagate onto further ones. Most often they cancel out, but in extreme cases they can lead to undesirable consequences (like for some model matrices in linear regression, see [Section 9.2.9](#)).

There is no reason to panic, though. The rule to remember is:

**Important:** As the floating-point values are precise up to a few decimal digits, we should refrain from comparing them using the ``==`` operator, because it tests exact equality.

When a comparison is needed, we need to take some error margin into account. Ideally, instead of testing `x == y`, we should either inspect the absolute error

$$|x - y| \leq \varepsilon$$

or, assuming  $y \neq 0$ , the relative error

$$\frac{|x - y|}{|y|} \leq \varepsilon,$$

---

<sup>10</sup> Double precision `float64` format as defined by the IEEE Standard for Floating-Point Arithmetic (IEEE 754).

where  $\varepsilon$  is some small error margin.

For instance, `numpy.allclose(x, y)` checks (by default) if for all corresponding elements in both vectors it holds `numpy.abs(x-y) <= 1e-8 + 1e-5*numpy.abs(y)`, which is a combination of both tests.

```
np.allclose(np.mean(heights_centred), 0)
## True
```

To avoid sorrow surprises, even the testing of inequalities like  $x \geq 0$  should rather be performed as, say,  $x \geq 1e-8$ .

**Note:** Our data are often imprecise by nature. When asked about people's heights, rarely will they give a non-integer answer (assuming they know how tall they are and are not lying about it, but it is a different story) – we get data rounded to 0 decimal digits. Actually, in our dataset the precision is a bit higher:

```
heights[:6] # preview
## array([160.2, 152.7, 161.2, 157.4, 154.6, 144.7])
```

But still, there is an inherent *observational error*. Therefore, even if, for example, the mean thereof was computed exactly, the fact that the inputs themselves are not necessarily ideal makes the estimate *approximate* as well. We can only hope that these errors will more or less cancel out in the computations.

**Exercise 5.21** Compute the BMIs of all females in the NHANES study. Determine their arithmetic mean. Compare it to the arithmetic mean computed for BMIs rounded to 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., decimal digits.

**Note:** (\*) Another problem is related to the fact that floats on a computer use the binary base, not the decimal one. Therefore, some fractional numbers that we believe to be representable exactly, in fact require an infinite number of bits and thus are subject to rounding.

```
0.1 + 0.1 + 0.1 == 0.3 # obviously
## False
```

This is because  $0.1$ ,  $0.1+0.1+0.1$ , and  $0.3$  is actually represented as, respectively:

```
print(f"{0.1:.19f}, {0.1+0.1+0.1:.19f}, and {0.3:.19f}.")
## 0.100000000000000056, 0.3000000000000000444, and 0.299999999999999889.
```

A good introductory reference to the topic of numerical inaccuracies is [[Gol91]], see also [[Higo02], [Knu97]] for a more comprehensive treatment of numerical analysis.

### 5.6.3 Vectorising Scalar Operations with List Comprehensions

*List comprehensions* of the form [ expression **for** name **in** iterable ] are part of base Python. They allow us to create lists based on transformed versions of individual elements in a given iterable object. Hence, they might work in cases where a task at hand cannot be solved by means of vectorised **numpy** functions.

For example, here is a way to generate squares of 10 first natural numbers:

```
[ i**2 for i in range(1, 11) ]
## [1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81, 100]
```

The result can be passed to **numpy.array** to convert it to a vector.

Further, given an example vector:

```
x = np.round(np.random.rand(10)*2-1, 2)
x
## array([-0.86, -0.37, -0.63, -0.59,  0.14,  0.19,  0.93,  0.31,  0.5,
##         0.31])
```

If we wish to filter our all elements that are not greater than 0, we can write:

```
[ e for e in x if e > 0 ]
## [0.86, 0.14, 0.19, 0.93, 0.31, 0.5, 0.31]
```

We can also use the ternary operator of the form x\_true **if** cond **else** x\_false to return either x\_true or x\_false depending on the truth value of cond.

```
e = -2
e**0.5 if e >= 0 else (-e)**0.5
## 1.4142135623730951
```

Combined with a list comprehension, we can write, for instance:

```
[ round(e**0.5 if e >= 0 else (-e)**0.5, 2) for e in x ]
## [0.93, 0.61, 0.79, 0.77, 0.37, 0.44, 0.96, 0.56, 0.71, 0.56]
```

This gave the square root of absolute values.

There is also a tool which vectorises a scalar function so that it can be used on **numpy** vectors:

```
def clip01(x):
    """clip to the unit interval"""
    if x < 0:    return 0
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
elif x > 1:    return 1
else:          return x

clip01s = np.vectorize(clip01)  # returns a function object
clip01s([0.3, -1.2, 0.7, 4, 9])
## array([0.3, 0. , 0.7, 1. , 1. ])
```

In the above cases, it is much better (faster, more readable code) to rely on vectorised **numpy** functions. However, in cases where the corresponding operations are unavailable (e.g., string processing, reading many files), list comprehensions provide a reasonable replacement therefor.

**Exercise 5.22** Write equivalent versions of the above expressions using vectorised **numpy** functions.

**Exercise 5.23** Write equivalent versions of the above expressions using base Python lists, the **for** loop and the **list.append** method (start from an empty list which will store the result).

---

## 5.7 Exercises

**Exercise 5.24** What are some benefits of using a **numpy** vector over an ordinary Python list? What are the drawbacks?

**Exercise 5.25** How can we interpret the possibly different values of the arithmetic mean, median, standard deviation, interquartile range, and skewness, when comparing between heights of men and women?

**Exercise 5.26** There is something scientific and magical about numbers that makes us approach them with some kind of respect. However, taking into account that there are many possible data aggregates, there is a risk that a party may be cherry-picking – reporting the one that portrays the analysed entity in a good or bad light. For instance, reporting the mean instead of the median or vice versa. Is there anything that can be done about it?

**Exercise 5.27** Although – mathematically speaking – all measures can be computed on all data, it does not mean that it always makes sense to do so. For instance, some distributions will yield skewness of 0, but we should not automatically assume that they are nicely symmetric and bell-shaped (e.g., this can be a bimodal distribution). It is thus best to visualise your data first. Give some examples of datasets and measures where we should be critical about the obtained results.

**Exercise 5.28** Give some examples where simple data preprocessing can drastically change the values of chosen sample aggregates.

**Exercise 5.29** Give the mathematical definitions, use cases, and interpretations of standardisation, normalisation, and min-max scaling.

**Exercise 5.30** How are `numpy.log` and `numpy.exp` related to each other? How about `numpy.log` vs `numpy.log10`, `numpy.cumsum` vs `numpy.diff`, `numpy.min` vs `numpy.argmax`, `numpy.sort` vs `numpy.argsort`, and `scipy.stats.rankdata` vs `numpy.argsort`?

**Exercise 5.31** What is the difference between `numpy.trunc`, `numpy.floor`, `numpy.ceil`, and `numpy.round`?

**Exercise 5.32** What happens when we apply `+` on two vectors of different lengths?

**Exercise 5.33** List the four ways to index a vector.

**Exercise 5.34** What is wrong with the expression `x[ x >= 0 and x <= 1 ]`, where `x` is a numeric vector? How about `x[ x >= 0 & x <= 1 ]`?

**Exercise 5.35** What does it mean that slicing returns a view on existing data?

**Exercise 5.36** (\*\*\*) Reflect on the famous<sup>11</sup> saying not everything that can be counted counts, and not everything that counts can be counted.

**Exercise 5.37** (\*\*) Being a data scientist can be a frustrating job, especially when you care for some causes. Reflect on: some things that count can be counted, but we will not count them, because there's no budget for it.

**Exercise 5.38** (\*\*) Being a data scientist can be a frustrating job, especially when you care for the truth. Reflect on: some things that count can be counted, but we will not count them, because some people might be offended or find it unpleasant.

**Exercise 5.39** (\*\*) Assume you were to establish your own nation on some island and become the benevolent dictator thereof. How would you measure if your people are happy or not? Let us say that you need to come up with 3 quantitative measures (key performance indicators). What would happen if your policy making was solely focused on optimising those KPIs? How about the same problem but with regard to your company and employees? Think what can go wrong in other areas of life.

---

<sup>11</sup> <https://quoteinvestigator.com/2010/05/26/everything-counts-einstein/>

# 6

---

## *Continuous Probability Distributions*

---

Each successful data analyst will deal with hundreds or thousands of datasets in their lifetime. In the long run, at some level, most of them will be deemed *boring*. This is because only a few common patterns will be occurring over and over again.

In particular, the previously mentioned bell-shapedness and right-skewness is quite prevalent in the so-called real world. But, surprisingly, this is exactly when things become scientific and interesting – allowing us to study various phenomena at an appropriate level of generality.

Mathematically, such idealised patterns in the histogram shapes can be formalised using the notion of a *probability distribution of a continuous, real-valued random variable*, and more precisely in this case, its *probability density function*.

Intuitively<sup>1</sup>, a *probability density function* is a nicely smooth curve that would arise if we drew a histogram for the whole *population* (e.g., all women living currently on Earth and beyond or otherwise an extremely large data sample obtained by independently querying the same underlying data generating process) in such a way that the total area of all the bars is equal to 1 and the bin sizes are very small.

As stated at the beginning, we do not intend this to be a course in probability theory and mathematical statistics, but a one that precedes and motivates them (e.g., [[DKLM05], [Gen09], [Gen20]]), therefore our definitions are out of necessity simplified so that they are digestible. Hence, for the purpose of our illustrations, let us consider the following characterisation.

---

**Important:** (\*) We call an integrable function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  a *probability density function* (PDF) iff  $f(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x$  and  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$ , i.e., it is nonnegative and normalised in such a way that the total area under the whole curve is 1.

For any  $a < b$ , we treat the area under the fragment of the  $f(x)$  curve for  $x$  between  $a$  and  $b$ , i.e.,  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ , as the probability of the underlying real-valued random variable's (theoretical data generating process') falling into the  $[a, b]$  interval.

---

Some distributions appear more frequently than others and appear to fit empirical

---

<sup>1</sup> (\*) This intuition is of course theoretically grounded and is based on the asymptotic behaviour of the histograms as the estimators of the underlying probability density function, see, e.g., [[FD81]] and the many references therein.

data or parts thereof particularly well; compare [[FEHP10]]. Let us thus review a few noteworthy probability distributions: the normal, log-normal, Pareto, and uniform families (in the course of this course we will also mention the chi-squared, Kolmogorov, and exponential ones).

---

## 6.1 Normal Distribution

A *normal (Gaussian) distribution* is the one that has a prototypical, nicely symmetric, bell-shaped density. It is described by two parameters:  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$  (the expected value, at which the density is centred) and  $\sigma > 0$  (the standard deviation, saying how much the distribution is dispersed around  $\mu$ ); compare Figure 6.1.

The probability density function of  $N(\mu, \sigma)$  is given by:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right).$$

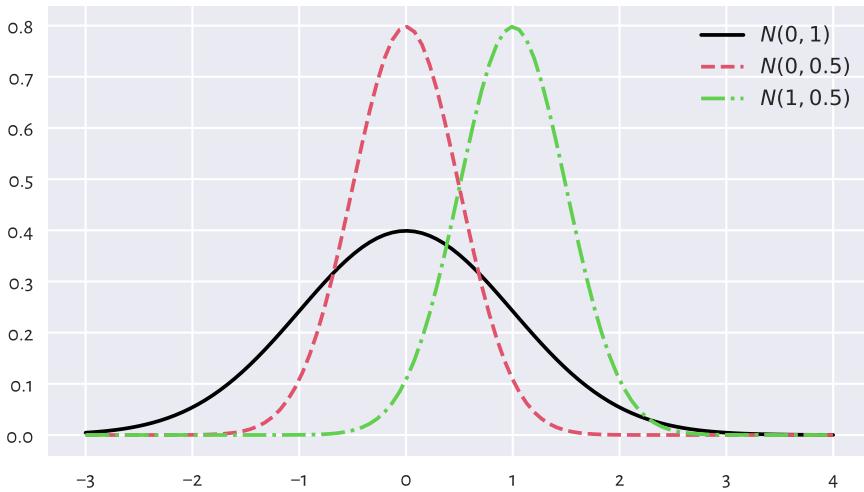


Figure 6.1: The probability density functions of some normal distributions  $N(\mu, \sigma)$ ; note that  $\mu$  is responsible for shifting and  $\sigma$  affects scaling/stretching of the probability mass

### 6.1.1 Estimating Parameters

A course in statistics (which, again, this one is not, we are merely making an illustration here), may tell us that the sample arithmetic mean  $\bar{x}$  and standard deviation  $s$  are natural, statistically well-behaving *estimators* of the said parameters: if all observations would really be drawn independently from  $N(\mu, \sigma)$  each, then we *expect*  $\bar{x}$  and  $s$  be equal to, more or less,  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$  (the larger the sample size, the smaller the error).

Recall the `heights` (females from the NHANES study) dataset and its bell-shaped histogram in Figure 4.2.

```
heights = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_height_2020.txt")
n = len(heights)
n
## 4221
```

Let us estimate the said parameters for this sample:

```
mu = np.mean(heights)
sigma = np.std(heights, ddof=1)
mu, sigma
## (160.13679222932953, 7.062858532891359)
```

Mathematically, we will denote these two with  $\hat{\mu}$  and  $\hat{\sigma}$  (mu and sigma with a hat) to emphasise that they are merely guesstimates<sup>2</sup> of the unknown respective parameters  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$ . On a side note, we use `ddof=1` in the latter case, because this estimator has slightly better statistical properties in this context.

Let us draw the fitted density function (i.e., the PDF of  $N(160.1, 7.06)$ ) which we can compute using `scipy.stats.norm.pdf`, on top of the histogram; see Figure 6.2. We pass `stat="density"` to `seaborn.histplot` so that the histogram bars are normalised (i.e., the total area of these rectangles sums to 1).

```
sns.histplot(heights, stat="density", color="lightgray")
x = np.linspace(np.min(heights), np.max(heights), 1000)
plt.plot(x, scipy.stats.norm.pdf(x, mu, sigma), "r--",
         label=f"PDF of N({mu:.1f}, {sigma:.2f})")
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>2</sup> (\*) It might be the case that we will have to obtain the estimates of the probability distribution's parameters by numerical optimisation, for example, by minimising  $\mathcal{L}(\mu, \sigma) = \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{(x_i - \mu)^2}{\sigma^2} + \log \sigma^2 \right)$  with respect to  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$  (corresponding to the objective function in the maximum likelihood estimation problem for the normal distribution family). In our case, however, we are lucky; there exist open-form formulae expressing the solution to the above, exactly in the form of the aforementioned sample mean and standard deviation. For other distributions things can get a little trickier, though. Furthermore, sometimes we will have many options for point estimators to choose from, which might be more suitable if data are not of top quality (e.g., contain outliers). For instance, in the normal model, it can be shown that we can also estimate  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$  via the sample median and IQR/1.349.

(continued from previous page)

```
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

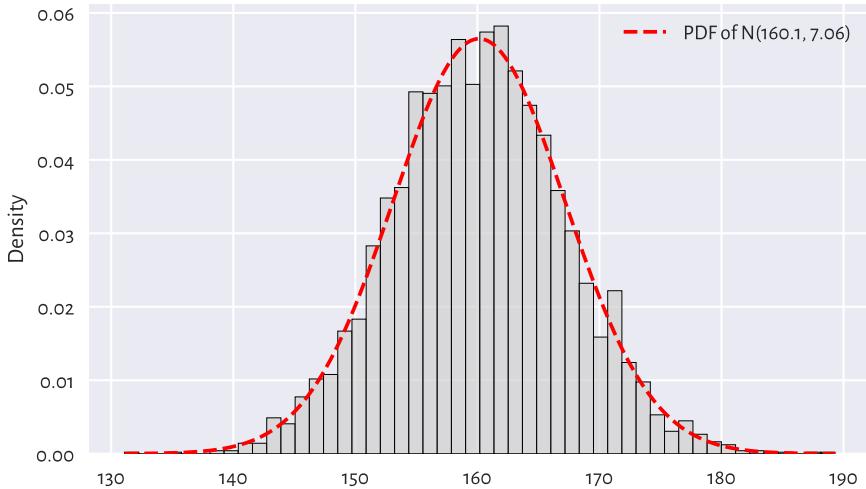


Figure 6.2: A histogram and the probability density function of the fitted normal distribution for the heights dataset

At first glance, this is a very nice match. Before proceeding with some ways of assessing the goodness of fit slightly more rigorously, we should praise the potential benefits of having an idealised *model* of our dataset at our disposal.

### 6.1.2 Data Models Are Useful

If (provided that, assuming that, on condition that) our sample is a realisation of independent random variables following a given distribution, or a data analyst judges that such an approximation might be justified or beneficial, then we have a set of many numbers reduced to merely few parameters.

In the above case, we might want to risk the statement that data follow the normal distribution (assumption 1) with parameters  $\mu = 160.1$  and  $\sigma = 7.06$  (assumption 2). Still, the choice of the distribution family is one thing, and the way we estimate the underlying parameters (in our case, we use  $\hat{\mu}$  and  $\hat{\sigma}$ ) is another.

This not only saves storage space and computational time, but also – based on what we can learn from a course in probability and statistics (by appropriately integrating the density function) – we can imply facts such as for normally distributed data:

- ca. 68% of (i.e., a *majority*) women are  $\mu \pm \sigma$  tall (the  $1\sigma$  rule),

- ca. 95% of (i.e., *most typical*) women are  $\mu \pm 2\sigma$  tall (the  $2\sigma$  rule),
- ca. 99.7% of (i.e., *almost all*) women are  $\mu \pm 3\sigma$  tall (the  $3\sigma$  rule).

Also, if we knew that the distribution of heights of men is also normal with some other parameters, we could be able to make some comparisons between the two samples. For example, what is the probability that a woman randomly selected from the crowd is taller than a male passerby.

**Exercise 6.1** How different manufacturing industries (e.g., clothing) can make use of such knowledge? Are simplifications necessary when dealing with complexity? What are the alternatives?

Furthermore, there is a range of *parametric* (assuming some distribution family) of statistical methods that can be used if we assume the data normality, e.g., the *t*-test to compare the expected values. So many options that open many new doors.

**Important:** We should always verify the assumptions of a model that we wish to apply in practice. In particular, we will soon note that incomes are not normally distributed. Therefore, we must not refer to the above  $2\sigma$  or  $3\sigma$  rule in their case. A cow neither barks nor can it serve as a screwdriver. Period.

## 6.2 Assessing Goodness of Fit

### 6.2.1 Comparing Cumulative Distribution Functions

In the previous subsection we were comparing densities and histograms. It turns out that there is a better way of assessing the extent to which a sample deviates from a hypothesised distribution. Namely, we can measure the discrepancy between some theoretical *cumulative distribution function* (CDF) and the empirical one ( $\hat{F}_n$ , see Section 4.3.8).

**Important:** If  $f$  is a density function, then the corresponding theoretical CDF is defined as  $F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$ , i.e., the probability of the underlying random variable's taking a value less than or equal to  $x$ .

By definition<sup>3</sup>, each CDF takes values in the unit interval ( $[0, 1]$ ) and is nondecreasing.

<sup>3</sup> Actually, the probability distribution of any real-valued random variable  $X$  can be uniquely defined by means of a nondecreasing, right (upward) continuous function  $F : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1]$  such that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} F(x) = 0$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} F(x) = 1$ , in which case  $\Pr(X \leq x) = F(x)$ . The probability density function only exists for continuous random variables and is defined as the derivative of  $F$ .

For the normal distribution family, the values of the theoretical CDF can be computed by calling `scipy.stats.norm.cdf`; see Figure 6.3.

```
x = np.linspace(np.min(heights), np.max(heights), 1001)
probs = scipy.stats.norm.cdf(x, mu, sigma) # sample the CDF at many points
plt.plot(x, probs, "r--", label=f"CDF of N({mu:.1f}, {sigma:.2f})")
heights_sorted = np.sort(heights)
plt.plot(heights_sorted, np.arange(1, n+1)/n,
         drawstyle="steps-post", label="Empirical CDF")
plt.xlabel("$x$")
plt.ylabel("Prob(height $\leq x$)")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

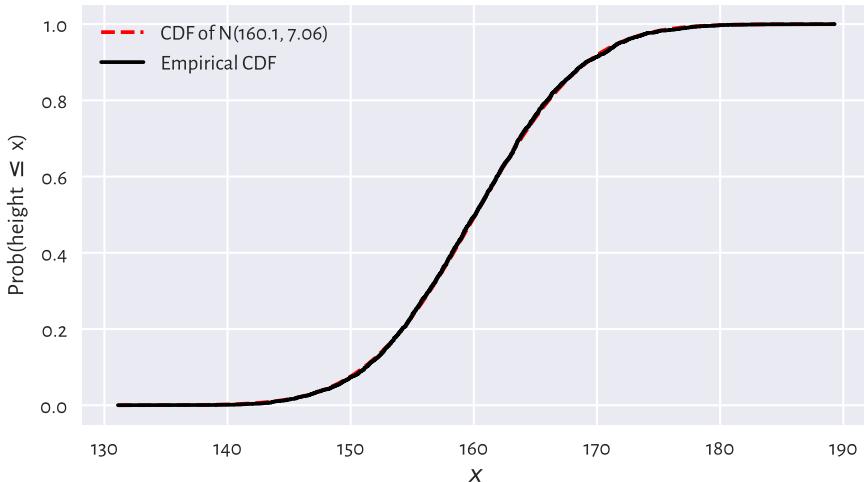


Figure 6.3: The empirical CDF and the fitted normal CDF for the `heights` dataset; the fit is superb

This looks like a superb match.

**Example 6.2**  $F(b) - F(a) = \int_a^b f(t) dt$  is the probability of generating a value in the interval  $[a, b]$ .

Thus, let us empirically verify the aforementioned  $3\sigma$  rule:

```
F = lambda x: scipy.stats.norm.cdf(x, mu, sigma)
F(mu+3*sigma) - F(mu-3*sigma)
## 0.9973002039367398
```

Indeed, almost all observations are within  $[\mu - 3\sigma, \mu + 3\sigma]$ , if data are normally distributed.

---

**Note:** A common way to summarise the discrepancy between the empirical and a given theoretical CDF is by computing the greatest absolute deviation between these two functions

$$\hat{D}_n = \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} |\hat{F}_n(t) - F(t)|.$$

The supremum is a continuous version of the maximum.

---

It holds:

$$\hat{D}_n = \max \left\{ \max_{k=1,\dots,n} \left\{ \left| \frac{k-1}{n} - F(x_{(k)}) \right| \right\}, \max_{k=1,\dots,n} \left\{ \left| \frac{k}{n} - F(x_{(k)}) \right| \right\} \right\},$$

i.e.,  $F$  needs to be probed only at the  $n$  points from the sorted input sample.

```
def compute_Dn(x, F): # equivalent to scipy.stats.kstest(x, F)[0]
    Fx = F(np.sort(x))
    n = len(x)
    k = np.arange(1, n+1) # 1, 2, ..., n
    Dn1 = np.max(np.abs((k-1)/n - Fx))
    Dn2 = np.max(np.abs(k/n - Fx))
    return max(Dn1, Dn2)

Dn = compute_Dn(heights, F)
Dn
## 0.010470976524201148
```

If the difference is sufficiently<sup>4</sup> small, then we can assume that a normal model describes data quite well. This is indeed the case here: we may estimate the probability of someone being as tall as any given height with error less than about 1.05%.

### 6.2.2 Comparing Quantiles

A Q-Q (quantile-quantile) plot is another graphical method for comparing two distributions. This time, instead of working with a cumulative distribution function  $F$ , we will be dealing with its (generalised) inverse, i.e., the quantile function  $Q$ .

Given a CDF  $F$ , the corresponding *quantile function* is defined for any  $p \in (0, 1)$  as

$$Q(p) = \inf\{x : F(x) \geq p\},$$

i.e., the smallest  $x$  such that the probability of drawing a value not greater than  $x$  is at least  $p$ .

---

<sup>4</sup> The larger the sample size, the less tolerant we should be with regard to the size of this disparity; see Section 6.2.3.

**Important:** If a CDF  $F$  is continuous, and this is the assumption in the current chapter, then  $Q$  is exactly its inverse, i.e., it holds  $Q(p) = F^{-1}(p)$  for all  $p \in (0, 1)$ ; compare Figure 6.4.

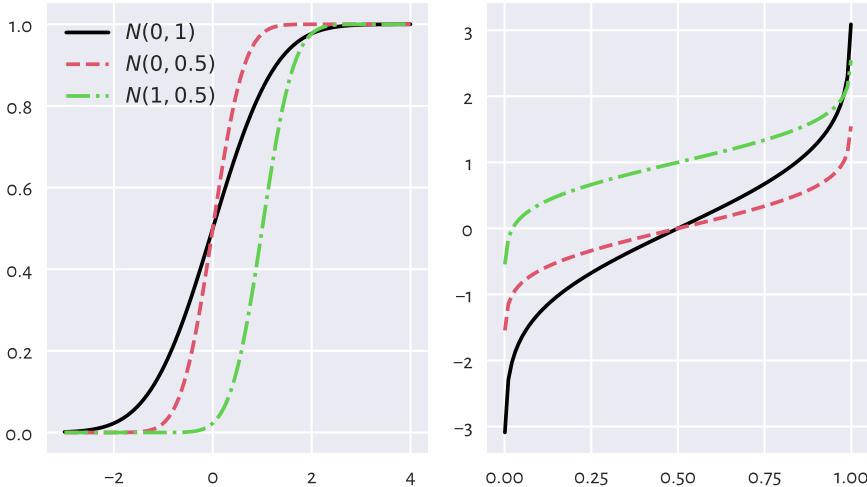


Figure 6.4: The cumulative distribution functions (left) and the quantile functions (being the inverse of the CDF; right) of some normal distributions

The theoretical quantiles can be generated by the `scipy.stats.norm.ppf` function. Here, `ppf` stands for the percent point function which is another (yet quite esoteric) name for the above  $Q$ .

For instance, in our  $N(160.1, 7.06)$ -distributed heights dataset,  $Q(0.9)$  is the height not exceeded by 90% of female population. In other words, only 10% of American women are taller than:

```
scipy.stats.norm.ppf(0.9, mu, sigma)
## 169.18820963937648
```

A Q-Q plot draws a version of sample quantiles as a function of the corresponding theoretical quantiles. The sample quantiles that we have introduced in Section 5.1.1 are natural estimators of the theoretical quantile function. However, we have also mentioned that there are quite a few possible definitions thereof in the literature; compare [[HF96]].

For simplicity, instead of using `numpy.quantile`, we will assume that the  $\frac{i}{n+1}$ -quantile

is equal to  $x_{(i)}$ , i.e., the  $i$ -th smallest value in a given sample  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and consider only  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

Our simplified setting successfully avoids the problem which arises when the 0- or 1-quantile of the theoretical distribution, i.e.,  $Q(0)$  and  $Q(1)$  is infinite (and this is the case for the normal distribution family).

```
def qq_plot(x, Q):
    """
    Draws a Q-Q plot, given:
    * x - a data sample (vector)
    * Q - a theoretical quantile function
    """
    n = len(x)
    q = np.arange(1, n+1)/(n+1)      # 1/(n+1), 2/(n+2), ..., n/(n+1)
    x_sorted = np.sort(x)           # sample quantiles
    quantiles = Q(q)               # theoretical quantiles
    plt.plot(quantiles, x_sorted, "o")
    plt.axline((x_sorted[n//2], x_sorted[n//2]), slope=1,
               linestyle=":", color="gray") # identity line
```

Figure 6.5 depicts the Q-Q plot for our example dataset.

```
qq_plot(heights, lambda q: scipy.stats.norm.ppf(q, mu, sigma))
plt.xlabel(f"Quantiles of N({{mu:.1f}}, {{sigma:.2f}})")
plt.ylabel("Sample quantiles")
plt.show()
```

Ideally, the points are expected to be arranged on the  $y = x$  line (which was added for readability). This would happen if the sample quantiles matched the theoretical ones perfectly. In our case, there are small discrepancies<sup>5</sup> in the tails (e.g., the smallest observation was slightly smaller than expected, and the largest one was larger than expected), although it is quite *normal* a behaviour for small samples and certain distribution families. Still, we can say that we observe a very good fit.

### 6.2.3 Kolmogorov–Smirnov Test (\*)

To be scientific, we should yearn for some more formal method that will enable us to test the null hypothesis stating that a given empirical distribution  $\hat{F}_n$  does not differ significantly from the theoretical one,  $F$ :

$$\begin{cases} H_0 : \hat{F}_n = F & \text{(null hypothesis)} \\ H_1 : \hat{F}_n \neq F & \text{(two-sided alternative)} \end{cases}$$

---

<sup>5</sup> (\*) We can quantify the goodness of fit by using the Pearson linear correlation coefficient; see Section 9.1.1.

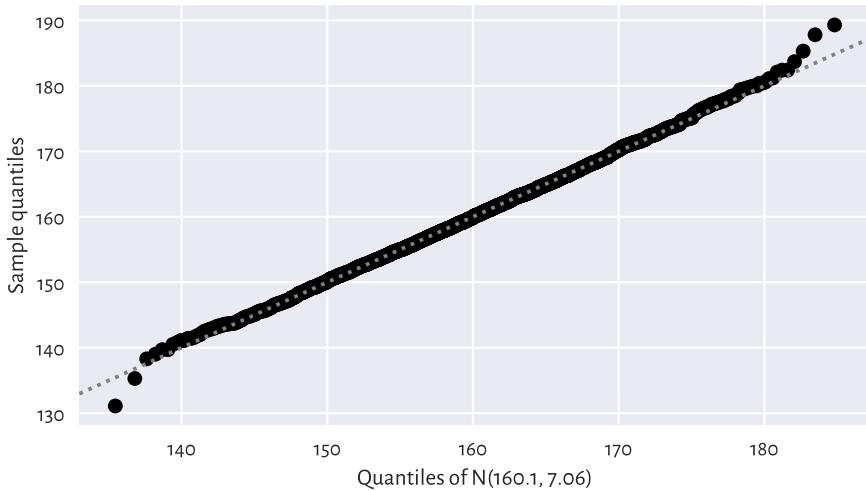


Figure 6.5: Q-Q plot for the `heights` dataset; it's a nice fit

The popular goodness-of-fit test by Kolmogorov and Smirnov can give us a conservative interval of the acceptable values of  $\hat{D}_n$  (again: the largest deviation between the empirical and theoretical CDF) as a function of  $n$  (within the framework of frequentist hypothesis testing).

Namely, if the *test statistic*  $\hat{D}_n$  is smaller than some *critical value*  $K_n$ , then we shall deem the difference insignificant. This is to take into account the fact that the reality might slightly deviate from the ideal; in Section 6.4.4 we mention that even for samples which truly come from a hypothesised distribution, there is some inherent variability. We thus need to be somewhat tolerant.

A good textbook in statistics will tell us (and prove) that, under the assumption that  $\hat{F}_n$  is the ECDF of a sample of  $n$  independent variables *really* generated from  $F$ , the random variable  $\hat{D}_n = \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} |\hat{F}_n(t) - F(t)|$  follows the Kolmogorov distribution with parameter  $n$  (available via `scipy.stats.kstwo`).

In other words, if we generate many samples of length  $n$  from  $F$ , and compute  $\hat{D}_n$ s for each of them, we expect it to be distributed like in Figure 6.6.

The choice  $K_n$  involves a trade-off between our desire to reject the null hypothesis when it is true (data really come from  $F$ ) and to reject it when it is false (data follow some other distribution, i.e., the difference is significant enough). These two needs are, unfortunately, mutually exclusive.

In practice, we assume some fixed upper bound (*significance level*) for making the former kind of mistake, the so-called *type-I error*. A nicely conservative (in a good way)<sup>6</sup>

<sup>6</sup> More details on that in Section 12.2.6.

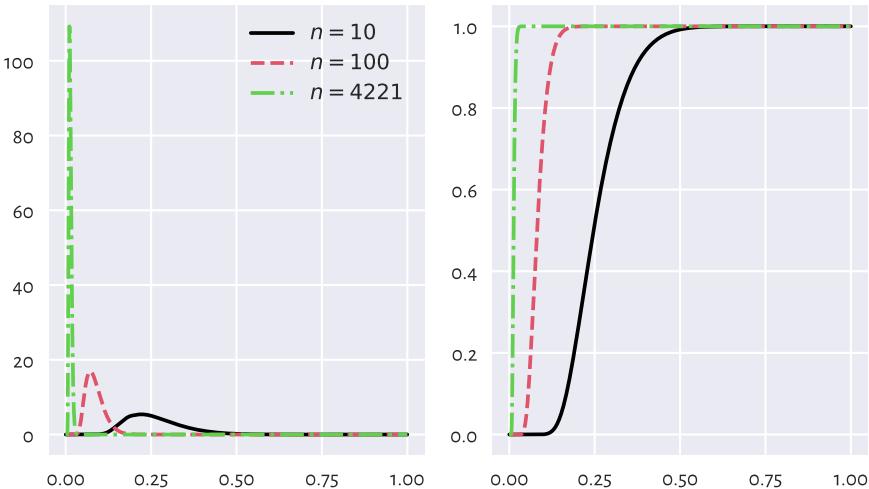


Figure 6.6: Densities (left) and cumulative distribution functions (right) of some Kolmogorov distributions; the greater the sample size, the smaller the acceptable deviations between the theoretical and empirical CDFs

value that we suggest to employ is  $\alpha = 0.001 = 0.1\%$ , i.e., only 1 out of 1000 samples that really come from  $F$  will be rejected as not coming from  $F$ .

Such a  $K_n$  may be determined by considering the inverse of the CDF of the Kolmogorov distribution,  $\Xi_n$ . Namely,  $K_n = \Xi_n^{-1}(1 - \alpha)$ :

```
alpha = 0.001 # significance level
scipy.stats.kstwo.ppf(1-alpha, n)
## 0.029964456376393188
```

In our case  $\hat{D}_n < K_n$ , because  $0.01047 < 0.02996$ . Thus, we conclude that our empirical (heights) distribution does not differ significantly (at significance level 0.1%) from the assumed one ( $N(160.1, 7.06)$ ). In other words, we do not have enough evidence against the statement that data are normally distributed. It is the presumption of innocence: they are normal enough.

We will go back to this discussion in [Section 6.4.4](#) and [Section 12.2.6](#).

## 6.3 Other Noteworthy Distributions

### 6.3.1 Log-normal Distribution

We say that a sample is *log-normally distributed*, if its logarithm is normally distributed.

In particular, it is sometimes observed that the income of most<sup>7</sup> individuals is distributed, at least approximately, log-normally. Let us investigate whether this is the case for the UK taxpayers.

```
income = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/uk_income_simulated_2020.txt")
```

The plotting of the histogram of the logarithm of income is left as an exercise (we can pass `log_scale=True` to `seaborn.histplot`; we will plot it soon anyway in a different way). We proceed directly with the fitting of a log-normal model,  $\text{LN}(\mu, \sigma)$ . The fitting process is similar to the normal case, but this time we determine the mean and standard deviation based on the logarithms of data:

```
lmu = np.mean(np.log(income))
lsigma = np.std(np.log(income), ddof=1)
lmu, lsigma
## (10.314409794364623, 0.5816585197803816)
```

Figure 6.7 depicts the fitted probability density function together with the histograms on the log- and original scale. When creating this plot, there are two pitfalls, though. Firstly, `scipy.stats.lognorm` parametrises the distribution via the parameter  $s$  equal to  $\sigma$  and scale equal to  $e^\mu$ , hence computing the PDF at different points must be done as follows:

```
x = np.linspace(np.min(income), np.max(income), 101)
fx = scipy.stats.lognorm.pdf(x, s=lsigma, scale=np.exp(lmu))
```

Second, passing both `log_scale=True` and `stat="density"` to `seaborn.histplot` does not normalise the values on the y-axis correctly. In order to make the histogram on the log-scale comparable with the true density, we need to turn on the log-scale and pass the manually generated bins that are equidistant on the logarithmic scale (via `numpy.geomspace`).

```
b = np.geomspace(np.min(income), np.max(income), 30)
```

And now:

---

<sup>7</sup> Except the few richest who are interesting on their own; see Section 6.3.2 where we discuss the Pareto distribution.

```
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
sns.histplot(income, stat="density", bins=b, color="lightgray") # own bins!
plt.xscale("log") # log-scale on the x-axis
plt.plot(x, fx, "r--")
plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
sns.histplot(income, stat="density", color="lightgray")
plt.plot(x, fx, "r--", label=f"PDF of LN({lmu:.1f}, {lsigma:.2f})")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

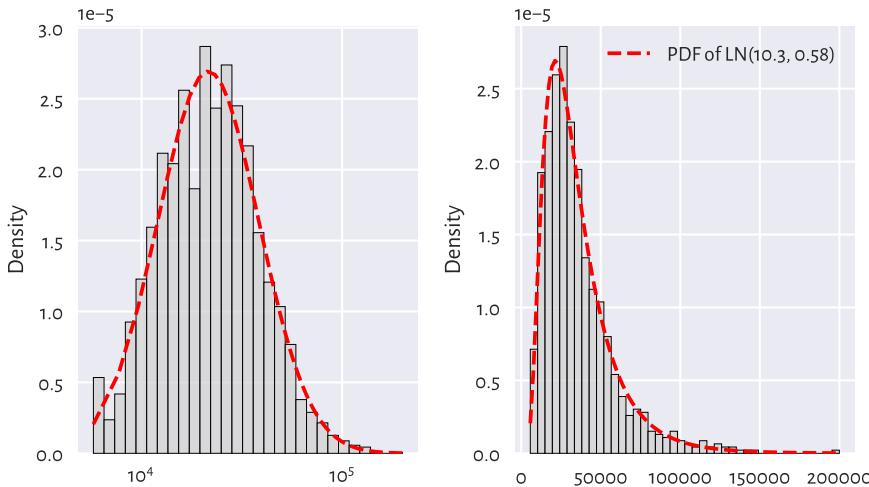


Figure 6.7: A histogram and the probability density function of the fitted log-normal distribution for the `income` dataset, on log- (left) and original (right) scale

Overall, this fit is not too bad. However, we deal with only a sample of 1000 households here; the original UK Office of National Statistics data<sup>8</sup> could tell us more about the quality of this model in general, but it is beyond the scope of our simple exercise.

Furthermore, Figure 6.8 gives the quantile-quantile plot on a double-logarithmic scale for the above log-normal model. Additionally, we (empirically) verify the hypothesis of normality (using a “normal” normal distribution, not its “log” version).

```
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
qqplot( # see above for the definition
       income,
```

(continues on next page)

<sup>8</sup> <https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/personalandhouseholdfinances/incomeandwealth/bulletins/householddisposableincomeandinequality/financialyear2020>

(continued from previous page)

```

lambda q: scipy.stats.lognorm.ppf(q, s=lsigma, scale=np.exp(lmu))
)
plt.xlabel(f"Quantiles of LN({lmu:.1f}, {lsigma:.2f})")
plt.ylabel("Sample quantiles")
plt.xscale("log")
plt.yscale("log")

plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
mu = np.mean(income)
sigma = np.std(income, ddof=1)
qqplot(income, lambda q: scipy.stats.norm.ppf(q, mu, sigma))
plt.xlabel(f"Quantiles of N({mu:.1f}, {sigma:.2f})")
plt.show()

```

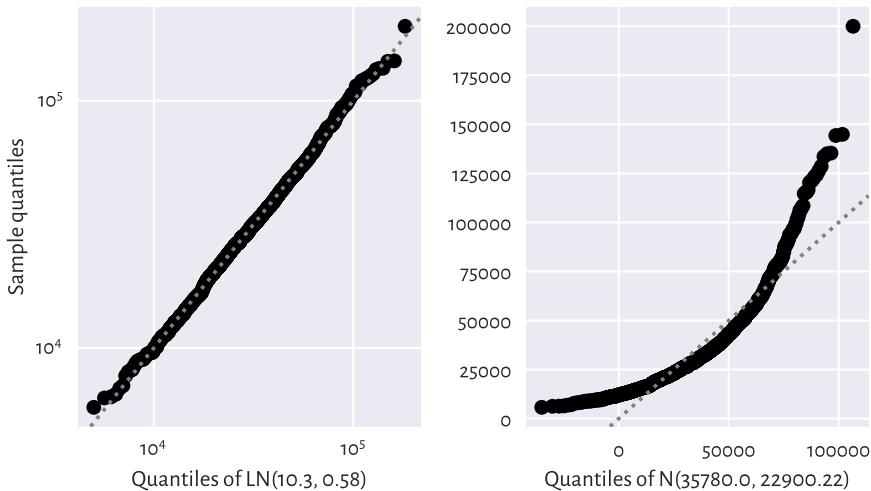


Figure 6.8: Q-Q plots for the `income` dataset vs a fitted log-normal (good fit; left) and normal (bad fit; right) distribution

**Exercise 6.3** Graphically compare the empirical CDF for `income` and the theoretical CDF of  $LN(10.3, 0.58)$ .

**Exercise 6.4** (\*) Perform the Kolmogorov–Smirnov goodness-of-fit test as in Section 6.2.3 to verify that the hypothesis of log-normality is not rejected at the  $\alpha = 0.001$  significance level. At the same time, the `income` distribution significantly differs from a normal one.

We see that definitely the hypothesis that our data follow a normal distribution is most likely false.

On the other hand, the log-normal model, might be quite usable. It again reduced the whole dataset to merely two numbers,  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$ , based on which (and probability theory), we may deduce that:

- the expected average (mean) income is  $e^{\mu+\sigma^2/2}$ ,
- median is  $e^\mu$ ,
- most probable one (mode) in  $e^{\mu-\sigma^2}$ ,

etc.

**Note:** Recall again that for skewed distributions such as this one, reporting the mean might be misleading. This is why *most* people get angry when they read the news about the prospering economy ("yeah, we'd like to see that kind of money in our pockets"). Hence, it is not only  $\mu$  that matters, it is also  $\sigma$  which quantifies the discrepancy between the rich and the poor (too much inequality is bad, but also too much uniformity is to be avoided).

For a normal distribution, the situation is very different, because the mean, the median, and the most probable outcomes tend to be the same – the distribution is symmetric around  $\mu$ .

**Exercise 6.5** What is the fraction of people with earnings below the mean in our  $LN(10.3, 0.58)$  model? Hint: use `scipy.stats.lognorm.cdf` to get the answer.

### 6.3.2 Pareto Distribution

Consider again the dataset on the populations of the US cities in the 2000 US Census:

```
cities = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/other/us_cities_2000.txt")
len(cities), sum(cities) # number of cities, total population
## (19447, 175062893.0)
```

Figure 6.9 gives the histogram of the city sizes with the populations on the log-scale. It kind-of looks like a log-normal distribution again, which the reader can inspect themselves when they are feeling playful.

```
sns.histplot(cities, bins=20, log_scale=True, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

This time, however, will be interested in not what is *typical*, but what is in some sense *anomalous* or *extreme*. Let us take a look again at the *truncated* version of the city size distribution by considering the cities with 10,000 or more inhabitants (i.e., we will only study the right tail the original data, just like in Section 4.3.7).

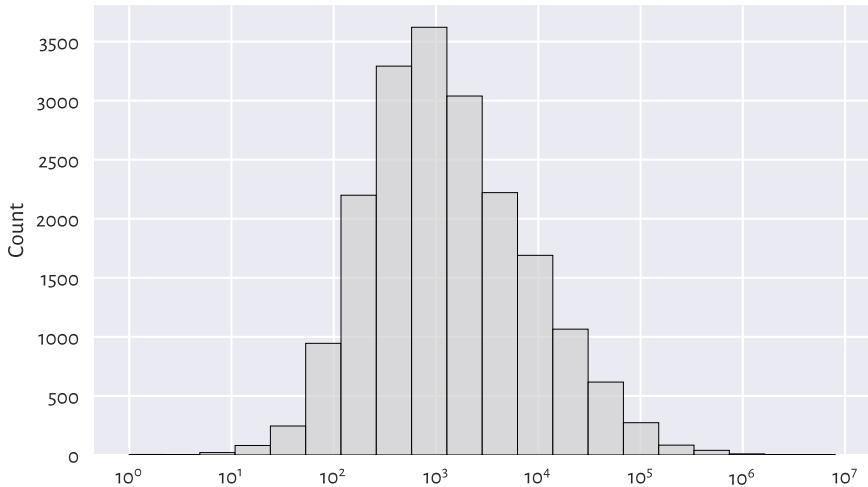


Figure 6.9: Histogram of the unabridged `cities` dataset; note the log-scale on the x-axis

```
s = 10_000
large_cities = cities[cities >= s]
len(large_cities), sum(large_cities) # number of cities, total population
## (2696, 146199374.0)
```

Plotting the above on a double-logarithmic scale can be performed by passing `log_scale=(True, True)` to `seaborn.histplot`, which is left as an exercise. Anyway, doing so will lead to a similar picture as in Figure 6.10. This reveals something very interesting: the bar tops on the double-log-scale are arranged more or less on a straight line. There are many datasets which exhibit this behaviour; we say that they follow a *power law* (power in the arithmetic sense, not social one), see [[CSN09], [New05]] for discussion.

Let us introduce the *Pareto distribution* family which has a prototypical power law-like density. It is identified by two parameters:

- the (what `scipy` calls it) scale parameter  $s > 0$  is equal to the shift from 0,
- the shape parameter,  $\alpha > 0$ , controls the slope of the said line on the double-log-scale.

The probability density function of  $P(\alpha, s)$  is given by:

$$f(x) = \frac{\alpha s^\alpha}{x^{\alpha+1}}$$

for  $x \geq s$  and  $f(x) = 0$  otherwise.

$s$  is usually taken as the sample minimum (i.e., 10000 in our case).  $\alpha$  can be estimated through the reciprocal of the mean of the scaled logarithms of our observations:

```
alpha = 1/np.mean(np.log(large_cities/s))
alpha
## 0.9496171695997675
```

We have already noticed that comparing the theoretical densities and an empirical histogram on a log-scale is quite problematic with **seaborn**, therefore we again must apply logarithmic binning manually in order to come up with what we see in Figure 6.10.

```
b = np.geomspace(s, np.max(large_cities), 21) # bin boundaries
sns.histplot(large_cities, bins=b, stat="density", color="lightgray")
plt.plot(b, scipy.stats.pareto.pdf(b, alpha, scale=s), "r--",
          label=f"PDF of P({alpha:.3f}, {s})")
plt.xscale("log")
plt.yscale("log")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

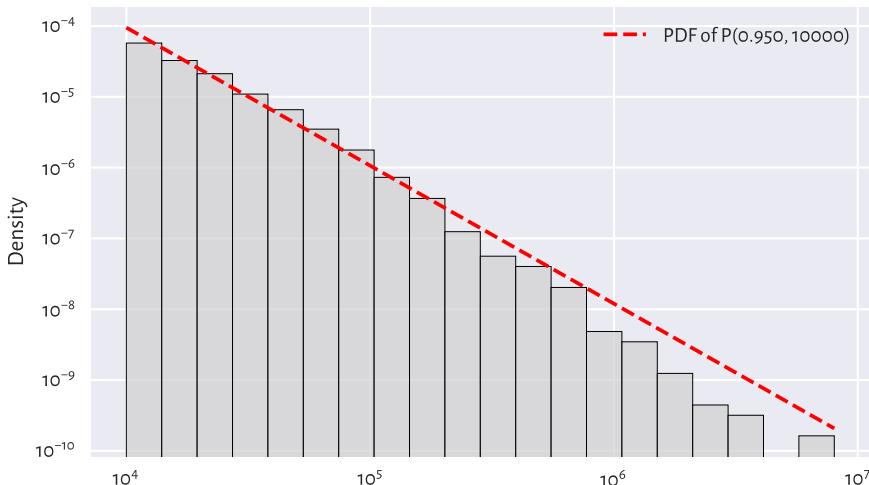


Figure 6.10: Histogram of the `large_cities` dataset and the fitted density on a double log-scale

Figure 6.11 gives the corresponding Q-Q plot on a double-logarithmic scale.

```
qq_plot( # defined above
        large_cities,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

lambda q: scipy.stats.pareto.ppf(q, alpha, scale=s)
)
plt.xlabel(f"Quantiles of P({alpha:.3f}, {s})")
plt.ylabel("Sample quantiles")
plt.xscale("log")
plt.yscale("log")
plt.show()

```

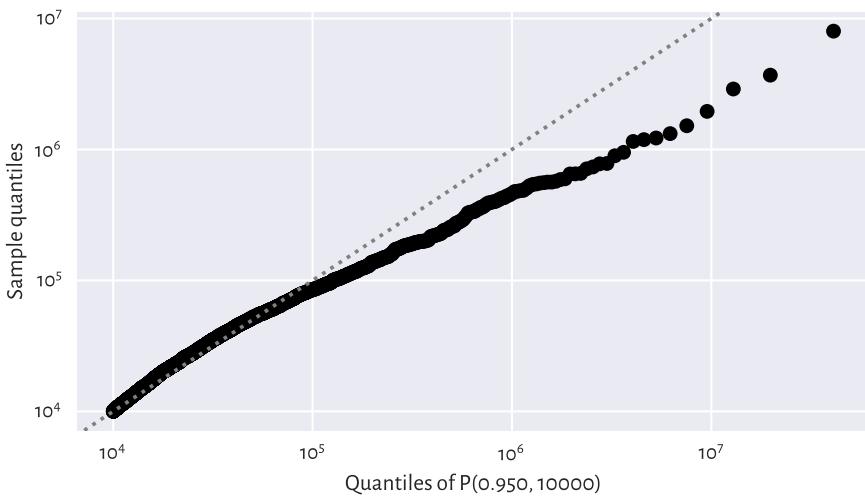


Figure 6.11: Q-Q plot for the `large_cites` dataset vs the fitted Paretian model

We see that the populations of the largest cities are overestimated. The model could be better, but the cities are still growing, right?

**Example 6.6** (\*) It might also be interesting to see how well can we predict the probability of a randomly selected city being at least a given size. Let us thus denote with  $S(x) = 1 - F(x)$  the complementary cumulative distribution function (CCDF; sometimes referred to as the survival function) and with  $\hat{S}_n(x) = 1 - \hat{F}_n(x)$  being its empirical version. Figure 6.12 compares the empirical and the fitted CCDFs with probabilities on the linear- and log-scale.

```

x = np.geomspace(np.min(large_cities), np.max(large_cities), 1001)
probs = scipy.stats.pareto.cdf(x, alpha, scale=s)
n = len(large_cities)
for i in [1, 2]:
    plt.subplot(1, 2, i)
    plt.plot(x, 1-probs, "r--", label=f"CCDF of P({alpha:.3f}, {s})")
    plt.plot(np.sort(large_cities), 1-np.arange(1, n+1)/n,

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

drawstyle="steps-post", label="Empirical Complementary CDF")
plt.xlabel("$x$")
plt.xscale("log")
plt.yscale(["linear", "log"][[i-1]])
if i == 1:
    plt.ylabel("Prob(city size > x)")
    plt.legend()
plt.show()

```

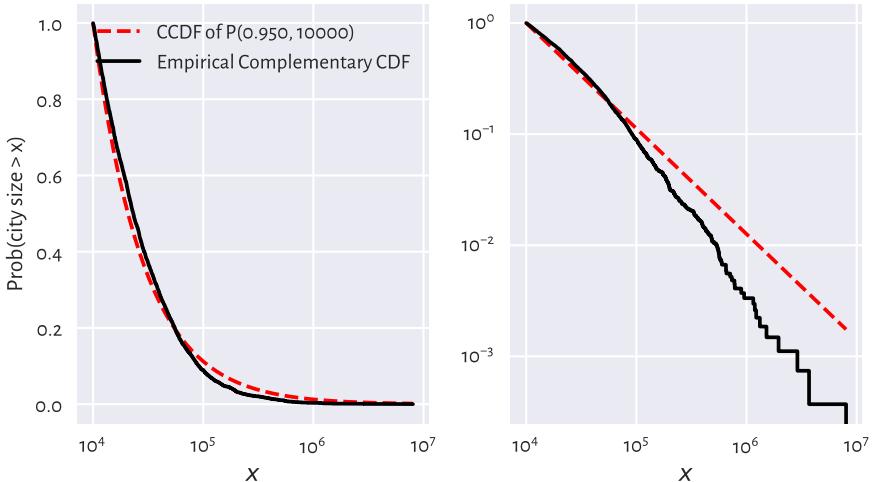


Figure 6.12: Empirical and theoretical complementary cumulative distribution functions for the `large_cities` dataset with probabilities on the linear- (left) and log-scale (right) and city sizes on the log-scale

In terms of the maximal absolute distance between the two functions,  $\hat{D}_n$ , from the left plot we see that the fit looks pretty good (let us stress that the log-scale overemphasises the relatively small differences in the right tail and should not be used for judging the value of  $\hat{D}_n$ ).

However, that the Kolmogorov–Smirnov goodness-of-fit tests rejects the hypothesis of Pareitianity (at significance level 0.1%) is left as an exercise to the reader.

### 6.3.3 Uniform Distribution

Consider the Polish *Lotto* lottery, where 6 numbered balls  $\{1, 2, \dots, 49\}$  are drawn without replacement from an urn. We have a dataset that summarises the number of times each ball has been drawn in all the games in the period 1957–2016.

```

lotto = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/lotto_table.txt")
lotto
## array([720., 720., 714., 752., 719., 753., 701., 692., 716.,
##        668., 749., 713., 723., 693., 777., 747., 728., 734., 762.,
##        729., 695., 761., 735., 719., 754., 741., 750., 701., 744.,
##        729., 716., 768., 715., 735., 725., 741., 697., 713., 711.,
##        744., 652., 683., 744., 714., 674., 654., 681.])

```

Each event seems to occur more or less with the same probability. Of course, the numbers on the balls are integer, but in our idealised scenario we may try modelling this dataset using a continuous *uniform distribution*, which yields arbitrary real numbers on a given interval  $(a, b)$ , i.e., between some  $a$  and  $b$ . We denote such a distribution with  $U(a, b)$ . It has the probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{b - a},$$

for  $x \in (a, b)$  and  $f(x) = 0$  otherwise.

Notice that `scipy.stats.uniform` uses parameters `a` and `scale` equal to  $b - a$  instead.

In our case, it makes sense to set `a=1` and `b=50` and interpret an outcome like `49.1253` as representing the 49th ball (compare the notion of the floor function,  $\lfloor x \rfloor$ ).

```

x = np.linspace(1, 50, 1001)
plt.bar(np.arange(1, 50), width=1, height=lotto/np.sum(lotto),
        color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8, align="edge")
plt.plot(x, scipy.stats.uniform.pdf(x, 1, scale=49), "r--",
          label="PDF of U(1, 50)")
plt.legend()
plt.show()

```

Visually, see Figure 6.13, this model makes much sense, but again, some more rigorous statistical testing would be required to determine if someone has not been tampering with the lottery results, i.e., if data does not deviate from the uniform distribution significantly.

Unfortunately, we cannot use the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test, because data are not continuous. See, however, Section 11.4.3 for the Pearson chi-squared test that is applicable here.

**Exercise 6.7** Does playing lotteries and engaging in gambling make rational sense at all, from the perspective of an individual player? Well, we see that 16 is the most frequently occurring outcome in Lotto, maybe there's some magic in it? Also, some people became millionaires after all, right?

---

**Note:** In data modelling (e.g., Bayesian statistics), sometimes a uniform distribution

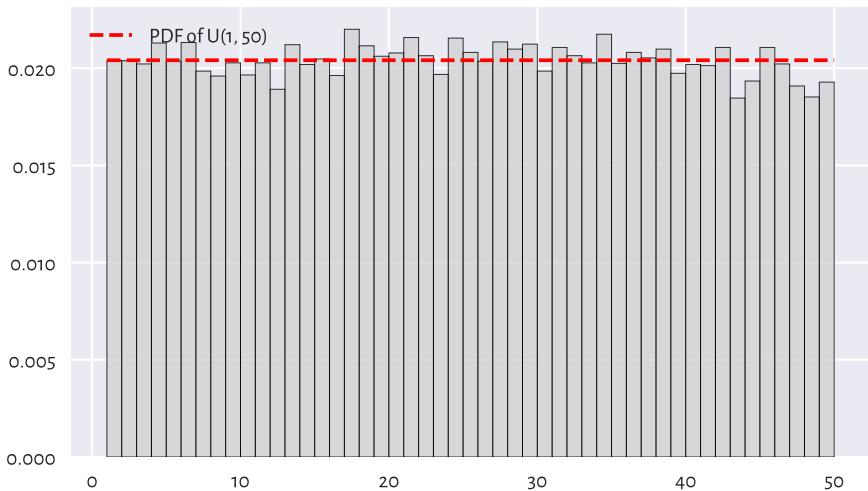


Figure 6.13: Histogram of the `lotto` dataset

is chosen as a placeholder for “we know nothing about a phenomenon, so let us just assume that every event is equally likely”. However, overall, it is quite fascinating that the real world tends to be structured after all. Emerging patterns are plentiful, most often far from being uniformly distributed, and, furthermore, they are subject to quantitative analysis.

---

#### 6.3.4 Distribution Mixtures (\*)

Some datasets may fail to fit through simple models such as the ones described above. It may sometimes be due to their non-random behaviour: statistics gives just one means to create data idealisations, we also have partial differential equations, approximation theory, graphs and complex networks, agent-based modelling, and so forth, which might be worth giving a study (and then try).

Another reason may be that what we observe is in fact a *mixture* (creative combination) of simpler processes.

The dataset representing the December 2021 hourly averages pedestrian counts near the Southern Cross Station in Melbourne might be a good instance of such a scenario, compare Figure 4.5.

```
peds = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/southern_cross_station_peds_2019_dec.txt")
```

It might not be a bad idea to try to fit a probabilistic (convex) combination of three

normal distributions  $f_1, f_2, f_3$ , corresponding to the morning, lunch-time, and evening pedestrian count peaks. This yields the PDF

$$f(x) = w_1 f_1(x) + w_2 f_2(x) + w_3 f_3(x)$$

for some coefficients  $w_1, w_2, w_3 \geq 0$  such that  $w_1 + w_2 + w_3 = 1$ .

Figure 6.14 depicts a mixture of  $N(8, 1)$ ,  $N(12, 1)$ , and  $N(17, 2)$  with the corresponding weights of 0.35, 0.1, and 0.55. This particular dataset is quite coarse-grained (we only have 24 bar heights at our disposal), therefore these estimated parameters and coefficients should be taken with a pinch of chilli pepper.

```
plt.bar(np.arange(24), width=1, height=peds/np.sum(peds),
        color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8)
x = np.arange(0, 25, 0.1)
p1 = scipy.stats.norm.pdf(x, 8, 1)
p2 = scipy.stats.norm.pdf(x, 12, 1)
p3 = scipy.stats.norm.pdf(x, 17, 2)
p = 0.35*p1 + 0.1*p2 + 0.55*p3 # weighted combination of 3 densities
plt.plot(x, p, "r--", label="PDF of a normal mixture")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

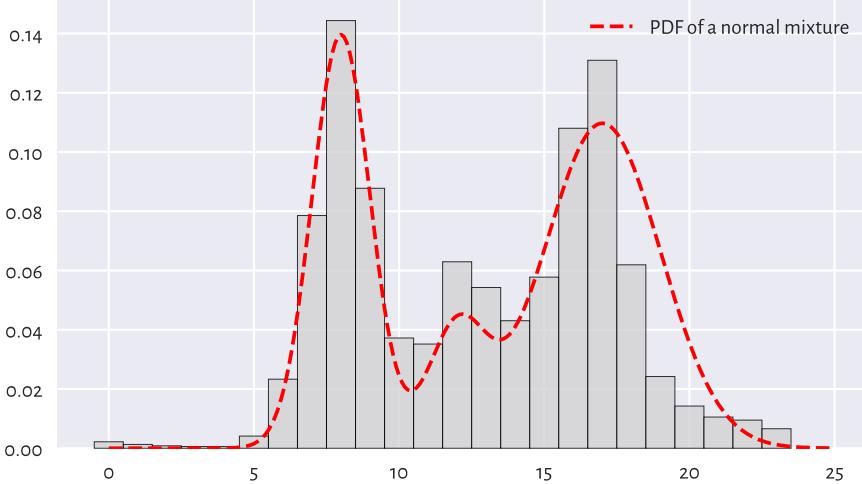


Figure 6.14: Histogram of the `peds` dataset and a guesstimated mixture of three normal distributions

---

**Important:** It will frequently be the case in data wrangling that more complex entities

(models, methods) will be arising as combinations of simpler (primitive) components. This is why we should spend a great deal of time studying the *fundamentals*.

---

**Note:** Some data clustering techniques (in particular, the  $k$ -means algorithm that we briefly discuss later in this course) could be used to split a data sample into disjoint chunks corresponding to different mixture components.

Also, it might be the case that the mixture components can in fact be explained by another categorical variable which divides the dataset into natural groups, compare [Chapter 12](#).

---

## 6.4 Generating Pseudorandom Numbers

A probability distribution is useful not only for describing a dataset. It also enables us to perform many experiments on data that we do not currently have, but we might obtain in the future, to test various scenarios and hypotheses.

To do this, we can generate a random sample of independent (not related to each other) observations.

### 6.4.1 Uniform Distribution

When most people say *random*, they implicitly mean *uniformly distributed*. For example:

```
np.random.rand(5)
## array([0.69646919, 0.28613933, 0.22685145, 0.55131477, 0.71946897])
```

gives 5 observations sampled independently from the uniform distribution on the unit interval, i.e.,  $U(0, 1)$ .

The same with **scipy**, but this time the support will be  $(-10, 15)$ .

```
scipy.stats.uniform.rvs(-10, scale=25, size=5) # from -10 to -10+25
## array([ 0.5776615 , 14.51910496, 7.12074346, 2.02329754, -0.19706205])
```

Alternatively, we could do that ourselves by shifting and scaling the output of the random number generator on the unit interval using the formula `numpy.random.rand(5)*25-10`.

### 6.4.2 Not Exactly Random

Actually, we are generating numbers using a computer, which is purely deterministic, hence we shall refer to them as *pseudorandom* or random-like ones (albeit they are non-distinguishable from truly random, when subject to rigorous tests for randomness).

To prove it, we can set the initial state of the generator (the *seed*) via some number and see what values are output:

```
np.random.seed(123) # set seed
np.random.rand(5)
## array([0.69646919, 0.28613933, 0.22685145, 0.55131477, 0.71946897])
```

Then, we set the seed once again via the same number and see how “random” the next values are:

```
np.random.seed(123) # set seed
np.random.rand(5)
## array([0.69646919, 0.28613933, 0.22685145, 0.55131477, 0.71946897])
```

This enables us to perform completely *reproducible* numerical experiments, and this is a very good feature: truly scientific inquiries should lead to identical results under the same conditions.

**Note:** If we do not set the seed manually, it will be initialised based on the current wall time, which is different every... time – therefore the numbers will *seem* random to us.

Many Python packages that we will be using in the future, including `pandas` and `sk-learn` rely on `numpy`'s random number generator, thus we will be calling `numpy.random.seed` to make them predictable.

Additionally, some of them (e.g., `sklearn.model_selection.train_test_split` or `pandas.DataFrame.sample`) are equipped with the `random_state` argument, which behaves as if we *temporarily* changed the seed (for just one call to that function). For instance:

```
scipy.stats.uniform.rvs(size=5, random_state=123)
## array([0.69646919, 0.28613933, 0.22685145, 0.55131477, 0.71946897])
```

This gives the same sequence as above.

### 6.4.3 Sampling from Other Distributions

Generating data from other distributions is possible too; there are many `rvs` methods implemented in `scipy.stats`. For example, here is a sample from  $N(100, 16)$ :

```
scipy.stats.norm.rvs(100, 16, size=3, random_state=50489)
## array([113.41134015, 46.99328545, 157.1304154 ])
```

Pseudorandom deviates from the *standard* normal distribution, i.e.,  $N(0, 1)$ , can also be generated using `numpy.random.randn`. Therefore, as  $N(100, 16)$  is a scaled and shifted version thereof, the above is equivalent to:

```
np.random.seed(50489)
np.random.randn(3)*16 + 100
## array([113.41134015, 46.99328545, 157.1304154 ])
```

**Important:** Conclusions based on simulated data are trustworthy, because they cannot be manipulated. Or can they?

The pseudorandom number generator's seed used above, 50489, is quite suspicious. It might suggest that someone wanted to *prove* some point (in this case, the violation of the  $3\sigma$  rule).

This is why we recommend sticking to one and only seed most of the time, e.g., 123, or – when performing simulations – setting consecutive seeds for each iteration: 1, 2, ... .

**Exercise 6.8** Generate 1000 pseudorandom numbers from the log-normal distribution and draw a histogram thereof.

**Note:** (\*) Having a good pseudorandom number generator from the uniform distribution on the unit interval is crucial, because sampling from other distributions usually involves transforming independent  $U(0, 1)$  variates.

For instance, realisations of random variables following any continuous cumulative distribution function  $F$  can be constructed by means of the *inverse transform sampling*:

1. Generate a sample  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  independently from  $U(0, 1)$ ;
2. Transform each  $x_i$  by applying the quantile function,  $y_i = F^{-1}(x_i)$ ;
3. Now  $y_1, \dots, y_n$  follows the CDF  $F$ .

For more topics on random number generation, see [[Geno3], [RCO4]].

**Exercise 6.9** (\*) Generate 1000 pseudorandom numbers from the log-normal distribution using inverse transform sampling.

**Exercise 6.10** (\*\*) Generate 1000 pseudorandom numbers from the distribution mixture discussed in Section 6.3.4.

#### 6.4.4 Natural Variability

Even a sample which we know to be generated from a specific distribution will deviate from it, sometimes considerably. Such effects usually disappear<sup>9</sup> when the availability of data increases, but definitely will be visible for small sample sizes.

For example, [Figure 6.15](#) depicts the histogram of 9 different samples of size 100, all drawn independently from the normal distribution  $N(0, 1)$ .

```
plt.figure(figsize=(plt.rcParams["figure.figsize"][0], )*2) # width=height
x = np.linspace(-4, 4, 1001)
fx = scipy.stats.norm.pdf(x) # PDF of  $N(0, 1)$ 
for i in range(9):
    plt.subplot(3, 3, i+1)
    sample = scipy.stats.norm.rvs(size=100, random_state=i+1)
    sns.histplot(sample, stat="density", bins=10, color="lightgray")
    plt.plot(x, fx, "r--")
    plt.ylabel(None)
    plt.xlim(-4, 4)
    plt.ylim(0, 0.6)
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

There is some ruggedness in the bar sizes that a naïve observer might try to interpret as something meaningful; a competent data scientist must train their eye to ignore such impurities that are only due to random effects (but be always ready to detect those which are worth attention).

**Exercise 6.11** Repeat the above experiment for samples of size 10, 1000, and 10000.

**Example 6.12** (\*) Using a simple Monte Carlo simulation, we can verify (approximately) that the Kolmogorov–Smirnov goodness-of-fit test introduced in [Section 6.2.3](#) has been calibrated properly, i.e., that for samples which really follow the assumed distribution, the null hypothesis is rejected only in ca. 0.1% of the cases.

Let us say we are interested in the null hypothesis referencing the standard normal distribution,  $N(0, 1)$ , and sample size  $n = 100$ . We need to generate many (we assume 10,000 below) such samples for each of which we compute and store the maximal absolute deviation from the theoretical CDF, i.e.,  $\hat{D}_n$ .

```
n = 100
distrib = scipy.stats.norm(0, 1) # assumed distribution - N(0, 1)
Dns = []
for i in range(10000): # increase this for better precision
    x = distrib.rvs(size=n, random_state=i+1) # really follows distrib
    (continues on next page)
```

---

<sup>9</sup> Compare the Fundamental Theorem of Statistics (the Glivenko–Cantelli theorem).

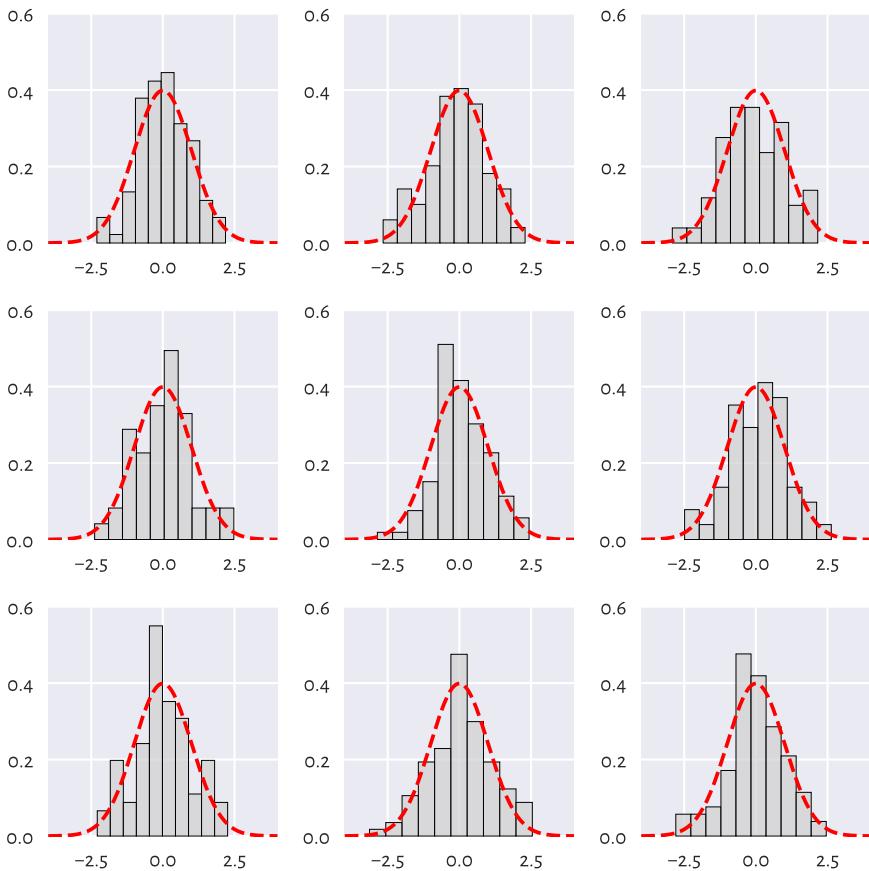


Figure 6.15: All 9 samples are normally distributed!

(continued from previous page)

```
Dns.append(compute_Dn(x, distrib.cdf))
Dns = np.array(Dns)
```

Now let us compute the proportion of cases which lead to  $\hat{D}_n$  greater than the critical value  $K_n$ :

```
len(Dns[Dns >= scipy.stats.kstwo.ppf(1-0.001, n)]) / len(Dns)
## 0.0016
```

In theory, this should be equal to 0.001, but we are relying on randomness above, therefore our values is approximate. Increasing the number of trials from 10,000 to, say, 1,000,000 will make the above estimate more precise.

*It is also worth checking out that the density histogram of `Dns` resembles the Kolmogorov distribution that we can compute via `scipy.stats.kstwo.pdf`.*

**Exercise 6.13** (\*) It might also be interesting to check out the test's power, i.e., the probability that when the null hypothesis is false, it will actually be rejected. Modify the above code in such a way that `x` in the for loop is not generated from  $N(0, 1)$  but from  $N(0.1, 1)$ ,  $N(0.2, 1)$ , etc. and check the proportion of cases where we deem the sample's distribution different from  $N(0, 1)$ . Small differences in the location parameter  $\mu$  are usually ignored, but that this improves with sample size  $n$ .

#### 6.4.5 Adding Jitter (White Noise)

We have mentioned that measurements might be subject to observational error. Furthermore, rounding can occur as early as at the data collection phase. In particular, our `heights` dataset has precision of 1 fractional digit. However, in statistics, when we say that data follow a continuous distribution, the probability of having two identical values in a sample is 0. Therefore, some data analysis methods might assume that there are no ties in the input vector, i.e., all values are unique.

The easiest way to deal with such numerical inconveniences is to add some white noise with expected value of 0, either uniformly or normally distributed.

For example, for `heights` it makes sense to add some jitter from  $U[-0.05, 0.05]$ :

```
heights_jitter = heights + (np.random.rand(len(heights))*0.1-0.05)
heights_jitter[:6] # preview
## array([160.21704623, 152.68870195, 161.24482407, 157.3675293 ,
##        154.61663465, 144.68964596])
```

Adding noise also might be performed for aesthetic reasons, e.g., when drawing scatterplots.

---

## 6.5 Further Reading

For an excellent general introductory course on probability and statistics, see [[Geno9], [Genzo]].

More advanced students are likely to enjoy the two classics [[Bil95], [Cra46]].

Topics in random number generation are covered in [[Geno3], [Knu97], [RCO4]].

For a comprehensive catalogue of statistical distributions, their properties, and relationships between them, see [[FEHP10]].

[[CSN09], [Newo5]] give a nice overview of power-law-like behaviour of some “rich” or otherwise extreme datasets.

## 6.6 Exercises

**Exercise 6.14** Why is the notion of the mean income confusing the general public?

**Exercise 6.15** When manually setting the seed of a random number generator makes sense?

**Exercise 6.16** Given a log-normally distributed sample  $x$ , how can we turn it to a normally distributed one, i.e.,  $y=f(x)$ , with  $f$  being... what?

**Exercise 6.17** What is the  $3\sigma$  rule for normally distributed data?

**Exercise 6.18** (\*) How we can verify graphically if a sample follows a hypothesised theoretical distribution?

**Exercise 6.19** (\*) Explain the meaning of: type I error, significance level, and a test's power.

---



# **Part III**

# **Multidimensional Data**



## Multidimensional Numeric Data at a Glance

---

From the perspective of structured datasets, a vector often represents  $n$  independent measurements of the same quantitative property, e.g., heights of  $n$  different patients, incomes in  $n$  randomly chosen households, or ages of  $n$  runners. More generally, these are all instances of a bag of  $n$  points on the real line. By far<sup>1</sup> we should have become quite fluent with the methods for processing such one-dimensional arrays.

Let us increase the level of complexity by allowing each of the  $n$  entities to be described by possibly more than one feature: say,  $m$  of them. In other words, we will be dealing with  $n$  points in an  $m$ -dimensional space,  $\mathbb{R}^m$ .

We can arrange all the observations in a table with  $n$  rows and  $m$  columns (just like in spreadsheets). Such an object can be expressed with `numpy` as a two-dimensional array which we will refer to as *matrices*. Thanks to matrices, we can keep the  $n$  tuples of length  $m$  together in a single object and process them all at once (or  $m$  tuples of length  $n$ , depending how we want to look at them). Very convenient.

---

**Important:** Just like vectors, matrices were designed to store data of the same type. In Chapter 10 we will cover *data frames*, which further increase the degree of complexity (and freedom) by not only allowing for mixed data types (e.g., numerical and categorical; this will enable us to perform data analysis in subgroups more easily) but also for the rows and columns be named.

Many data analysis algorithms convert data frames to matrices automatically and deal with them as such. From the computational side, it is `numpy` that does most of the “mathematical” work. `pandas` implements many recipes for basic data wrangling tasks, but we want to go way beyond that. After all, we would like to be able to tackle *any* problem.

---

<sup>1</sup> Assuming we solved all the suggested exercises, which did, didn't we? See Rule #3.

## 7.1 Creating Matrices

### 7.1.1 Reading CSV Files

Tabular data are often stored and distributed in a very portable plain-text format called CSV (comma-separated values) or variants thereof.

`numpy.loadtxt` supports them quite well as long as they do not feature column names (comment lines are accepted, though). Unfortunately, for most CSV files the opposite is the case, and hence we suggest relying on a corresponding function from the `pandas` package:

```
body = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
body = np.array(body) # convert to matrix
```

Notice that we have converted the data frame to a matrix by calling the `numpy.array` function. Here is a preview of the first few rows:

```
body[:6, :] # six first rows, all columns
## array([[ 97.1, 160.2,  34.7,  40.8,  35.8, 126.1, 117.9],
##        [ 91.1, 152.7,  33.5,  33. ,  38.5, 125.5, 103.1],
##        [ 73. , 161.2,  37.4,  38. ,  31.8, 106.2,  92. ],
##        [ 61.7, 157.4,  38. ,  34.7,  29. , 101. ,  90.5],
##        [ 55.4, 154.6,  34.6,  34. ,  28.3,  92.5,  73.2],
##        [ 62. , 144.7,  32.5,  34.2,  29.8, 106.7,  84.8]])
```

This is an extended version of the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES<sup>2</sup>), where the consecutive columns give the following body measurements of adult females:

```
body_columns = np.array([
    "weight (kg)",
    "standing height (cm)",
    "upper arm length (cm)",
    "upper leg length (cm)",
    "arm circumference (cm)",
    "hip circumference (cm)",
    "waist circumference (cm)"
])
```

`numpy` matrices do not support column naming. This is why we noted them down sep-

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes/search/datapage.aspx>

arately. It is only a minor inconvenience. **pandas** data frames will have this capability, but from the algebraic side, they are not as convenient as matrices for the purpose of scientific computing.

What we are dealing with is still a **numpy** array:

```
type(body) # class of this object
## <class 'numpy.ndarray'>
```

however, this time a two-dimensional one:

```
body.ndim # number of dimensions
## 2
```

which means that the `shape` slot is now a tuple of length 2:

```
body.shape
## (4221, 7)
```

The above gave the total number of rows and columns, respectively.

### 7.1.2 Enumerating Elements

**numpy.array** can create a two-dimensional array based on a list of lists or vector-like objects, all of identical lengths. Each of them will constitute a separate row of the resulting matrix.

For example:

```
np.array([
    # list of lists
    [ 1, 2, 3, 4 ], # the 1st row
    [ 5, 6, 7, 8 ], # the 2nd row
    [ 9, 10, 11, 12 ] # the 3rd row
])
## array([[ 1,  2,  3,  4],
##        [ 5,  6,  7,  8],
##        [ 9, 10, 11, 12]])
```

gives a 3-by-4 (3×4) matrix,

```
np.array([ [1], [2], [3] ])
## array([[1],
##        [2],
##        [3]])
```

yields a 3-by-1 one (we call it a *column vector*, but it is a special matrix — we will soon learn that shapes can make a significant difference), and

```
np.array([ [1, 2, 3, 4] ])
## array([[1, 2, 3, 4]])
```

produces a 1-by-4 array (a *row vector*).

**Note:** An ordinary vector (a 1-dimensional array) only uses a single pair of square brackets:

```
np.array([1, 2, 3, 4])
## array([1, 2, 3, 4])
```

### 7.1.3 Repeating Arrays

The previously mentioned `numpy.tile` and `numpy.repeat` can also generate some nice matrices. For instance,

```
np.repeat([[1, 2, 3, 4]], 3, axis=0)
## array([[1, 2, 3, 4],
##        [1, 2, 3, 4],
##        [1, 2, 3, 4]])
```

repeats a row vector rowwisely (i.e., over axis 0 – the first one).

Replicating a column vector columnwisely (i.e., over axis 1 – the second one) is possible as well:

```
np.repeat([[1], [2], [3]], 4, axis=1)
## array([[1, 1, 1, 1],
##        [2, 2, 2, 2],
##        [3, 3, 3, 3]])
```

**Exercise 7.1** How to generate matrices of the following kinds?

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 2 \\ 3 & 3 & 4 & 4 & 4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

### 7.1.4 Stacking Arrays

`numpy.column_stack` and `numpy.row_stack` take a tuple of array-like objects and bind them column- or rowwisely to form a new matrix:

```
np.column_stack(([10, 20], [30, 40], [50, 60])) # a tuple of lists
## array([[10, 30, 50],
##        [20, 40, 60]])
np.row_stack(([10, 20], [30, 40], [50, 60]))
## array([[10, 20],
##        [30, 40],
##        [50, 60]])
np.column_stack(
    np.row_stack(([10, 20], [30, 40], [50, 60])),
    [70, 80, 90])
))
## array([[10, 20, 70],
##        [30, 40, 80],
##        [50, 60, 90]])
```

**Exercise 7.2** Perform similar operations using `numpy.append`, `numpy.vstack`, `numpy.hstack`, `numpy.concatenate`, and (\*) `numpy.c_`.

**Exercise 7.3** Using `numpy.insert`, and a new row/column at the beginning, end, and in the middle of an array. Let us stress that this function returns a new array.

### 7.1.5 Other Functions

Many built-in functions allow for generating arrays of arbitrary shapes (not only vectors). For example:

```
np.random.seed(123)
np.random.rand(2, 5) # not: rand((2, 5))
## array([[0.69646919, 0.28613933, 0.22685145, 0.55131477, 0.71946897],
##        [0.42310646, 0.9807642 , 0.68482974, 0.4809319 , 0.39211752]])
```

The same with `scipy`:

```
scipy.stats.uniform.rvs(0, 1, size=(2, 5), random_state=123)
## array([[0.69646919, 0.28613933, 0.22685145, 0.55131477, 0.71946897],
##        [0.42310646, 0.9807642 , 0.68482974, 0.4809319 , 0.39211752]])
```

The way we specify the output shapes might differ across functions and packages. Therefore, as usual, it is always best to refer to the their documentation.

**Exercise 7.4** Check out the documentation of the following functions: `numpy.eye`, `numpy.diag`, `numpy.zeros`, `numpy.ones`, and `numpy.empty`.

## 7.2 Reshaping Matrices

Let us take an example 3-by-4 matrix:

```
A = np.array([
    [ 1,  2,  3,  4 ],
    [ 5,  6,  7,  8 ],
    [ 9, 10, 11, 12 ]
])
```

Internally, a matrix is represented using a *long* flat vector where elements are stored in the row-major<sup>3</sup> order:

```
A.size # total number of elements
## 12
A.ravel() # the underlying array
## array([ 1,  2,  3,  4,  5,  6,  7,  8,  9, 10, 11, 12])
```

It is the `shape` slot that is causing the 12 elements to be treated as if they were arranged on a 3-by-4 grid, for example in different algebraic computations and during the printing thereof. This arrangement can be modified anytime without modifying the underlying array:

```
A.shape = (4, 3)
A
## array([[ 1,  2,  3],
##        [ 4,  5,  6],
##        [ 7,  8,  9],
##        [10, 11, 12]])
```

This way, we have obtained a different view on the same data.

For convenience, there is also the `reshape` method that returns a modified version of the object it is applied on:

```
A.reshape(-1, 6)
## array([[ 1,  2,  3,  4,  5,  6],
##        [ 7,  8,  9, 10, 11, 12]])
```

Here, “-1” means that `numpy` must deduce by itself how many rows we actually want in the result (12 elements are supposed to be arranged in 6 columns, so the maths behind it is not rocket science).

<sup>3</sup> (\*) Sometimes referred to as a C-style array, as opposed to Fortran-style which is used in, e.g., R.

Thanks to this, generating row or column vectors is very easy:

```
np.linspace(0, 1, 5).reshape(1, -1)
## array([[0. , 0.25, 0.5 , 0.75, 1. ]])
np.array([9099, 2537, 1832]).reshape(-1, 1)
## array([[9099],
##        [2537],
##        [1832]])
```

Reshaping is not the same as matrix *transpose*, which also changes the order of elements in the underlying array:

```
A # before
## array([[ 1,  2,  3],
##        [ 4,  5,  6],
##        [ 7,  8,  9],
##        [10, 11, 12]])
A.T # transpose of A
## array([[ 1,  4,  7, 10],
##        [ 2,  5,  8, 11],
##        [ 3,  6,  9, 12]])
```

We see that the rows became columns and vice versa.

**Note:** (\*) Higher-dimensional arrays are also possible. For example,

```
np.arange(24).reshape(2, 4, 3)
## array([[[ 0,  1,  2],
##          [ 3,  4,  5],
##          [ 6,  7,  8],
##          [ 9, 10, 11]],
##         [[12, 13, 14],
##          [15, 16, 17],
##          [18, 19, 20],
##          [21, 22, 23]]])
```

Is an array of “depth” 2, “height” 4, and “width” 3; we can see it as two 4-by-3 matrices stacked together. Theoretically, they can be useful for representing contingency tables for products of many factors. However, in our application areas, we are used to sticking with long data frames instead, see [Section 10.6.2](#), due to their more aesthetic display and better handling of sparse data.

### 7.3 Mathematical Notion

Here is some standalone mathematical notation that we shall be employing in this course. A matrix with  $n$  rows and  $m$  columns (an  $n$ -by- $m$  matrix)  $\mathbf{X}$  can be written as

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1,1} & x_{1,2} & \cdots & x_{1,m} \\ x_{2,1} & x_{2,2} & \cdots & x_{2,m} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_{n,1} & x_{n,2} & \cdots & x_{n,m} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Mathematically, we denote this as  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ . Looking at the above, if this makes us think of how data are displayed in spreadsheets, we are correct, because the latter were inspired by the former.

We see that  $x_{i,j} \in \mathbb{R}$  denotes the element in the  $i$ -th row (e.g., the  $i$ -th *observation*) and the  $j$ -th column (e.g., the  $j$ -th *feature* or *variable*), for every  $i = 1, \dots, n, j = 1, \dots, m$ .

In particular, if  $\mathbf{X}$  denoted the **body** dataset, then  $x_{1,2}$  would be the height of the 1st person.

**Important:** Matrices are a convenient means of representing many different kinds of data:

- $n$  points in an  $m$  dimensional space (like  $n$  observations for which there are  $m$  measurements/features recorded, where each row describes a different object; exactly the case of the **body** dataset above) – this is the most common scenario;
- $m$  time series sampled at  $n$  points in time (e.g., prices of  $m$  different currencies on  $n$  consecutive days; see [Chapter 16](#));
- a single kind of measurement for data in  $m$  groups, each consisting of  $n$  subjects (e.g., heights of  $n$  males and  $n$  females); here, the order of elements in each column does not usually matter as observations are not *paired*; there is no relationship between  $x_{i,j}$  and  $x_{i,k}$  for  $j \neq k$ ; a matrix is used merely as a convenient container for storing a few unrelated vectors of identical sizes; we will be dealing with a more generic case of possibly nonhomogeneous groups in [Chapter 12](#);
- two-way contingency tables (see [Section 11.2.2](#)), where an element  $x_{i,j}$  gives the number of occurrences of items at the  $i$ -th level of the first categorical variable and, at the same time, being at the  $j$ -th level of the second variable (e.g., blue-eyed and blonde-haired);
- graphs and other relationships between objects, e.g.,  $x_{i,j} = 0$  might denote that the  $i$ -th object is not connected<sup>4</sup> with the  $j$ -th one and  $x_{k,l} = 0.2$  that there is a

<sup>4</sup> Such matrices are usually sparse, i.e., have many elements equal to 0. We have special, memory-efficient data structures for handling these data, see `scipy.sparse` for more detail as they go beyond the scope of our introductory course.

weak connection between  $k$  and  $l$  (e.g., who is a friend of whom, whether a user recommends a particular item);

- images, where  $x_{i,j}$  represents the intensity of a colour component (e.g., red, green, blue or shades of grey or hue, saturation, brightness; compare Section 16.4) of a pixel in the  $(n - i + 1)$ -th row and the  $j$ -th column.
- 

**Note:** In practice, more complex and less-structured data can quite often be mapped to a tabular form. For instance, a set of audio recordings can be described by measuring overall loudness, timbre, and danceability of each song. Also, a collection of documents can be described by means of the degrees of belongingness to some automatically discovered topics (e.g., someone said that Joyce's *Ulysses* is 80% travel literature, 70% comedy, and 50% heroic fantasy, but let us not take it for granted).

---

### 7.3.1 Row and Column Vectors

Additionally, will sometimes use the following notation to emphasise that  $\mathbf{X}$  consists of  $n$  rows:

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot} \\ \mathbf{x}_{2,\cdot} \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{x}_{n,\cdot} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Here,  $\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot}$  is a *row vector* of length  $m$ , i.e., a  $(1 \times m)$ -matrix:

$$\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} = [ x_{i,1} \ x_{i,2} \ \cdots \ x_{i,m} ].$$

Alternatively, we can specify the  $m$  columns

$$\mathbf{X} = [ \mathbf{x}_{\cdot,1} \ \mathbf{x}_{\cdot,2} \ \cdots \ \mathbf{x}_{\cdot,m} ],$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_{\cdot,j}$  is a *column vector* of length  $n$ , i.e., an  $(n \times 1)$ -matrix:

$$\mathbf{x}_{\cdot,j} = [ x_{1,j} \ x_{2,j} \ \cdots \ x_{n,j} ]^T = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1,j} \\ x_{2,j} \\ \vdots \\ x_{n,j} \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $.^T$  denotes the transpose of a given matrix (thanks to which we can save some vertical space, we do not want this book be 1000 pages long, do we?).

Also, recall that we are used to denoting *vectors* of length  $m$  with  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ . A vector is a 1-dimensional array (not a 2-dimensional one), hence a slightly different font in the case where ambiguity can be troublesome.

---

**Note:** To avoid notation clutter, we will often be implicitly promoting vectors like  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$  to row vectors  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1 \dots x_m]$ , because this is the behaviour that `numpy`<sup>5</sup> uses; see Chapter 8.

---

### 7.3.2 Transpose

The *transpose* of a matrix  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  is an  $(m \times n)$ -matrix  $\mathbf{Y}$  given by:

$$\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}^T = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1,1} & x_{2,1} & \cdots & x_{m,1} \\ x_{1,2} & x_{2,2} & \cdots & x_{m,2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_{1,n} & x_{2,n} & \cdots & x_{m,n} \end{bmatrix},$$

i.e., it enjoys  $y_{i,j} = x_{j,i}$ .

**Exercise 7.5** Compare the display of an example matrix  $A$  and its transpose  $A.T$  above.

### 7.3.3 Identity and Other Diagonal Matrices

$\mathbf{I}$  denotes the *identity matrix*, being a square  $n \times n$  matrix (with  $n$  most often clear from the context) with 0s everywhere except on the main diagonal, where 1s lie.

```
np.eye(5) # I
## array([[1., 0., 0., 0.],
##        [0., 1., 0., 0.],
##        [0., 0., 1., 0.],
##        [0., 0., 0., 1.],
##        [0., 0., 0., 0.]])
```

The identity matrix is a neutral element of the matrix multiplication (Section 8.3).

More generally, any diagonal matrix,  $\text{diag}(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ , can be constructed from a given sequence of elements by calling:

```
np.diag([1, 2, 3, 4])
## array([[1, 0, 0, 0],
##        [0, 2, 0, 0],
##        [0, 0, 3, 0],
##        [0, 0, 0, 4]])
```

---

<sup>5</sup> Some textbooks assume that all vectors are *column* vectors.

## 7.4 Visualising Multidimensional Data

Let us go back to our `body` dataset:

```
body[1:6, :] # preview
## array([[ 97.1, 160.2, 34.7, 40.8, 35.8, 126.1, 117.9],
##        [ 91.1, 152.7, 33.5, 33. , 38.5, 125.5, 103.1],
##        [ 73. , 161.2, 37.4, 38. , 31.8, 106.2, 92. ],
##        [ 61.7, 157.4, 38. , 34.7, 29. , 101. , 90.5],
##        [ 55.4, 154.6, 34.6, 34. , 28.3, 92.5, 73.2],
##        [ 62. , 144.7, 32.5, 34.2, 29.8, 106.7, 84.8]])
body.shape
## (4221, 7)
```

This is an example of tabular (“structured”) data. The important property is that the elements in each row describe the same person; we can freely reorder all the columns at the same time (change the order of participants). However, sorting a single column and leaving the other ones unchanged will be semantically invalid.

Mathematically, we consider the above as a set of 4221 points in a 7-dimensional space,  $\mathbb{R}^7$ . Let us discuss how we can try visualising different natural *projections* thereof.

### 7.4.1 2D Data

A *scatterplot* can be used to visualise one variable against another one.

```
plt.plot(body[:, 1], body[:, 3], "o", c="#00000022")
plt.xlabel(body.columns[1])
plt.ylabel(body.columns[3])
plt.show()
```

Figure 7.1 depicts upper leg length (the y-axis) vs (versus; against; as a function of) standing height (the x-axis) in the form of a point cloud with  $(x, y)$  coordinates like  $(\text{body}[i, 1], \text{body}[i, 3])$ .

**Example 7.6** Here are the exact coordinates of the point corresponding to the person of the smallest height:

```
body[np.argmin(body[:, 1]), [1, 3]]
## array([131.1, 30.8])
```

and here is the one with the greatest upper leg length:

```
body[np.argmax(body[:, 3]), [1, 3]]
## array([168.9, 49.1])
```

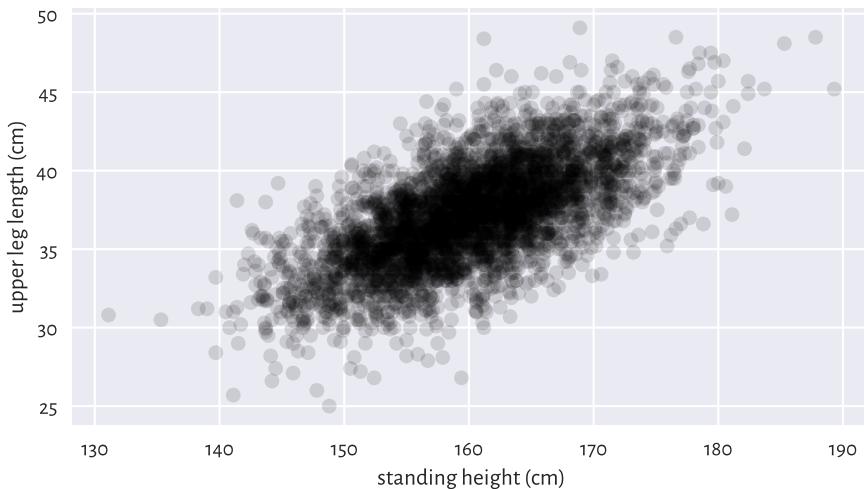


Figure 7.1: An example scatterplot

Locate them in Figure 7.1.

As the points are abundant, normally we cannot easily see *where* the majority of them is located. However, to remedy this, we applied the simple trick of plotting the points using a semi-transparent colour. Here, the colour specifier was of the form `#rrggbbaa`, giving the intensity of the red, green, blue, and alpha (opaqueness) channel in series of two hexadecimal digits (between `00` = 0 and `ff` = 255).

Overall, the plot reveals that there is a *general tendency* of small heights and small upper leg lengths to occur frequently together. The same with larger pairs. In Chapter 9, we explore some measures of correlation that will enable us to quantify the degree of association between variable pairs.

#### 7.4.2 3D Data and Beyond

If we have more than 2 variables to visualise, we might be tempted to use, e.g., a 3-dimensional scatterplot like the one in Figure 7.2.

```
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_subplot(projection="3d", facecolor="#fffffff0")
ax.scatter(body[:, 1], body[:, 3], body[:, 0], color="#00000011")
ax.view_init(elev=30, azim=60, vertical_axis="y")
ax.set_xlabel(body_columns[1])
ax.set_ylabel(body_columns[3])
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
ax.set_zlabel(body_columns[0])
plt.show()
```

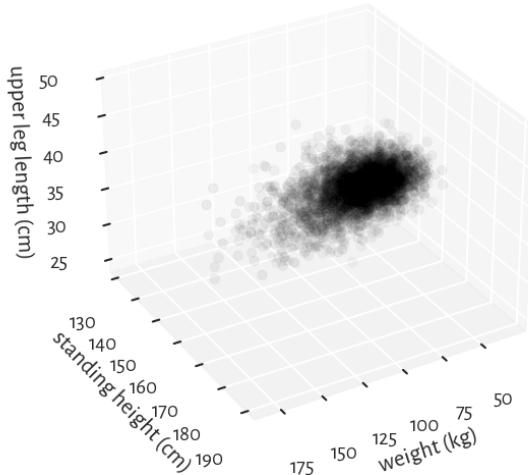


Figure 7.2: A three-dimensional scatterplot reveals almost nothing

However, infrequently will such a 3D plot provide us with readable results: we are projecting a three-dimensional reality onto a two-dimensional screen or page. Some information must inherently be lost. Also, what we see is relative to the position of the virtual camera.

**Exercise 7.7** (\*) Try finding an interesting elevation and azimuth angle by playing with the arguments passed to the `mpl_toolkits.mplot3d.axes3d.Axes3D.view_init` function. Also, depict arm circumference, hip circumference, and weight on a 3D plot.

**Note:** (\*) Sometimes there might be facilities available to create an interactive scatterplot (running the above from the Python's console actually enables this), where the virtual camera can be freely repositioned with a mouse/touchpad. This can give some more insight into our data. Also, there are means of creating animated sequences, where we can fly over the data scene. Some people find it cool, others find it annoying, but the biggest problem therewith is that they cannot be included in printed material. However, if we are only targeting the display for the Web (this includes mobile devices), we can try some [Python libraries](#)<sup>6</sup> that output HTML+CSS+JavaScript code to be rendered by a browser engine.

<sup>6</sup> <https://wiki.python.org/moin/NumericAndScientific/Plotting>

**Example 7.8** Instead of drawing a 3D plot, it might be better to play with different marker colours (or sometimes sizes: think of them as bubbles). A suitable colour map<sup>7</sup>, can be used to distinguish between low and high values of an additional variable, as in Figure 7.3.

```
from matplotlib import cm
plt.scatter(
    body[:, 4],      # x
    body[:, 5],      # y
    c=body[:, 0],    # "z" - colours
    cmap=cm.get_cmap("copper"), # colour map
    alpha=0.5 # opaqueness level between 0 and 1
)
plt.xlabel(body_columns[4])
plt.ylabel(body_columns[5])
plt.axis("equal")
plt.rcParams["axes.grid"] = False
cbar = plt.colorbar()
plt.rcParams["axes.grid"] = True
cbar.set_label(body_columns[0])
plt.show()
```

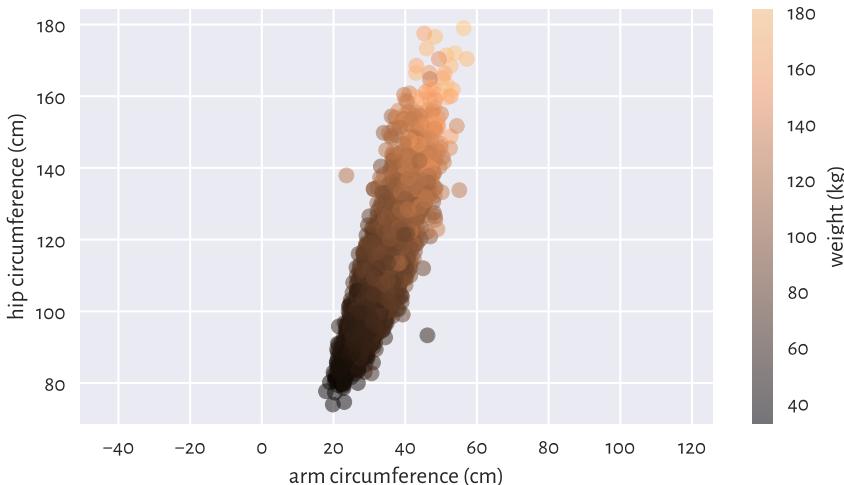


Figure 7.3: A two-dimensional scatter plot displaying 3 variables

We can see some tendency for the weight be greater as both the arm and the hip circumferences increase.

---

<sup>7</sup> <https://matplotlib.org/stable/tutorials/colors/colormaps.html>

**Exercise 7.9** Play around with different colour pallettes. However, be wary that ca. every 1 in 12 men (8%) and 1 in 200 women (0.5%) have colour vision deficiencies, especially in the red-green or blue-yellow spectrum, thence some diverging colour maps might be worse than others.

A piece of paper is 2-dimensional. We only have height and width. The world around us is 3-dimensional, we thus also understand the notion of depth. As far as the case of more-dimensional data is concerned, well, suffice it to say that we are 3-dimensional creatures and any attempts towards visualising them will simply not work, don't even trip.

Luckily, this is where mathematics comes to our rescue. With some more knowledge and intuitions, and this book lets us gain them, it will be as easy<sup>8</sup> as imagining a generic  $m$ -dimensional space, and then assuming that, say,  $m=7$  or  $42$ .

This is exactly why data science relies on automated methods for knowledge/pattern discovery – so that we are able to identify, describe, and analyse the structures that might be present in the data, but cannot be perceived with our imperfect senses.

**Note:** Linear and nonlinear dimensionality reduction techniques can be applied to visualise some aspects of high-dimensional data in the form of 2D (or 3D) plots. In particular, the principal component analysis (PCA) finds an *interesting* angle from which it is worth to look at the data; see [Section 9.3](#).

### 7.4.3 Scatterplot Matrix (Pairplot)

We may also try depicting all (or most – ones that we deem interesting) pairs of variables in the form of a scatterplot matrix; see [Figure 7.4](#).

```
sns.pairplot(
    data=pd.DataFrame( # sns.pairplot needs a DataFrame...
        body[:, [0, 1, 4, 5]],
        columns=body.columns[[0, 1, 4, 5]]
    ),
    plot_kws=dict(alpha=0.1)
)
# plt.show() # not needed :/
```

Plotting variables against themselves is uninteresting (exercise: what would that be?). Thus, we have included histograms on the main diagonal to see how the they are distributed (the *marginal distributions*).

A scatterplot matrix can be a good tool for identifying interesting combinations of columns in our datasets. We see that some pairs of variables are more “structured”

<sup>8</sup> This is an old funny joke which most funny mathematicians find funny.

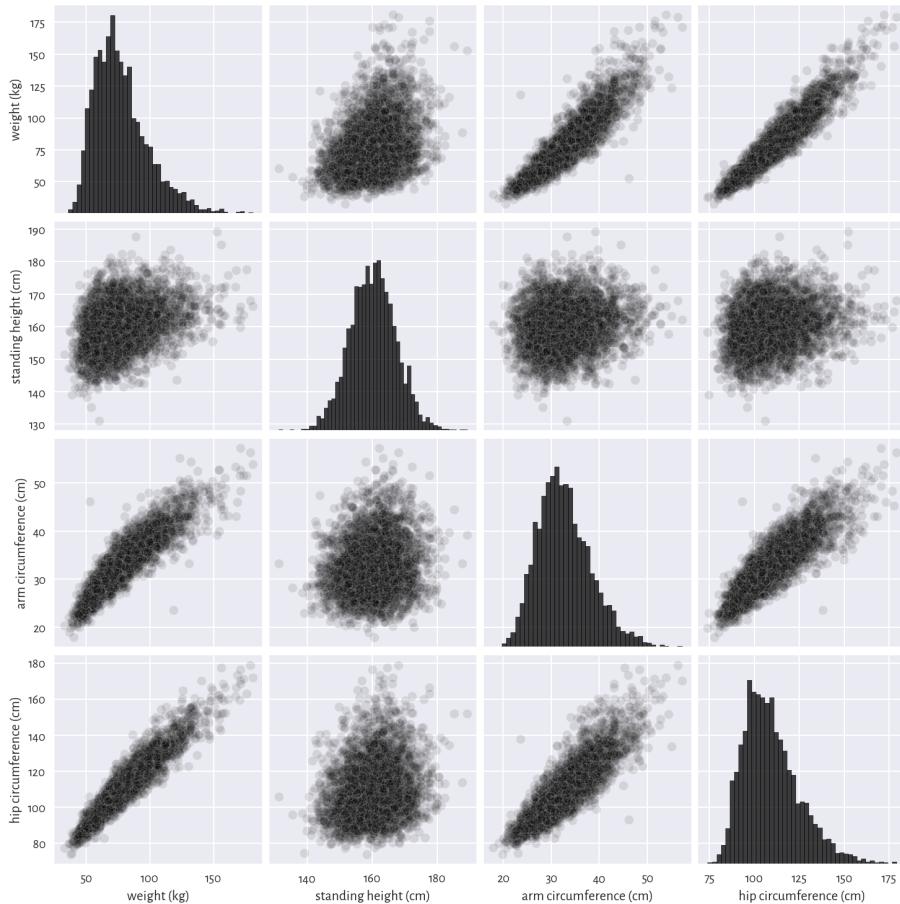


Figure 7.4: Scatterplot matrix for selected columns in the `body` dataset: scatterplots for all unique pairs of variables together with histograms on the main diagonal

than others, e.g., hip circumference and weight are more or less aligned on a straight line. This is why in Chapter 9 we will be interested in describing the possible relationships between the variables.

**Exercise 7.10** (\*) Use `matplotlib.pyplot.subplot` and other functions we have learned in the previous part to create a scatterplot matrix manually. Draw weight, arm circumference, and hip circumference on a logarithmic scale.

## 7.5 Exercises

**Exercise 7.11** What is the difference between `[1, 2, 3]`, `[[1, 2, 3]]`, and `[[1], [2], [3]]` in the context of array creation?

**Exercise 7.12** If  $A$  is a matrix with 5 rows and 6 columns, what is the difference between  $A.$ `reshape(6, 5)` and  $A.T$ ?

**Exercise 7.13** If  $A$  is a matrix with 5 rows and 6 columns, what is the meaning of:  $A.$ `reshape(-1)`,  $A.$ `reshape(3, -1)`,  $A.$ `reshape(-1, 3)`,  $A.$ `reshape(-1, -1)`,  $A.$ `shape = (3, 10)`, and  $A.$ `shape = (-1, 3)`?

**Exercise 7.14** List some methods to add a new row and add a new column to an existing matrix.

**Exercise 7.15** Give some ways to visualise 3-dimensional data.

**Exercise 7.16** How to set point opaqueness/transparency when drawing a scatter plot? Why would we be interested in this?

---



# 8

---

## Processing Multidimensional Data

---

### 8.1 From Vectors to Matrices

Let us study how the vector operations that we discussed in, amongst others, [Chapter 5](#) can be extended to matrices. In many cases, we will end up applying the same transform either on every matrix element separately, or on each row or column. They are all a brilliant example of the *write less, do more* principle in practice.

#### 8.1.1 Vectorised Mathematical Functions

Applying vectorised functions such as `numpy.round`, `numpy.log`, and `numpy.exp` returns an array of the same shape, with all elements transformed accordingly.

```
A = np.array([
    [0.2, 0.6, 0.4, 0.4],
    [0.0, 0.2, 0.4, 0.7],
    [0.8, 0.8, 0.2, 0.1]
]) # example matrix that we will be using below
```

For example:

```
np.square(A)
## array([[0.04, 0.36, 0.16, 0.16],
##        [0. , 0.04, 0.16, 0.49],
##        [0.64, 0.64, 0.04, 0.01]])
```

takes the square of every element.

More generally, we will be denoting such operations with:

$$f(\mathbf{X}) = \begin{bmatrix} f(x_{1,1}) & f(x_{1,2}) & \cdots & f(x_{1,m}) \\ f(x_{2,1}) & f(x_{2,2}) & \cdots & f(x_{2,m}) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ f(x_{n,1}) & f(x_{n,2}) & \cdots & f(x_{n,m}) \end{bmatrix}.$$

### 8.1.2 Componentwise Aggregation

Unidimensional aggregation functions (e.g., `numpy.mean`, `numpy.quantile`) can be applied to summarise:

- all data into a single number (`axis=None`, being the default),
- data in each column (`axis=0`), as well as
- data in each row (`axis=1`).

Here are the examples corresponding to the above cases:

```
np.mean(A)
## 0.3999999999999997
np.mean(A, axis=0)
## array([0.33333333, 0.53333333, 0.33333333, 0.4           ])
np.mean(A, axis=1)
## array([0.4 , 0.325, 0.475])
```

**Important:** Let us repeat, `axis=1` does not mean that we get the column means (even though columns constitute the 2nd axis, and we count starting at 0). It denotes the axis *along* which the matrix is sliced. Sadly, even yours truly sometimes does not get it right on the first attempt.

**Exercise 8.1** Given the `nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020`<sup>1</sup> dataset, compute the mean, standard deviation, minimum, and maximum of each body measurement.

We will get back to the topic of the aggregation of multidimensional data in Section 8.4.

### 8.1.3 Arithmetic, Logical, and Comparison Operations

Recall that for vectors, binary operators such as `+`, `\*`, `==`, `<=`, and `&` as well as similar elementwise functions (e.g., `numpy.minimum`) can be applied if both inputs are of the same length, for example:

```
np.array([1, 10, 100, 1000]) * np.array([7, -6, 2, 8]) # elementwisely
## array([ 7, -60, 200, 8000])
```

Alternatively, one input can be a scalar:

```
np.array([1, 10, 100, 1000]) * -3
## array([-3, -30, -300, -3000])
```

<sup>1</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/nhances\\_adult\\_female\\_bmx\\_2020.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/nhances_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv)

More generally, a set of rules referred in the `numpy` manual to as *broadcasting*<sup>2</sup> describes how this package handles arrays of different shapes.

**Important:** Generally, for two matrices, their column/row numbers much match or be equal to 1. Also, if one operand is a 1-dimensional array, it will be promoted to a row vector.

Let us explore all the possible cases.

### Matrix vs Scalar

If one operand is a scalar, then it is going to be propagated over all matrix elements, for example:

```
(-1)*A
## array([[-0.2, -0.6, -0.4, -0.4],
##        [-0. , -0.2, -0.4, -0.7],
##        [-0.8, -0.8, -0.2, -0.1]])
```

changes the sign of every element, which is, mathematically, an instance of multiplying a matrix  $\mathbf{X}$  by a scalar  $c$

$$c\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} cx_{1,1} & cx_{1,2} & \cdots & cx_{1,m} \\ cx_{2,1} & cx_{2,2} & \cdots & cx_{2,m} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ cx_{n,1} & cx_{n,2} & \cdots & cx_{n,m} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Furthermore:

```
A**2
## array([[0.04, 0.36, 0.16, 0.16],
##        [0. , 0.04, 0.16, 0.49],
##        [0.64, 0.64, 0.04, 0.01]])
```

takes the square<sup>3</sup> of each element.

Also:

```
A >= 0.25
## array([[False, True, True, True],
##        [False, False, True, True],
##        [ True, True, False, False]])
```

compares each element to 0.25.

<sup>2</sup> <https://numpy.org/devdocs/user/basics.broadcasting.html>

<sup>3</sup> This is not the same as matrix-multiply by itself which we cover in [Section 8.3](#).

## Matrix vs Matrix

For two matrices of identical sizes, we will be acting on the *corresponding* elements:

```
B = np.tri(A.shape[0], A.shape[1]) # just an example
B # a lower triangular 0-1 matrix
## array([[1., 0., 0., 0.],
##        [1., 1., 0., 0.],
##        [1., 1., 1., 0.]])
```

And now:

```
A * B
## array([[0.2, 0. , 0. , 0. ],
##        [0. , 0.2, 0. , 0. ],
##        [0.8, 0.8, 0.2, 0. ]])
```

multiplies each  $a_{i,j}$  by the corresponding  $b_{i,j}$ .

This extends on the idea from algebra that given  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  with  $n$  rows and  $m$  columns each, the result of + (or -) would be for instance:

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1,1} + b_{1,1} & a_{1,2} + b_{1,2} & \cdots & a_{1,m} + b_{1,m} \\ a_{2,1} + b_{2,1} & a_{2,2} + b_{2,2} & \cdots & a_{2,m} + b_{2,m} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n,1} + b_{n,1} & a_{n,2} + b_{n,2} & \cdots & a_{n,m} + b_{n,m} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thanks to the matrix-matrix and matrix-scalar operations we can perform various tests on an per-element basis, e.g.,

```
(A >= 0.25) & (A <= 0.75) # logical matrix & logical matrix
## array([[False, True, True, True],
##        [False, False, True, True],
##        [False, False, False, False]])
```

**Example 8.2** (\*) *Figure 8.1* depicts a (filled) contour plot of the Himmelblau's function,  $f(x,y) = (x^2 + y - 11)^2 + (x + y^2 - 7)^2$ , for  $x \in [-5, 5]$  and  $y \in [-4, 4]$ . In order to draw it, we have probed 250 points from the two said ranges and called `numpy.meshgrid` to generate two matrices, both of shape 250 by 250, giving the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of all the points on the corresponding two-dimensional grid. Thanks to this, we were able to use vectorised mathematical operations to compute the values off thereon.

```
x = np.linspace(-5, 5, 250)
y = np.linspace(-4, 4, 250)
xg, yg = np.meshgrid(x, y)
z = (xg**2 + yg - 11)**2 + (xg + yg**2 - 7)**2
plt.contourf(x, y, z, levels=20)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
CS = plt.contour(x, y, z, levels=[1, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 150, 200, 250])
plt.clabel(CS, colors="black")
plt.show()
```

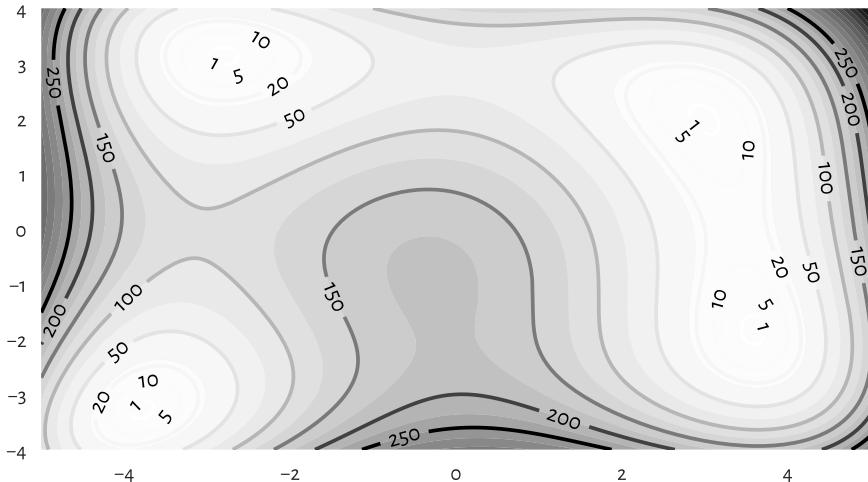


Figure 8.1: An example filled contour plot with additional labelled contour lines

In order to understand the result generated by `numpy.meshgrid`, here is its output for a smaller number of probe points:

```
x = np.linspace(-5, 5, 3)
y = np.linspace(-4, 4, 5)
xg, yg = np.meshgrid(x, y)
xg
## array([[-5.,  0.,  5.],
##        [-5.,  0.,  5.],
##        [-5.,  0.,  5.],
##        [-5.,  0.,  5.],
##        [-5.,  0.,  5.]])
```

Here, each column is the same.

```
yg
## array([[-4., -4., -4.],
##        [-2., -2., -2.],
##        [ 0.,  0.,  0.]])
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
##      [ 2.,  2.,  2.],
##      [ 4.,  4.,  4.]])
```

In this case, each row is identical. Thanks to this, calling:

```
(xg**2 + yg - 11)**2 + (xg + yg**2 - 7)**2
## array([[116., 306., 296.],
##         [208., 178., 148.],
##         [340., 170., 200.],
##         [320., 90., 260.],
##         [340., 130., 520.]])
```

gives a matrix  $Z$  such that  $z_{i,j}$  is generated by considering the  $i$ -th element in  $y$  and the  $j$ -th item in  $x$ , which is exactly what we have desired.

## Matrix vs Any Vector

An  $n \times m$  matrix can also be combined with an  $n \times 1$  column vector:

```
A * np.array([1, 10, 100]).reshape(-1, 1)
## array([[ 0.2,  0.6,  0.4],
##         [ 0. ,  2. ,  4. ,  7. ],
##         [80. , 80. , 20. , 10. ]])
```

The above propagated the column vector over all columns (left to right).

Similarly, combining with an  $1 \times m$  row vector:

```
A + np.array([1, 2, 3, 4]).reshape(1, -1)
## array([[1.2, 2.6, 3.4, 4.4],
##         [1. , 2.2, 3.4, 4.7],
##         [1.8, 2.8, 3.2, 4.1]])
```

recycles the row vector over all rows (top to bottom).

If one operand is a 1-dimensional array or a list of length  $m$ , it will be treated as a row vector. For example:

```
np.round(A - np.mean(A, axis=0), 3) # matrix - vector
## array([[-0.133,  0.067,  0.067, -0.    ],
##        [-0.333, -0.333,  0.067,  0.3   ],
##        [ 0.467,  0.267, -0.133, -0.3   ]])
```

On a side note, this is an instance of *centring* of each column. An explicit .reshape(1, -1) was not necessary.

Mathematically, although it is not necessarily a standard notation, we will allow

adding and subtracting row vectors from matrices of compatible sizes:

$$\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{t} = \mathbf{X} + [t_1 \ t_2 \ \dots \ t_m] = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1,1} + t_1 & x_{1,2} + t_2 & \dots & x_{1,m} + t_m \\ x_{2,1} + t_1 & x_{2,2} + t_2 & \dots & x_{2,m} + t_m \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_{n,1} + t_1 & x_{n,2} + t_2 & \dots & x_{n,m} + t_m \end{bmatrix}.$$

This corresponds to shifting (translating) every row in the matrix.

**Exercise 8.3** Standardise, normalise, and min-max scale every column in the `nhanes_adult_female_bmx.csv`<sup>4</sup>. In every case, a single line of code is sufficient.

### Row Vector vs Column Vector (\*)

To add to joy, let us quickly mention that a row vector combined with a column vector results in an operation's being performed on each *combination of all* pairs of elements in the two arrays (i.e., the cross-product; not just the *corresponding* pairs).

```
np.arange(1, 8).reshape(1, -1) * np.array([1, 10, 100]).reshape(-1, 1)
## array([[ 1,   2,   3,   4,   5,   6,   7],
##        [ 10,  20,  30,  40,  50,  60,  70],
##        [100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700]])
```

**Exercise 8.4** Check out that `numpy.nonzero` relies on similar shape broadcasting rules as the binary operators we have discussed here, however, not with regard to all the 3 arguments.

**Example 8.5** (\*) Himmelblau's function in Figure 8.1 is only defined by means of arithmetic operators, which all accept the kind of shape broadcasting that we discuss in this section. Therefore, calling `numpy.meshgrid` in that example in order to evaluate  $f$  on a grid of points was actually unnecessary:

```
x = np.linspace(-5, 5, 3)
y = np.linspace(-4, 4, 5)
xg = x.reshape(1, -1)
yg = y.reshape(-1, 1)
(xg**2 + yg - 11)**2 + (xg + yg**2 - 7)**2
## array([[116., 306., 296.],
##        [208., 178., 148.],
##        [340., 170., 200.],
##        [320., 90., 260.],
##        [340., 130., 520.]])
```

See also the `sparse` parameter in `numpy.meshgrid` and Figure 12.9 where this function turns out useful after all.

---

<sup>4</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/nhanes\\_adult\\_female\\_bmx\\_2020.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv)

### 8.1.4 Other Row and Column Transforms (\*)

Some functions that we have already discussed in the previous part of this course are equipped with the `axis` argument, which allows to process each row or column independently, for example:

```
np.sort(A, axis=1)
## array([[0.2, 0.4, 0.4, 0.6],
##        [0. , 0.2, 0.4, 0.7],
##        [0.1, 0.2, 0.8, 0.8]])
```

sorts every row (separately). Moreover:

```
scipy.stats.rankdata(A, axis=0)
## array([[2. , 2. , 2.5, 2. ],
##        [1. , 1. , 2.5, 3. ],
##        [3. , 3. , 1. , 1. ]])
```

computes the ranks of elements in each column.

Some functions have the default argument `axis=-1`, which means that they are applied along the last (i.e., columns in the matrix case) axis:

```
np.diff(A) # axis=1 here
## array([[ 0.4, -0.2,  0. ],
##        [ 0.2,  0.2,  0.3],
##        [ 0. , -0.6, -0.1]])
```

However, the aforementioned `numpy.mean` is amongst the many exceptions to this rule.

Compare the above with:

```
np.diff(A, axis=0)
## array([[-0.2, -0.4,  0. ,  0.3],
##        [ 0.8,  0.6, -0.2, -0.6]])
```

which gives the iterated differences for each column separately (along the rows).

If a function (built-in or custom) is not equipped with the `axis` argument and – instead – it was designed to work with individual vectors, we can propagate it over all the rows or columns by calling `numpy.apply_along_axis`.

For instance, here is another (have you solved the suggested exercise?) way to compute the column z-scores:

```
def standardise(x):
    return (x-np.mean(x))/np.std(x)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
np.round(np.apply_along_axis(standardise, 0, A), 2)
## array([[-0.39,  0.27,  0.71, -0. ],
##        [-0.98, -1.34,  0.71,  1.22],
##        [ 1.37,  1.07, -1.41, -1.22]])
```

But of course we prefer `(x - np.mean(x, axis=0))/np.std(x, axis=0)`.

**Note:** (\*) Matrices are iterable (in the sense of [Section 3.4](#)), but in an interesting way. Namely, an iterator traverses through each row in a matrix. Therefore, for example, writing:

```
r1, r2, r3 = A # A has 3 rows
```

creates three variables, each representing a separate row in `A`, second of which being:

```
r2
## array([0. , 0.2, 0.4, 0.7])
```

---



## 8.2 Indexing Matrices

Recall that for 1-dimensional arrays, we have four possible choices of indexers (i.e., where performing filtering like `x[i]`):

- scalar (extracts a single element),
- slice (selects a regular subsequence, e.g., every 2nd element or the first 6 items; returns a view on existing data – it does not make an independent copy of the subsetted elements),
- integer vector (selects elements at given indexes),
- logical vector (selects elements that correspond to `True` in the indexer).

Matrices are two-dimensional arrays, and hence subsetting thereof will require two indexes: we will thus be writing `A[i, j]` to select rows given by `i` and columns given by `j`.

Both `i` and `j` can be one of the four above types, so we at least 10 different cases to consider (skipping the symmetric ones).

**Important:** Generally:

- each scalar index reduces the dimensionality of the subsetted object by 1;
  - slice-slice and slice-scalar indexing returns a view on the existing array, so we need to be careful when modifying the resulting object;
  - usually, indexing returns a submatrix (subblock), which is a combination of elements at given rows and columns;
  - indexing with two integer or logical vectors at the same time should be avoided.
- 

Let us look at all the possible scenarios in greater detail.

### 8.2.1 Slice-Based Indexing

Our favourite example matrix again:

```
A = np.array([
    [0.2, 0.6, 0.4, 0.4],
    [0.0, 0.2, 0.4, 0.7],
    [0.8, 0.8, 0.2, 0.1]
])
```

Indexing based on two slices selects a submatrix:

```
A[::2, 3:]
## array([[0.4],
##         [0.1]])
```

gives every second row and skips the first three columns. Let us stress that the result is always a matrix.

An empty slice selects all elements on the corresponding axis, therefore:

```
A[:, ::-1] # all rows, reversed columns
## array([[0.4, 0.4, 0.6, 0.2],
##         [0.7, 0.4, 0.2, 0. ],
##         [0.1, 0.2, 0.8, 0.8]])
```

simply reverses the order of columns.

### 8.2.2 Scalar-Based Indexing

Indexing by a scalar selects a given row or column, reducing the dimensionality of the output object.

```
A[:, 3]
## array([0.4, 0.7, 0.1])
```

selects the 4th column and gives a flat vector (we can always use the **reshape** method to convert the resulting object back to a matrix).

Furthermore:

```
A[0, -1]
```

```
## 0.4
```

yields the element (scalar) in the first row and the last column.

### 8.2.3 Mixed Boolean/Integer Vector and Scalar/Slice Indexers

A logical and integer vector-like object can also be used for element selection. If the other indexer is a slice or a scalar, the result is quite predictable, for instance:

```
A[ [0, -1, 0], ::-1 ]
## array([[0.4, 0.4, 0.6, 0.2],
##        [0.1, 0.2, 0.8, 0.8],
##        [0.4, 0.4, 0.6, 0.2]])
```

selects the first, the last, and the first row again and reverses the order of columns.

```
A[ A[:, 0] > 0.1, : ]
## array([[0.2, 0.6, 0.4, 0.4],
##        [0.8, 0.8, 0.2, 0.1]])
```

selects the rows from A where the values in the first column of A are greater than 0.1.

```
A[np.mean(A, axis=1) > 0.35, :]
## array([[0.2, 0.6, 0.4, 0.4],
##        [0.8, 0.8, 0.2, 0.1]])
```

selects the rows whose mean is greater than 0.35.

```
A[np.argsort(A[:, 0]), :]
## array([[0., 0.2, 0.4, 0.7],
##        [0.2, 0.6, 0.4, 0.4],
##        [0.8, 0.8, 0.2, 0.1]])
```

orders the matrix with respect to the values in the first column (all rows permuted in the same way, together).

**Exercise 8.6** In the *nhanes\_adult\_female\_bmx\_2020*<sup>5</sup> dataset, select all the participants whose heights are within their mean  $\pm 2$  standard deviations.

---

<sup>5</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/nhanes\\_adult\\_female\\_bmx\\_2020.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv)

### 8.2.4 Two Vectors as Indexers (\*)

With two vectors (logical or integer) things are a tad more horrible, as in this case not only some form of *shape broadcasting* comes into play but also all the headache-inducing exceptions listed in the perhaps not the most clearly written [Advanced Indexing<sup>6</sup>](#) section of the **numpy** manual. Cheer up, however, things in **pandas** are much worse (see [Section 10.5](#)).

For the sake of our maintaining sanity, in practice it is best to be extra careful when using two vector indexers and stick only to the scenarios discussed below.

For two flat integer indexers, we pick elementwisely. Therefore:

```
A[ [0, -1, 0, 2, 0], [1, 2, 0, 2, 1] ]
## array([0.6, 0.2, 0.2, 0.2, 0.6])
```

yields A[0, 1], A[-1, 2], A[0, 0], A[2, 2], and A[0, 1].

In order to select a submatrix using integer indexes, it is best to make sure that the first indexer is a column vector, and the second one is a row vector (or some objects like these, e.g., compatible lists of lists).

```
A[ [[0], [-1]], [[1, 3]] ] # column vector-like list, row vector-like list
## array([[0.6, 0.4],
##         [0.8, 0.1]])
```

Further, if indexing involves logical vectors, it is best to convert them to integer ones first (e.g., by calling **numpy.flatnonzero**).

```
A[ np.flatnonzero(np.mean(A, axis=1) > 0.35).reshape(-1, 1), [[0, 2, 3, 0]] ]
## array([[0.2, 0.4, 0.4, 0.2],
##         [0.8, 0.2, 0.1, 0.8]])
```

The necessary reshaping can be done automatically with the **numpy.ix\_** function:

```
A[ np.ix_( np.mean(A, axis=1) > 0.35, [0, 2, 3, 0] ) ] # np.ix_(rows, cols)
## array([[0.2, 0.4, 0.4, 0.2],
##         [0.8, 0.2, 0.1, 0.8]])
```

Alternatively, we can always apply indexing twice instead:

```
A[np.mean(A, axis=1) > 0.45, :][:, [0, 2, 3, 0]]
## array([[0.8, 0.2, 0.1, 0.8]])
```

This is only a mild inconvenience. Moreover, we will be forced to apply such double indexing in **pandas** whenever selecting rows *by position* and columns *by name* is required; see [Section 10.5](#).

---

<sup>6</sup> <https://numpy.org/doc/stable/user/basics.indexing.html>

### 8.2.5 Views on Existing Arrays (\*)

Only the indexing involving two slices or a slice and a scalar returns a [view<sup>7</sup>](#) on an existing array.

For example:

```
B = A[:, ::2]
B
## array([[0.2, 0.4],
##         [0., 0.4],
##         [0.8, 0.2]])
```

Now `B` and `A` share memory. Therefore, by modifying `B` in-place, e.g.,

```
B *= -1
```

the changes will be visible in `A` as well:

```
A
## array([[-0.2, 0.6, -0.4, 0.4],
##        [-0., 0.2, -0.4, 0.7],
##        [-0.8, 0.8, -0.2, 0.1]])
```

This is time and memory efficient, but might lead to some unexpected results if we are being rather absent-minded. We have been warned.

### 8.2.6 Adding and Modifying Rows and Columns

With slice/scalar-based indexers, rows/columns/individual elements can be replaced by new content in a natural way:

```
A[:, 0] = A[:, 0]**2
```

With **numpy** arrays, however, brand new rows or columns cannot be added via the index operator. Instead, the whole array needs to be created from scratch using, for example, one of the functions discussed in [Section 7.1.4](#). For example:

```
A = np.column_stack((A, np.sqrt(A[:, 0])))
A
## array([[ 0.04, 0.6, -0.4, 0.4, 0.2],
##        [ 0., 0.2, -0.4, 0.7, 0. ],
##        [ 0.64, 0.8, -0.2, 0.1, 0.8]])
```

---

<sup>7</sup> <https://numpy.org/devdocs/user/basics.copies.html>

### 8.3 Matrix Multiplication, Dot Products, and the Euclidean Norm

Matrix algebra is at the core of all the methods used in data analysis with the matrix multiply being the most fundamental operation therein (e.g., [[DFO20]], [Gen17]).

Given  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$  and  $\mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{p \times m}$ , their *multiply* is a matrix  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  such that  $c_{i,j}$  is the sum of the  $i$ -th row in  $\mathbf{A}$  and the  $j$ -th column in  $\mathbf{B}$  multiplied elementwisely:

$$c_{i,j} = a_{i,1}b_{1,j} + a_{i,2}b_{2,j} + \cdots + a_{i,p}b_{p,j} = \sum_{k=1}^p a_{i,k}b_{k,j}$$

for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  and  $j = 1, \dots, m$ .

For example:

```
A = np.array([
    [1, 0, 1],
    [2, 2, 1],
    [3, 2, 0],
    [1, 2, 3],
    [0, 0, 1],
])
B = np.array([
    [1, 0, 0, 0],
    [0, 4, 1, 3],
    [2, 0, 3, 1],
])
```

And now:

```
C = A @ B # or: A.dot(B)
C
## array([[ 3,  0,  3,  1],
##        [ 4,  8,  5,  7],
##        [ 3,  8,  2,  6],
##        [ 7,  8, 11,  9],
##        [ 2,  0,  3,  1]])
```

Mathematically, we can write the above as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 0 \\ \mathbf{1} & \mathbf{2} & \mathbf{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \mathbf{0} & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & \mathbf{1} & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & \mathbf{3} & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 8 & 5 & 7 \\ 3 & 8 & 2 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & \mathbf{11} & 9 \\ 2 & 0 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For example, the element in the 4th row and 3rd column,  $c_{4,3}$  takes the 4th row in the left matrix  $\mathbf{a}_{4,\cdot} = [1 \ 2 \ 3]$  and the 3rd column in the right matrix  $\mathbf{b}_{\cdot,3} = [0 \ 1 \ 3]^T$  (they are marked in bold), multiplies the corresponding elements and computes their sum, i.e.,  $c_{4,3} = 1 \cdot 0 + 2 \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot 3 = 11$ .

**Important:** Matrix multiplication can only be performed on two matrices of *compatible sizes* – the number of columns in the left matrix must match the number of rows in the right operand.

Another example:

```
A = np.array([
    [1, 2],
    [3, 4]
])
I = np.array([
    # np.eye(2)
    [1, 0],
    [0, 1]
])
A @ I # or A.dot(I)
## array([[1, 2],
##         [3, 4]])
```

We matrix-multiplied **A** by the identity matrix **I**, which is a neutral element of the said operation, and hence the result is identical to **A**.

**Important:** In most textbooks, just like in this one, **AB** always denotes the matrix multiplication which is a very different operation to the elementwise multiplication.

Compare the above to:

```
A * I # elementwise multiplication
## array([[1, 0],
##         [0, 4]])
```

**Exercise 8.7** (\*) Show that  $(\mathbf{AB})^T = \mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{A}^T$ . Also notice that, typically, matrix multiplication is not commutative.

**Note:** By definition, matrix multiplication gives a convenient means for denoting sums of products of corresponding elements in many pairs of vectors, which we refer to as dot products.

Given two vectors  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^p$ , their *dot (or scalar) product* is given by

$$\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^p x_i y_i.$$

Thus, in matrix multiplication terms, if  $\mathbf{x}$  is a row vector and  $\mathbf{y}^T$  is a column vector, then the above can be written as  $\mathbf{x}\mathbf{y}^T$ . The result is a single number.

---

In particular, a dot product of a vector and itself,

$$\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^p x_i^2,$$

is the square of the Euclidean norm of  $\mathbf{x}$ , which – as we said in [Section 5.3.2](#) – is used to measure the *magnitude* of a vector,

$$\|\mathbf{x}\| = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^p x_i^2} = \sqrt{\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}} = \sqrt{\mathbf{x}\mathbf{x}^T}.$$

It is worth pointing out that the Euclidean norm fulfils (amongst others) the condition that  $\|\mathbf{x}\| = 0$  if and only if  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0} = (0, 0, \dots, 0)$ . The same of course holds for its square.

**Exercise 8.8** Show that  $\mathbf{A}^T \mathbf{A}$  gives the matrix that consists of the dot products of all the pairs of columns in  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^T$  stores the dot products of all the pairs of rows.

In [Section 9.3.2](#) we will see that matrix multiplication can be used as a way to express certain geometrical transformations of points in a dataset, e.g., scaling and rotating.

Also, in [Section 9.3.3](#) we briefly discuss the concept of the inverse of a matrix and in [Section 9.3.4](#) its singular value decomposition.

---

## 8.4 Pairwise Distances and Related Methods

Many data analysis methods rely on the notion of *distances* between points, which quantify the extent to which two points (e.g., two rows in a matrix) are different from each other. Here we will be dealing with the most natural<sup>8</sup> distance called the Euclidean metric. We know it from school, where we measured how two points are far away from each other using a ruler.

---

<sup>8</sup> There are many possible distances, allowing to measure the similarity of points not only in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ , but also character strings (e.g., the Levenshtein metric), ratings (e.g., cosine dissimilarity), etc.; there is even an encyclopedia of distances [[DD14]].

### 8.4.1 The Euclidean Metric

Given two points in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, \dots, u_m)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, \dots, v_m)$ , the *Euclidean metric* is defined in terms of the corresponding Euclidean norm

$$\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{(u_1 - v_1)^2 + (u_2 - v_2)^2 + \cdots + (u_m - v_m)^2} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m (u_i - v_i)^2},$$

that is, it is the square root of the sum of squared differences between the corresponding coordinates.

**Important:** Given two vectors of equal lengths  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , the dot product of their difference,

$$(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y})(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y})^T = \sum_{i=1}^m (x_i - y_i)^2$$

is nothing else than the square of the Euclidean distance between them.

In particular, for unidimensional data ( $m = 1$ ), we have  $\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| = |u_1 - v_1|$  (absolute value of the difference).

**Exercise 8.9** Consider the following matrix  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{4 \times 2}$ :

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ -\frac{3}{2} & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Calculate (by hand)  $\|\mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{2,\cdot}\|$ ,  $\|\mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{3,\cdot}\|$ ,  $\|\mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{4,\cdot}\|$ ,  $\|\mathbf{x}_{2,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{4,\cdot}\|$ ,  $\|\mathbf{x}_{2,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{3,\cdot}\|$ ,  $\|\mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot}\|$ , and  $\|\mathbf{x}_{2,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot}\|$ .

The distances between all the possible pairs of rows in two matrices  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  and  $\mathbf{Y} \in \mathbb{R}^{k \times m}$  can be computed by calling `scipy.spatial.distance.cdist`. We need to be careful, though, because they result in a distance matrix of size  $n \times k$ , which can become quite large (e.g., for  $n = k = 100,000$  we would need ca. 80 GB of RAM to store it).

Here are the distances between all the pairs of points in the same dataset.

```
X = np.array([
    [0, 0],
    [1, 0],
    [-1.5, 1],
    [1, 1]
])
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
import scipy.spatial.distance
D = scipy.spatial.distance.cdist(X, X)
D
## array([[0.          , 1.          , 1.80277564, 1.41421356],
##        [1.          , 0.          , 2.6925824 , 1.          ],
##        [1.80277564, 2.6925824 , 0.          , 2.5         ],
##        [1.41421356, 1.          , 2.5         , 0.          ]])
```

Hence,  $d_{i,j} = \|\mathbf{x}_{i,.} - \mathbf{x}_{j,.}\|$ . That we have zeros on the diagonal is due to the fact that  $\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| = 0$  if and only if  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$ . Furthermore,  $\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| = \|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{u}\|$ , which implies the symmetry of  $\mathbf{D}$ , i.e., it holds  $\mathbf{D}^T = \mathbf{D}$ .

Figure 8.2 illustrates all of the 6 non-trivial pairwise distances. Let us emphasise that our perception of distance is disturbed because of the aspect ratio (the ratio between the range of the x-axis to the range of the y-axis) is not 1:1. This is why it is very important, when judging spatial relationships between the points, to call `matplotlib.pyplot.axis("equal")` or set the axis limits manually (which is left as an exercise).

```
plt.plot(X[:, 0], X[:, 1], "ko")
for i in range(X.shape[0]-1):
    for j in range(i+1, X.shape[0]):
        plt.plot(X[[i,j], 0], X[[i,j], 1], "k-", alpha=0.2)
        plt.text(
            np.mean(X[[i,j], 0]),
            np.mean(X[[i,j], 1]),
            np.round(D[i, j], 2)
        )
plt.show()
```

**Important:** Some popular techniques in data science rely on computing pairwise distances, including:

- multidimensional data aggregation (see below),
- $k$ -means clustering (Section 12.4),
- $k$ -nearest neighbour regression (Section 9.2.1) and classification (Section 12.3.1),
- missing value imputation (Section 15.1),
- density estimation (which we can use outlier detection, see Section 15.4).

In the sequel, whenever we apply them, we will be assuming that data have been appropriately preprocessed, in particular that columns are on the same scale (e.g., are standardised). Otherwise, computing sums of their squared differences might not make sense at all.

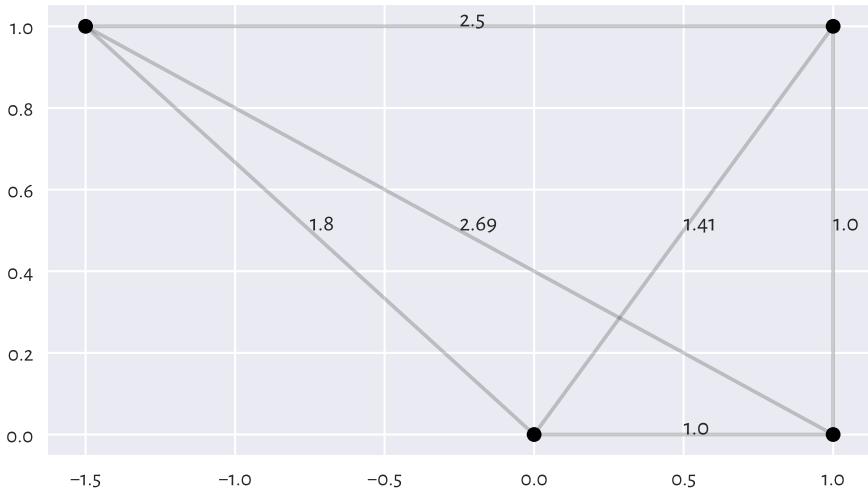


Figure 8.2: Distances between four example points; their perception is disturbed because the aspect ratio is not 1:1

### 8.4.2 Centroids

So far we have only been discussing ways to aggregate unidimensional data (for instance, each matrix column separately). It turns out that some summaries can be generalised to the multidimensional case.

For instance, it can be shown that the arithmetic mean of a vector  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is a point  $c$  that minimises the sum of the *squared* 1-dimensional distances between itself and all the  $x_i$ s, i.e.,  $\sum_{i=1}^n \|x_i - c\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - c)^2$ .

Thus, we can define the *centroid* of a dataset  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  as the point  $c \in \mathbb{R}^m$  to which the overall *squared* distance is the smallest

$$\text{minimise } \sum_{i=1}^n \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}\|^2 \quad \text{w.r.t. } \mathbf{c}.$$

It can be shown that the solution to the above is

$$\mathbf{c} = \frac{1}{n} (\mathbf{x}_{1,\cdot} + \mathbf{x}_{2,\cdot} + \dots + \mathbf{x}_{n,\cdot}) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot}$$

which is the componentwise arithmetic mean, i.e., its  $j$ -th component is

$$c_j = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_{i,j}.$$

For instance, the centroid of the dataset depicted in Figure 8.2 is:

```
c = np.mean(X, axis=0)
c
## array([0.125, 0.5 ])
```

Centroids are, amongst others, a basis for the  $k$ -means clustering method that we discuss in Section 12.4.

### 8.4.3 Multidimensional Dispersion and Other Aggregates

Furthermore, as a measure of multidimensional dispersion, we can consider the natural generalisation of the standard deviation,

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}\|^2},$$

being the square root of the average squared distance to the centroid. Notice that  $s$  is a single number.

```
np.sqrt(np.mean(scipy.spatial.distance.cdist(X, c.reshape(1, -1))**2))
## 1.1388041973930374
```

**Note:** (\*\*\*) Generalising other aggregation functions is not a trivial task, because, amongst others, there is no natural linear ordering relation in the multidimensional space (see, e.g., [[PFBG19]]). For instance, any point on the convex hull of a dataset could serve as an analogue of the minimal and maximal observation.

Furthermore, the componentwise median does not behave nicely (it may, for example, fall outside the convex hull). Thus, instead, we usually consider a different generalisation of the median being the point  $\mathbf{m}$  that minimises the sum of distances (not squared),  $\sum_{i=1}^n \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{m}\|$ ; sadly, it does not have an analytic solution; it be determined algorithmically.

**Note:** (\*\*\*) A bag plot [[RRT99]] is one of the possible multidimensional generalisations of the box-and-whisker plot. Unfortunately, its use is quite limited due to its low popularity amongst practitioners.

### 8.4.4 Fixed-Radius and K-Nearest Neighbour Search

A number of data analysis techniques relies upon aggregating information about what is happening in the *local neighbourhoods* of the points. Let  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  be a dataset and  $\mathbf{x}' \in \mathbb{R}^m$  be some point, not necessarily from  $\mathbf{X}$ . We basically have two options:

- *fixed-radius search*: for some radius  $r > 0$ , we seek the indexes of all the points in  $\mathbf{X}$  whose distance to  $\mathbf{x}'$  is not greater than  $r$

$$B_r(\mathbf{x}') = \{i : \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq r\};$$

- *few nearest neighbour search*: for some (usually small) integer  $k \geq 1$ , we seek the indexes of the  $k$  points in  $\mathbf{X}$  which are the closest to  $\mathbf{x}'$

$$N_k(\mathbf{x}') = \{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k\}$$

such that for all  $j \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$

$$\|\mathbf{x}_{i_1,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{i_2,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \dots \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{i_k,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{j,\cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\|.$$

**Important:** In  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $B_r(\mathbf{x}')$  is an interval of length  $2r$  centred at  $\mathbf{x}'$ , i.e.,  $[x'_1 - r, x'_1 + r]$ . In  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $B_r(\mathbf{x}')$  is a circle of radius  $r$  centred at  $(x'_1, x'_2)$ . More generally, we call  $B_r(\mathbf{x})$  an  $m$ -dimensional (Euclidean) ball or a solid hypersphere.

Here is an example dataset, consisting of some randomly generated points (see Figure 8.3).

```
np.random.seed(777)
X = np.random.randn(25, 2)
x_test = np.array([0, 0])
```

Local neighbourhoods can of course be determined by computing the distances between each point in  $\mathbf{X}$  and  $\mathbf{x}'$ .

```
import scipy.spatial.distance
D = scipy.spatial.distance.cdist(X, x_test.reshape(1, -1))
```

For instance, here are the indexes of the points in  $B_{0.75}(\mathbf{x}')$ :

```
r = 0.75
B = np.flatnonzero(D <= r)
B
## array([ 1, 11, 14, 16, 24])
```

And here are the 11 nearest neighbours,  $N_{11}(\mathbf{x}')$ :

```
k = 11
N = np.argsort(D.reshape(-1))[:k]
N
## array([14, 24, 16, 11, 1, 22, 7, 19, 0, 9, 15])
```

See [Figure 8.3](#) for an illustration (observe that the aspect ratio is set to 1:1 as otherwise the circle would look like an ellipse).

```
fig, ax = plt.subplots()
ax.add_patch(plt.Circle(x_test, r, color="red", alpha=0.1))
for i in range(k):
    plt.plot(
        [x_test[0], X[N[i], 0]],
        [x_test[1], X[N[i], 1]],
        "r:", alpha=0.4
    )
plt.plot(X[:, 0], X[:, 1], "bo", alpha=0.1)
for i in range(X.shape[0]):
    plt.text(X[i, 0], X[i, 1], str(i), va="center", ha="center")
plt.plot(y[0], x_test[1], "rX")
plt.text(y[0], x_test[1], "$\\mathbf{x}'$",
         va="center", ha="center")
plt.axis("equal")
plt.show()
```

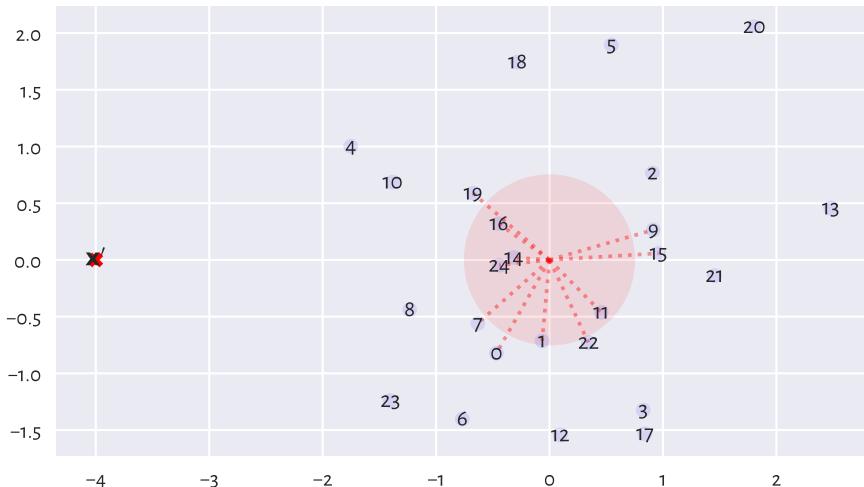


Figure 8.3: Fixed-radius vs few nearest neighbour search

#### 8.4.5 Spatial Search with K-d Trees

For efficiency reasons, it is better to rely on dedicated spatial search data structures, especially if we have a large number of neighbourhood-related queries. **scipy** im-

plements such a search algorithm based on the so-called  $K$ -dimensional trees ( $K$ -d trees<sup>9</sup>).

---

**Note:** (\*) In  $K$ -d trees, the data space is partitioned into hyperrectangles along the axes of the Cartesian coordinate system (standard basis). Thanks to such a representation, all subareas which are too far from the point of interest can be pruned to speed up the search.

---

Let us create the data structure for searching within the above  $\mathbf{X}$  matrix.

```
import scipy.spatial
T = scipy.spatial.KDTree(X)
```

Assume we would like to make queries with regard to the 3 following pivot points.

```
X_test = np.array([
    [0, 0],
    [2, 2],
    [2, -2]
])
```

Here are the results for the fixed radius searches ( $r = 0.75$ ):

```
T.query_ball_point(X_test, 0.75)
## array([list([1, 11, 14, 16, 24]), list([20]), list([])], dtype=object)
```

We see that the search was nicely vectorised; we have made a query about many points all at the same time. In result, we received a list-like object storing three lists representing the resulting indexes, each for a different input point. Note that in the case of the 3rd point, there are no elements in  $\mathbf{X}$  within the range (ball) of interest, hence the empty index list.

And here are the 5 nearest neighbours:

```
distances, indexes = T.query(X_test, 5) # returns a tuple of length 2
```

We obtained both the distances to the nearest neighbours:

```
distances
## array([[0.31457701, 0.44600012, 0.54848109, 0.64875661, 0.71635172],
##        [0.20356263, 1.45896222, 1.61587605, 1.64870864, 2.04640408],
##        [1.2494805 , 1.35482619, 1.93984334, 1.95938464, 2.08926502]])
```

---

<sup>9</sup> In our context, we should prefer referring to them as  $m$ -d trees, but let us stick with the traditional name.

as well as the indexes:

```
indexes
## array([[14, 24, 16, 11, 1],
##        [20, 5, 13, 2, 9],
##        [17, 3, 21, 12, 22]])
```

Each of them is a matrix with 3 rows (corresponding to the number of pivot points) and 5 columns (the number of neighbours sought).

---

**Note:** (\*) We expect the K-d trees to be much faster than the brute-force approach (where we compute all pairwise distances) in low-dimensional spaces. However, due to the phenomenon called the *curse of dimensionality*, sometimes already for  $m \geq 5$  the speed gains might be very small; see, e.g., [[BHK20]].

---

## 8.5 Exercises

**Exercise 8.10** Does `numpy.mean(A, axis=0)` compute rowwise or columnwise means?

**Exercise 8.11** How does shape broadcasting work? List the most common pairs of shape cases when performing arithmetic operations like addition or multiplication.

**Exercise 8.12** What are the possible matrix indexing schemes and how do they behave?

**Exercise 8.13** Which kinds of matrix indexers return a view on an existing array?

**Exercise 8.14** (\*) How to select a submatrix comprised of the first and the last row and the first and the last column?

**Exercise 8.15** Why appropriate data preprocessing is required when computing the Euclidean distance between points?

**Exercise 8.16** What is the relationship between the dot product, the Euclidean norm, and the Euclidean distance?

**Exercise 8.17** What is a centroid? How is it defined by means of the Euclidean distance between the points in a dataset?

**Exercise 8.18** (\*) When K-d trees or other spatial search data structures might be better than a brute-force search with `scipy.spatial.distance.cdist`?

---

# 9

---

## *Exploring Relationships Between Variables*

---

Let us consider the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES study) excerpt once again:

```
body = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
body = body.to_numpy() # data frames will be covered later
body.shape
## (4221, 7)
body[:6, :] # 6 first rows, all columns
## array([[ 97.1, 160.2, 34.7, 40.8, 35.8, 126.1, 117.9],
##        [ 91.1, 152.7, 33.5, 33. , 38.5, 125.5, 103.1],
##        [ 73. , 161.2, 37.4, 38. , 31.8, 106.2, 92. ],
##        [ 61.7, 157.4, 38. , 34.7, 29. , 101. , 90.5],
##        [ 55.4, 154.6, 34.6, 34. , 28.3, 92.5, 73.2],
##        [ 62. , 144.7, 32.5, 34.2, 29.8, 106.7, 84.8]])
```

We thus have  $n=4221$  participants and 7 different features describing them, in this order:

1. weight (kg),
2. standing height (cm),
3. upper arm length (cm),
4. upper leg length (cm),
5. arm circumference (cm),
6. hip circumference (cm),
7. waist circumference (cm).

We expect the data in columns to be *related* to each other (e.g., a taller person *usually tends to* weight more). This is why in this chapter we are interested in quantifying the degree of association and modelling functional relationships between the variables as well as finding new interesting combinations thereof.

## 9.1 Measuring Correlation

Scatterplots let us identify some simple patterns or structure in data. Figure 7.4 indicates that higher hip circumferences *tend* to occur more often together with higher arm circumferences and that the latter does not really tell us anything about height.

Let us explore some basic means for measuring (expressing as a single number) the degree of association between a set of pairs of points.

### 9.1.1 Pearson's Linear Correlation Coefficient

First, the Pearson's *linear correlation coefficient*:

$$r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i - \bar{x}}{s_x} \frac{y_i - \bar{y}}{s_y},$$

with  $s_x, s_y$  denoting the standard deviations and  $\bar{x}, \bar{y}$  being the means of  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ , respectively.

**Note:** Look carefully: we are computing pairwise products of standardised versions of the two vectors. It is a normalised measure of how they *vary* together (co-variance).

(\*) Furthermore, in Section 9.3.1 we mention that  $r$  is the cosine of the angle between centred and normalised versions of the vectors.

Here is how we can compute it manually:

```
x = body[:, 4] # arm circumference
y = body[:, 5] # hip circumference
x_std = (x-np.mean(x))/np.std(x)
y_std = (y-np.mean(y))/np.std(y)
np.sum(x_std*y_std)/len(x)
## 0.8680627457873239
```

And here is a built-in function that implements the same formula:

```
scipy.stats.pearsonr(x, y)[0]
## 0.8680627457873241
```

**Important:** Basic properties of Pearson's  $r$  include:

1.  $r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = r(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x})$  (symmetric);
2.  $|r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})| \leq 1$  (bounded from below by -1 and from above by 1);

3.  $r(x,y) = 1$  if and only if  $y = ax + b$  for some  $a > 0$  and  $b$ , (reaches the maximum when one variable is an increasing linear function of the other one);
  4.  $r(x, -y) = -r(x, y)$  (negative scaling (reflection) of one variable changes the sign of the coefficient);
  5.  $r(x, ay + b) = r(x, y)$  for any  $a > 0$  and  $b$  (invariant to translation and scaling of inputs that does not change the sign of elements).
- 

To get more insight, below we shall illustrate some interesting *correlations* using the following function that draws a scatter plot and prints out Pearson's  $r$  (and Spearman's  $\rho$  which we discuss in [Section 9.1.4](#) – let us ignore it by then):

```
def plot_corr(x, y):
    r = scipy.stats.pearsonr(x, y)[0]
    p = scipy.stats.spearmanr(x, y)[0]
    plt.plot(x, y, "o", label=r = {r:.3}\np = {p:.3})
    plt.legend()
    pass
```

### Perfect Linear Correlation

The aforementioned properties imply that  $r(x,y) = -1$  if and only if  $y = ax + b$  for some  $a < 0$  and  $b$  (reaches the minimum when one variable is a decreasing linear function of the other one) Furthermore, a variable is trivially perfectly correlated with itself  $r(x,x) = 1$ .

Hence, we get perfect *linear correlation* (-1 or 1) when one variable is a scaled and shifted version (linear function) of the other variable, see Figure 9.1.

```
np.random.seed(123)
x = np.random.rand(100)
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
plot_corr(x, -0.5*x+3) # negative slope
plt.axis("equal")
plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
plot_corr(x, 3*x+10) # positive slope
plt.axis("equal")
plt.show()
```

A negative correlation means that when one variable increases, the other one decreases (like: a car's braking distance vs velocity).

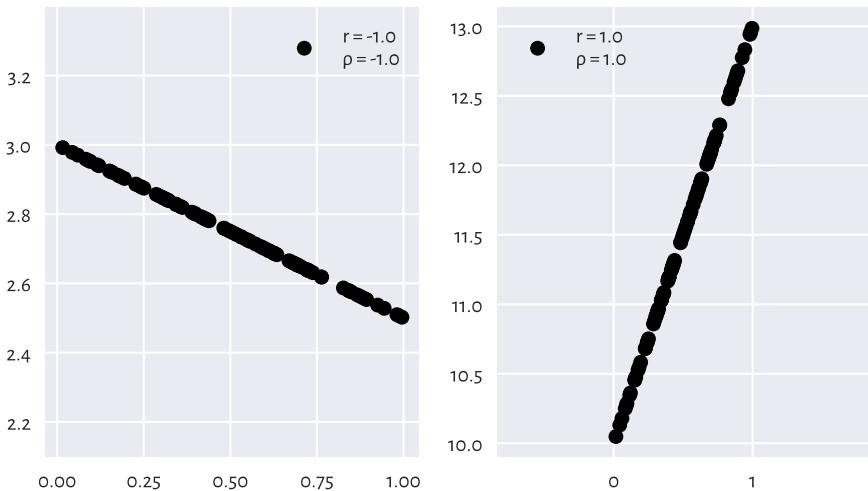


Figure 9.1: Perfect linear correlation (negative and positive)

### Strong Linear Correlation

Next, if two variables are *more or less* linear functions of themselves, the correlations will be close to -1 or 1, with the degree of association diminishing as the linear relationship becomes less and less present, see Figure 9.2.

```
np.random.seed(123)
x = np.random.rand(100)
y = 0.5*x
e = np.random.randn(len(x)) # random white noise (of mean 0)
plt.figure(figsize=(plt.rcParams["figure.figsize"][0],)*2) # width=height
plt.subplot(2, 2, 1)
plot_corr(x, y)
plt.subplot(2, 2, 2)
plot_corr(x, y+0.05*e) # add some noise
plt.subplot(2, 2, 3)
plot_corr(x, y+0.1*e) # more noise
plt.subplot(2, 2, 4)
plot_corr(x, y+0.25*e) # even more noise
plt.show()
```

Notice again that the arm and hip circumferences enjoy quite high positive degree of linear correlation.

**Exercise 9.1** Draw a series of similar plots but for the case of negatively correlated point pairs.

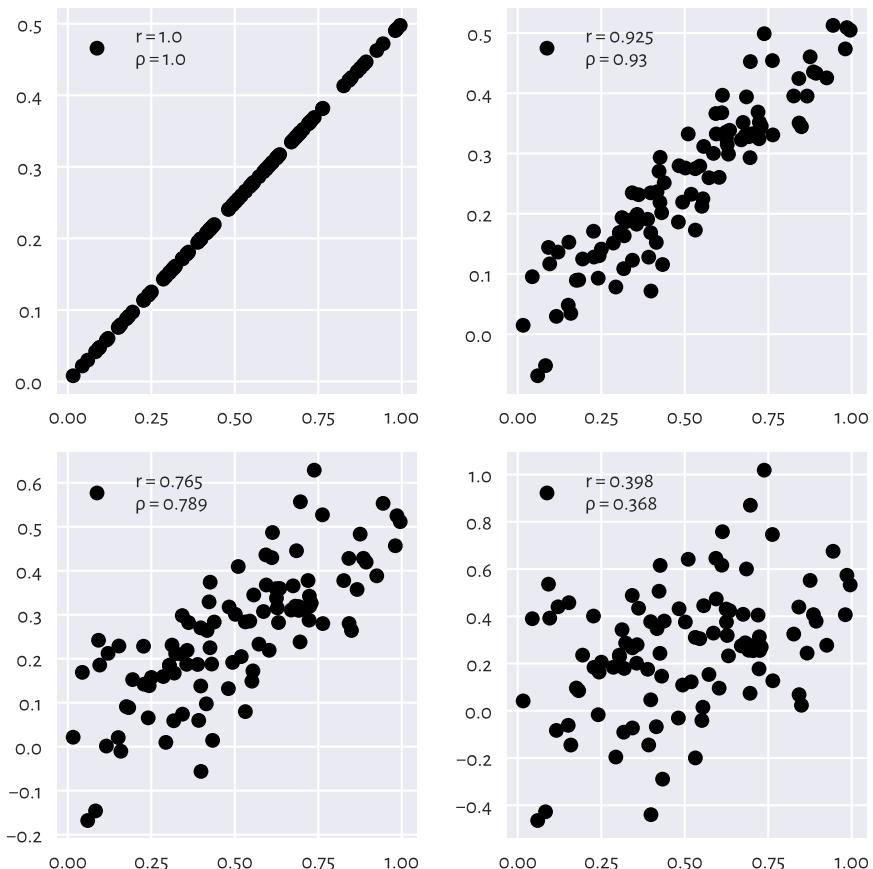


Figure 9.2: Linear correlation coefficients for data with different amounts of noise

---

**Important:** As a rule of thumb, linear correlation degree of 0.9 or greater (or -0.9 or smaller) is quite decent. Between -0.8 and 0.8 we probably should not be talking about two variables being linearly correlated at all. Some textbooks are more lenient, but we have higher standards. In particular, it is not uncommon in social sciences to consider 0.6 a decent degree of correlation, but this is like building on sand. If a dataset at hand does not provide us with strong evidence, it is our ethical duty to refrain ourselves from publishing unjustified statements.

---

## No Linear Correlation Does Not Imply Independence

We should stress that correlation close to 0 does not necessarily mean that two variables are not related to each other, although for two independent variables we definitely expect the correlation coefficient be approximately equal to 0. Pearson's  $r$  is a *linear* correlation coefficient, so we are only quantifying these types of relationships. See [Figure 9.3](#) for an illustration of this fact.

```
np.random.seed(123)
plt.figure(figsize=(plt.rcParams["figure.figsize"])[0], )*2) # width=height
plt.subplot(2, 2, 1)
plot_corr(x, np.random.rand(100)) # independent (not correlated)
plt.subplot(2, 2, 2)
plot_corr(x, (2*x+1)**2-1) # quadratic dependence
plt.subplot(2, 2, 3)
plot_corr(x, np.abs(2*x-1)) # another form of dependence
plt.subplot(2, 2, 4)
plot_corr(x, np.sin(10*np.pi*x)) # another
plt.show()
```

## False Linear Correlations

What is more, sometimes we can detect *false* correlations – when data are functionally dependent, the relationship is not linear, but it kind of looks like linear. Refer to [Figure 9.4](#) for some examples.

```
np.random.seed(123)
plt.figure(figsize=(plt.rcParams["figure.figsize"])[0], )*2) # width=height
plt.subplot(2, 2, 1)
plot_corr(x, np.sin(0.6*np.pi*x))
plt.subplot(2, 2, 2)
plot_corr(x, np.log(x+1))
plt.subplot(2, 2, 3)
plot_corr(x, np.exp(x**2))
plt.subplot(2, 2, 4)
plot_corr(x, 1/(x/2+0.2))
plt.show()
```

No single measure is perfect – we are trying to compress  $2n$  data points into a single number — it is obvious that there will be many different datasets, sometimes very diverse, that will yield the same correlation value.

## Correlation Is Not Causation

A high correlation degree (either positive or negative) does not mean that there is any *causal* relationship between the two variables. We cannot say that having large arm

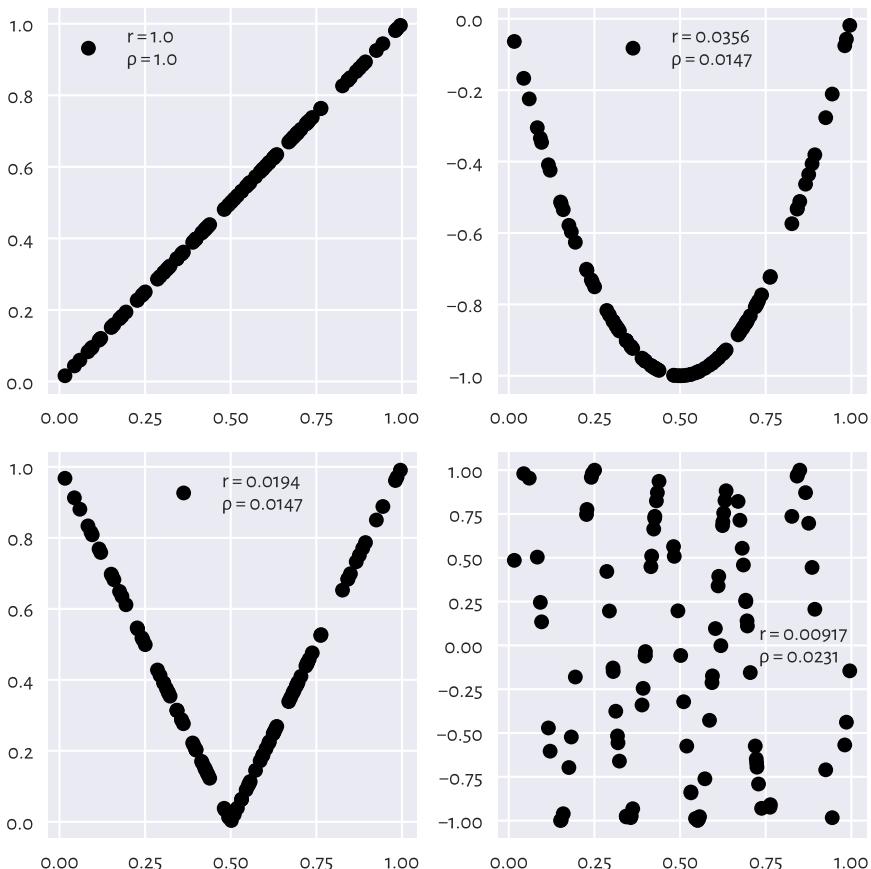


Figure 9.3: Are all of these really uncorrelated?

circumference affects hip size or the other way around. There might be some *latent variable* that influences these two (e.g., maybe also related to weight?).

**Exercise 9.2** Quite often, medical advice is formulated based on correlations and similar association-measuring tools. We should know how to interpret them, as it is never a true cause-effect relationship; rather, it is all about detecting common patterns in larger populations. For instance, in “obesity increases the likelihood of lower back pain and diabetes” we does not say that one necessarily implies another or that if you are not overweight, there is no risk of getting the two said conditions. It might also work the other way around, as lower back pain may lead to less exercise and then weight gain. Reality is complex. Find similar patterns related to other sets of conditions. Which are stronger than others?

---

**Note:** Measuring correlations can aid in constructing regression models, where we

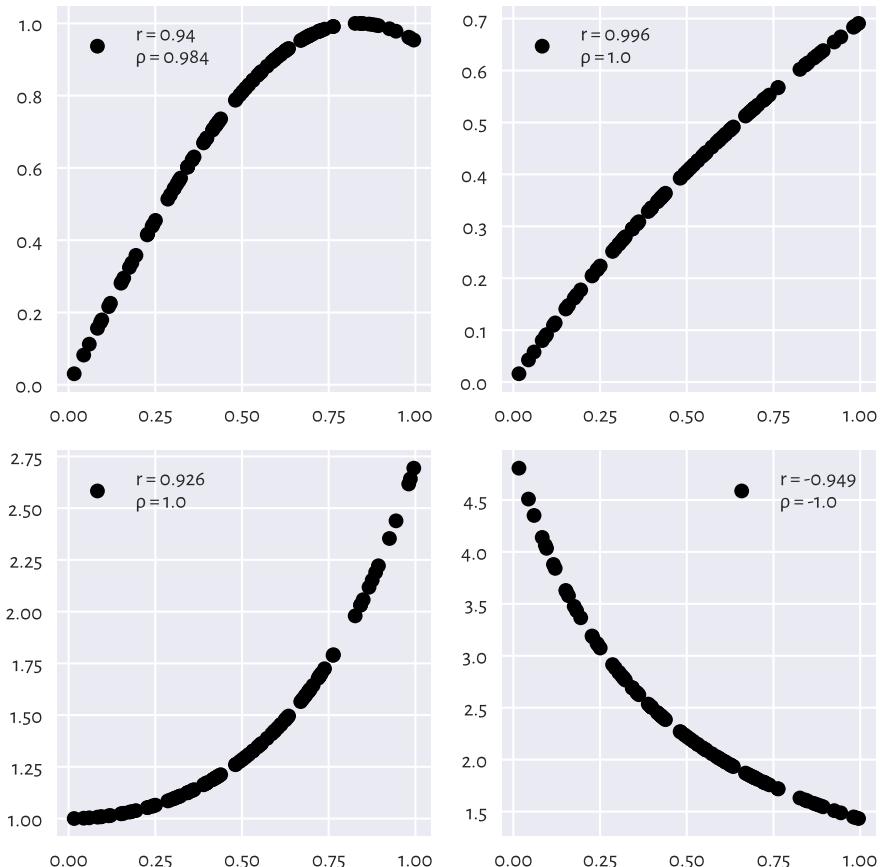


Figure 9.4: Example non-linear relationships look like linear to Pearson's  $r$

would like to identify the transformation that expresses one variable as a function of one or more other ones. When we say that  $y$  can be modelled by  $ax + b$ , regression analysis will identify some concrete  $a$  and  $b$  coefficients – see Section 9.2.3 for more details.

In particular, we would like to include some variables that are correlated with the modelled variable but avoid modelling with the features that are highly correlated with each other, because they do not bring anything interesting to the table and can cause the solution to be numerically unstable.

### 9.1.2 Correlation Heatmap

Calling `numpy.corrcoef(body.T)` (note the matrix transpose) allows for determining the linear correlation coefficients between all pairs of variables.

We can nicely depict them on a heatmap, see Figure 9.5.

```
from matplotlib import cm
order = [4, 5, 6, 0, 2, 1, 3]
cols = np.array(["weight", "height", "arm len",
                 "leg len", "arm circ", "hip circ", "waist circ"])
C = np.corrcoef(body.T)
sns.heatmap(
    C[np.ix_(order, order)],
    xticklabels=cols[order],
    yticklabels=cols[order],
    annot=True, fmt=".2f", cmap=cm.get_cmap("copper"))
)
plt.show()
```

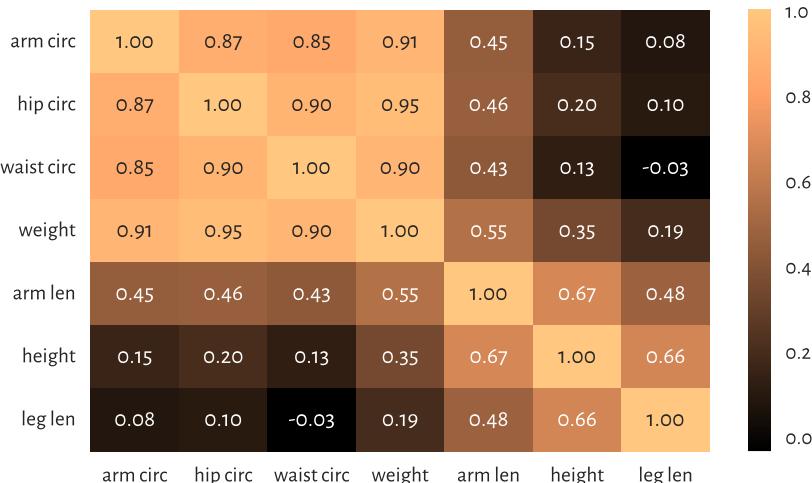


Figure 9.5: A correlation heatmap

Notice that we have ordered the columns to reveal some naturally occurring variable clusters: for instance, arm, hip, waist circumference and weight are all quite strongly correlated.

Of course, we have 1.0s on the main diagonal because a variable is trivially correlated with itself. Interestingly, this heatmap is symmetric which is due to the property  $r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = r(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x})$ .

**Example 9.3** (\*) To fetch the row and column index of the most correlated pair of variables (either positively or negatively), we should first take the upper (or lower) triangle of the correlation matrix (see `numpy.triu` or `numpy.tril`) to ignore the irrelevant and repeating items:

```
Cu = np.triu(np.abs(C), 1)
np.round(Cu, 2)
## array([[0. , 0.35, 0.55, 0.19, 0.91, 0.95, 0.9 ],
##        [0. , 0. , 0.67, 0.66, 0.15, 0.2 , 0.13],
##        [0. , 0. , 0. , 0.48, 0.45, 0.46, 0.43],
##        [0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0.08, 0.1 , 0.03],
##        [0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0.87, 0.85],
##        [0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0.9 ],
##        [0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0. , 0. ]])
```

and then find the location of the maximum:

```
np.unravel_index(np.argmax(Cu), Cu.shape)
## (0, 5)
```

Thus, weight and hip circumference is the most strongly correlated.

Note that `numpy.argmax` returns an index in the flattened (unidimensional) array, therefore we had to use `numpy.unravel_index` to convert it to a two-dimensional one.

### 9.1.3 Linear Correlation Coefficients on Transformed Data

Pearson's coefficient can of course also be applied on nonlinearly transformed versions of variables, e.g., logarithms (remember incomes?), squares, square roots, etc.

Let us consider an excerpt from the 2020 CIA [World Factbook](#)<sup>1</sup>, where we have data on gross domestic product per capita (based on purchasing power parity) and life expectancy at birth in many countries.

```
world = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
                     "teaching_data/master/marek/world_factbook_2020_subset1.csv",
                     comment="#")
world = world.to_numpy()
world[:6, :] # preview
## array([[ 2000. ,      52.8],
##        [12500. ,      79. ],
##        [15200. ,      77.5],
##        [11200. ,      74.8],
##        [49900. ,      83. ],
##        [ 6800. ,      61.3]])
```

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/docs/rankorderguide.html>

Figure 9.6 depicts these data on a scatterplot.

```
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
plot_corr(world[:, 0], world[:, 1])
plt.xlabel("per capita GDP PPP")
plt.ylabel("life expectancy (years)")
plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
plot_corr(np.log(world[:, 0]), world[:, 1])
plt.xlabel("log(per capita GDP PPP)")
plt.yticks()
plt.show()
```

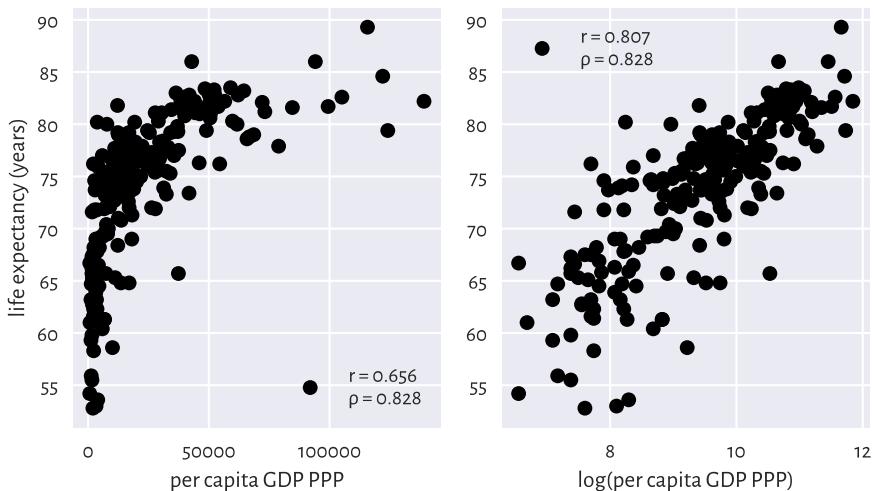


Figure 9.6: Scatterplots for life expectancy vs gross domestic product (purchasing power parity) on linear (lefthand) and log-scale (righthand side)

Computing Pearson's  $r$  between these two indicates a quite weak linear correlation:

```
scipy.stats.pearsonr(world[:, 0], world[:, 1])[0]
## 0.656471945486374
```

However, already the logarithm of GDP is slightly more strongly linearly correlated with life expectancy:

```
scipy.stats.pearsonr(np.log(world[:, 0]), world[:, 1])[0]
## 0.8066505089380016
```

which means that modelling our data via  $y = a \log x + b$  can be an idea worth considering.

### 9.1.4 Spearman's Rank Correlation Coefficient

Sometimes we might be interested in measuring the degree of any kind of *monotonic* correlation – to what extent one variable is an increasing or decreasing function of another one (linear, logarithmic, quadratic over the positive domain, etc.).

Spearman's rank correlation coefficient is frequently used in such a scenario:

$$\rho(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = r(R(\mathbf{x}), R(\mathbf{y}))$$

which is<sup>2</sup> the Pearson coefficient computed over vectors of the corresponding ranks of all the elements in  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  (denoted with  $R(\mathbf{x})$  and  $R(\mathbf{y})$ ).

Hence, the two following calls are equivalent:

```
scipy.stats.spearmanr(world[:, 0], world[:, 1])[0]
## 0.8275220380818622
scipy.stats.pearsonr(
    scipy.stats.rankdata(world[:, 0]),
    scipy.stats.rankdata(world[:, 1]))
)[0]
## 0.8275220380818621
```

Let us point out that this measure is invariant with respect to monotone transformations of the input variables (up to the sign):

```
scipy.stats.spearmanr(np.log(world[:, 0]), -np.sqrt(world[:, 1]))[0]
## -0.8275220380818622
```

**Exercise 9.4** We have included the `ps` in all the outputs generated by our `plot_corr` functions. Review all the figures listed above.

**Exercise 9.5** Apply `numpy.corrcoef` and `scipy.stats.rankdata` (with an appropriate `axis` argument) to compute the Spearman correlation matrix for all the variable pairs in `body`. Draw it on a heatmap.

**Exercise 9.6** (\*) Draw the scatterplots of the ranks of columns in the `world` and `body` datasets.

## 9.2 Regression Tasks

Given a *training* set of  $n$  points in an  $m$ -dimensional space represented as an  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  matrix and a set of  $n$  reference numeric outputs  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , regression aims to

---

<sup>2</sup> If a method  $Y$  is nothing else than  $X$  on transformed data, we should not consider it a totally new method.

find function between the  $m$  independent/explanatory/predictor variables and a chosen dependent/response/predicted variable:

$$y = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m),$$

that approximates the given dataset in a *usable* way.

### 9.2.1 K-Nearest Neighbour Regression

A quite straightforward approach to regression relies on aggregating the reference outputs of the  $k$  nearest neighbours of the point tested (compare Section 8.4.4).

For a fixed  $k \geq 1$  and a given  $\mathbf{x}' \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $f(\mathbf{x}')$  is computed by averaging the reference outputs in the point's local neighbourhood.

1. Find the indices  $N_k(\mathbf{y}) = \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$  of the  $k$  points from  $\mathbf{X}$  closest to  $\mathbf{x}'$ , i.e., ones that fulfil for all  $j \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$

$$\|\mathbf{x}_{i_1, \cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \dots \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{i_k, \cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{j, \cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\|.$$

2. Return the arithmetic mean of  $(y_{i_1}, \dots, y_{i_k})$  as the result, i.e., assign the average of the outputs corresponding to its  $k$  nearest neighbours.

Here is a straightforward implementation that generates the predictions for each point in  $\mathbf{x}_{\text{test}}$ :

```
def knn_regress(X_test, X_train, y_train, k):
    t = scipy.spatial.KDTree(X_train.reshape(-1, 1))
    i = t.query(X_test.reshape(-1, 1), k)[1] # indices of NNs
    y = y_train[i] # corresponding reference outputs
    return np.mean(y, axis=1)
```

For example, let us try expressing weight (the 1st column) as a function of hip circumference (the 6th column) in our NHANES study (body dataset):

$$\text{weight} = f_1(\text{hip circumference}) \quad (+\text{some error}).$$

We will also model the life expectancy at birth in different countries (world dataset) as a function of their GDP per capita (PPP):

$$\text{life expectancy} = f_2(\text{GDP per capita}) \quad (+\text{some error}).$$

Figure 9.7 depicts the fitted functions for a few different  $ks$ .

We have obtained a *smoothed* version of the original dataset. The fact that we do not reproduce the data points in an exact manner is reflected by the (figurative) error term in the above equations. Its role is to emphasise the existence of some natural data variability; after all, one's weight is not purely determined by their hip size.

For small  $k$  we adapt better to the data points, which can be a good thing unless data are very noisy. The greater the  $k$ , the smoother the approximation at the cost of losing fine detail and restricted usability at the domain boundary.

Usually, the number of neighbours is chosen by trial and error (just like the number of bins in a histogram; compare [Section 4.3.3](#)).

```
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
x = body[:, 5] # hip circumference
y = body[:, 0] # weight
plt.plot(x, y, "o", alpha=0.1)
_x = np.linspace(x.min(), x.max(), 1001)
for k in [5, 25, 100]:
    _y = knn_regress(_x, x, y, k)
    plt.plot(_x, _y, label=f"$k={k}$")
plt.legend()
plt.xlabel("hip circumference")
plt.ylabel("weight")

plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
x = world[:, 0] # GDP
y = world[:, 1] # life expectancy
plt.plot(x, y, "o", alpha=0.1)
_x = np.linspace(x.min(), x.max(), 1001)
for k in [5, 25, 100]:
    _y = knn_regress(_x, x, y, k)
    plt.plot(_x, _y, label=f"$k={k}$")
plt.legend()
plt.xlabel("per capita GDP PPP")
plt.ylabel("life expectancy (years)")

plt.show()
```

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) Some methods use weighted arithmetic means for aggregating the  $k$  reference outputs, with weights proportional to the actual distances to the neighbours (closer inputs are considered more important).

Also, instead of few nearest neighbours, we could easily implement some form of fixed-radius search regression (compare [Section 8.4.4](#)).

These are left as an enjoyable exercise to the skilled reader.

---

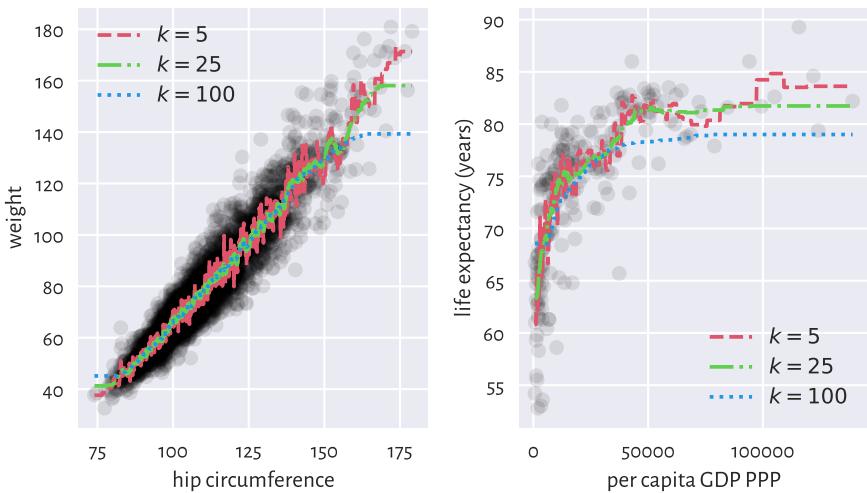


Figure 9.7:  $K$ -nearest neighbour regression curves for example datasets; the greater the  $k$ , the more coarse-grained the approximation

### 9.2.2 From Data to (Linear) Models

Unfortunately, in order to generate predictions for new data points,  $k$ -nearest neighbours regression requires that the training sample is available at all times. It does not *synthesise* or *simplify* the inputs; instead, it works as a kind of a black-box.

In many contexts we might prefer creating a data *model* instead, i.e., an easily interpretable mathematical function. A simple yet still quite flexible choice tackles regression problems via linear (affine) maps of the form:

$$y = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) = c_0 + c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \dots + c_m x_m,$$

or, in matrix multiplication terms,

$$y = c_0 + \mathbf{c} \mathbf{x}^T,$$

where  $\mathbf{c} = [c_1 \ c_2 \ \dots \ c_m]$  and  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1 \ x_2 \ \dots \ x_m]$ .

For  $m = 1$ , the above simply defines a straight line, which we traditionally denote with

$$y = f(x) = ax + b$$

i.e., where we mapped  $x \mapsto x_1$ ,  $c_0 \mapsto b$  (intercept), and  $c_1 \mapsto a$  (slope).

For  $m > 1$ , we obtain different hyperplanes (high-dimensional generalisations of the notion of a plane).

---

**Note:** As a separate intercept “ $c_0 +$ ” term in the defining equation can be quite inconvenient, notationwisely, we usually restrict ourselves to linear maps like

$$y = \mathbf{c}\mathbf{x}^T,$$

but where we can possibly have an explicit constant 1 component *inside*  $\mathbf{x}$ , for instance,

$$\mathbf{x} = [1 \ x_1 \ x_2 \ \dots \ x_m].$$

Together with  $\mathbf{c} = [c_0 \ c_1 \ c_2 \ \dots \ c_m]$ , as trivially  $c_0 \cdot 1 = c_0$ , this new setting is equivalent to the original one.

---

### 9.2.3 Least Squares Method

A linear model is uniquely<sup>3</sup> encoded using only the coefficients  $c_1, \dots, c_m$ . In order to find them, for each point  $\mathbf{x}_i$ , from the input (training) set, we typically desire the *predicted* value

$$\hat{y}_i = f(x_{i,1}, x_{i,2}, \dots, x_{i,m}) = \mathbf{c}\mathbf{x}_i^T,$$

to be as *close* to the corresponding reference  $y_i$  as possible.

There can be many possible measures of *closeness* but the most popular one<sup>4</sup> uses the notion of the *sum of squared residuals* (true minus predicted outputs),

$$\text{SSR}(\mathbf{c}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - (c_1 x_{i,1} + c_2 x_{i,2} + \dots + c_m x_{i,m}))^2,$$

which is a function of  $\mathbf{c} = (c_1, \dots, c_m)$  (for fixed  $\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}$ ).

And thus the *least squares* solution to the stated linear regression problem will be defined by the coefficient vector  $\mathbf{c}$  that minimises the SSR. Based on what we have said about matrix multiplication, this is equivalent to solving the optimisation task

$$\text{minimise } (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}\mathbf{X}^T)(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}\mathbf{X}^T)^T \quad \text{w.r.t. } (c_1, \dots, c_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m,$$

because  $\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{c}\mathbf{X}^T$  gives the predicted values as a row vector (the kind reader is encouraged to check that on a piece of paper now),  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{y} - \hat{\mathbf{y}}$  computes all the  $n$  residuals, and  $\mathbf{r} \mathbf{r}^T$  gives their sum of squares.

The method of least squares is one of the simplest and most natural approaches to

---

<sup>3</sup> And thus in order to memorise the model for a further reference, we only need to serialise its  $m$  coefficients, e.g., in a JSON or CSV file.

<sup>4</sup> Due to computability and mathematical analysability, which we usually explore in more advanced courses on statistical data analysis, which this one is not.

regression analysis (curve fitting). Its theoretical foundations (calculus...) were developed more than 200 years ago by Gauss and then it was polished by Legendre.

**Note:** (\*) Had the points lain on a hyperplane exactly (the interpolation problem),  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{c}\mathbf{X}^T$  would have an exact solution, equivalent to solving the linear system of equations  $\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}\mathbf{X}^T = \mathbf{0}$ . However, in our setting we assume that there might be some measurement errors or other discrepancies between the reality and the theoretical model. Thus, to account for this, we are trying to solve a more general problem of finding a hyperplane for which  $\|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}\mathbf{X}^T\|^2$  is as small as possible.

**Note:** (\*) The above can be solved analytically (compute the partial derivatives of SSR with respect to each  $c_1, \dots, c_m$ , equate them to 0, and solve a simple system of linear equations), which results in  $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{y}\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}^T\mathbf{X})^{-1}$ , where  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  is the inverse of a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , i.e., the matrix such that  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ . As inverting larger matrices directly is not too robust, numerically speaking, we prefer relying upon some more specialised algorithms to determine the solution.

The `scipy.linalg.lstsq` function provides a quite numerically stable procedure (which is based on the singular value decomposition of the model matrix, see below for discussion and common pitfalls).

Consider the above NHANES study excerpt one more time; let us say we would like to express weight (the 1st column) as a now linear function of hip circumference (the 6th column),

$$\text{weight} = a \cdot \text{hip circumference} + b \quad (+\text{some error}).$$

The error term corresponds to the residuals as by drawing a scatterplot (see the figure below) of the involved variables we can see that the data do not lie on a straight line perfectly: each model is an idealisation/simplification of the described reality.

The *design (model) matrix*  $\mathbf{X}$  and reference  $\mathbf{y}$ s are thus:

```
x_original = body[:, [5]]
X = x_original**[0, 1] # 1s, hip circumference
y_true = body[:, 0] # weight
```

We have used the vectorised exponentiation operator to convert each  $x_i$  (the  $i$ -th hip circumference) to a pair  $(x_i^0, x_i^1) = (1, x_i)$ , which is a nice trick to prepend a column of 1s to  $\mathbf{X}$  so that we can include the intercept term in the model. Here is a preview:

```
preview_indices = [4, 5, 6, 8, 12, 13]
X[preview_indices, :]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

## array([[ 1. ,  92.5],
##        [ 1. , 106.7],
##        [ 1. ,  96.3],
##        [ 1. , 102. ],
##        [ 1. ,  94.8],
##        [ 1. ,  97.5]])
y_true[preview_indices]
## array([55.4, 62. , 66.2, 77.2, 64.2, 56.8])

```

Let us determine the least squares solution to our regression problem:

```

import scipy.linalg
res = scipy.linalg.lstsq(X, y_true)

```

The optimal coefficients vector (one that minimises the SSR) is:

```

c = res[0]
c
## array([-65.10087248,  1.3052463 ])

```

Therefore, the estimated model is:

$$\text{weight} = 1.305 \cdot \text{hip circumference} - 65.1 \quad (\text{+some error}).$$

Let us contemplate the fact that the model is nicely interpretable. For instance, with increasing hip circumference we expect the weights be greater. It does not mean that there is some *casual* relationship between the two (for instance, there can be some latent variables that affect both of them), but rather that there is some general tendency of how the data aligns in the sample space. For instance, that the “best guess” (according to the current model – there can be many, see below) weight for a person with hip circumference of 100 cm is 65.4 kg. Thanks to such models, we can understand certain phenomena better or find some proxies for different variables (especially if measuring them directly is tedious, costly, dangerous, etc.).

Let us determine the predicted weights and display them for the first 6 persons:

```

y_pred = c @ X.T
np.round(y_pred[preview_indices], 2)
## array([55.63, 74.17, 60.59, 68.03, 58.64, 62.16])

```

The scatterplot and the fitted regression line in Figure 9.8 indicates a quite good fit, but of course there is some natural variability.

```

_x = np.array([x_original.min(), x_original.max()]).reshape(-1, 1)
_y = c @ (_x**[0, 1]).T

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
plt.plot(x_original, y_true, "o", alpha=0.1)
plt.plot(_x, _y, "r-")
plt.xlabel("hip circumference")
plt.ylabel("weight")
plt.show()
```

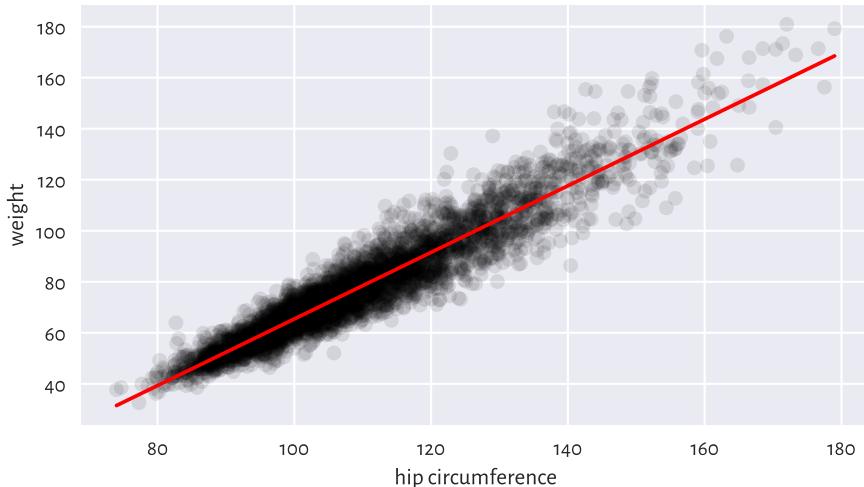


Figure 9.8: The least squares line for weight vs hip circumference

**Exercise 9.7** The [Anscombe quartet<sup>5</sup>](#) is a famous example dataset, where we have 4 pairs of variables having very similar means, variances, linear correlation coefficients, and which can be approximated by the same straight line, however, whose scatter plots are very different. Contemplate upon this toy example yourself.

#### 9.2.4 Analysis of Residuals

The residuals, i.e., the estimation errors – what we expected vs what we get, for the chosen 6 observations are:

```
r = y_true - y_pred
np.round(r[preview_indices], 2)
## array([-0.23, -12.17,  5.61,  9.17,  5.56, -5.36])
```

These residuals are visualised in [Figure 9.9](#).

We wanted the squared residuals (on average – across all the points) be as small as

---

<sup>5</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/r/anscombe.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/r/anscombe.csv)

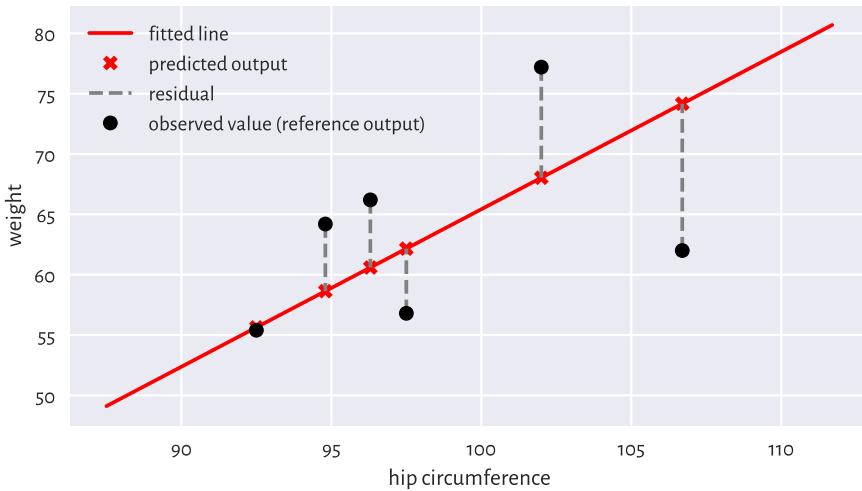


Figure 9.9: Example residuals in a simple linear regression task

possible, and the least squares method assured that this is the case *relative to the chosen model*. However, it still does not mean that what we have obtained necessarily constitutes a good fit to the training data. Thus, we need to perform the analysis of residuals. Interestingly, the average of residuals is always zero:

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \hat{y}_i) = 0.$$

Therefore, if we want to summarise the residuals into a single number, we should rather use, for example, the root mean squared error (RMSE):

$$\text{RMSE}(\mathbf{c}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2}.$$

```
np.sqrt(np.mean(r**2))
## 6.948470091176111
```

or the mean absolute error:

$$\text{MAE}(\mathbf{c}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |y_i - \hat{y}_i|.$$

```
np.mean(np.abs(r))
## 5.207073583769204
```

which is nicely interpretable, because it measures by how many kilograms do we err *on average*. Not bad.

**Exercise 9.8** Fit a regression line explaining weight as a function of the waist circumference and compute the corresponding RMSE and MAE.

---

**Note:** Generally, fitting simple (involving one independent variable) linear models can only make sense for highly linearly correlated variables. Interestingly, if  $y$  and  $x$  are both standardised, and  $r$  is their Pearson's coefficient, then the least squares-fitted simple linear model will be given by  $y = rx$ .

---

In order to verify whether a fitted model is not extremely wrong (e.g., when we fit a liner model to data that clearly follows a different functional relationship), a plot of residuals against the fitted values can be of help; see Figure 9.10. Ideally, the points should be aligned totally at random (homoscedasticity) therein, without any dependence structure.

```
plt.plot(y_pred, r, "o", alpha=0.1)
plt.axhline(0, ls="--", color="red")
plt.xlabel("fitted values")
plt.ylabel("residuals")
plt.show()
```

**Exercise 9.9** Compare<sup>6</sup> the RMSE and MAE for the k-nearest neighbour regression curves depicted in the lefthandside of Figure 9.7. Also, draw the residuals vs fitted plot.

For linear models fitted using the least squares method, it can be shown that

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \bar{y})^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (\hat{y}_i - \bar{\hat{y}})^2 + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2$$

that is, the variance of the dependent variable (left) can be decomposed as the variance of the predicted variables plus the averaged squared residuals. Multiplying the above by  $n$ , we have that the *total* sum of squares (which we want to be as close to the former as possible) is equal to the *explained* sum of squares plus the *residual* sum of squares (which we want to be as small as possible):

$$\text{TSS} = \text{ESS} + \text{RSS}.$$

---

<sup>6</sup> In such an approach to regression, we are not aiming to minimise anything in particular. If the model is good with respect to some metrics such as RMSE or MAE, we can consider ourselves lucky. However, there are some asymptotic results that guarantee the optimality of the results generated (e.g., consistency) for large sample sizes, see, e.g., [[DGL96]].

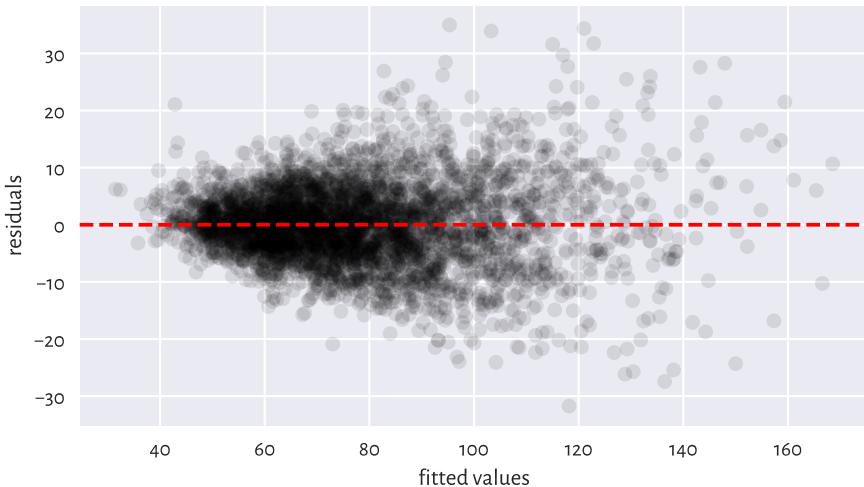


Figure 9.10: Residuals vs fitted values for the linear model explaining weight as a function of hip circumference; the variance of residuals slightly increases as  $\hat{y}_i$  increases, which is not ideal, but it could be much worse than this

The *coefficient of determination* (unadjusted R-Squared, sometimes referred to as simply the *score*) is a popular normalised, unitless measure that is quite easy to interpret with no domain-specific knowledge of the modelled problem. Namely, it is given by:

$$R^2(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = \frac{\text{ESS}}{\text{TSS}} = 1 - \frac{\text{RSS}}{\text{TSS}} = 1 - \frac{s_r^2}{s_y^2},$$

```
1 - np.var(y_true-y_pred)/np.var(y_true)
## 0.8959634726270759
```

The coefficient of determination in the current context<sup>7</sup> is thus the proportion of variance of the dependent variable explained by the independent variables in the model – the closer it is to 1, the better. A dummy model that always returns the mean of  $\mathbf{y}$  gives R-squared of 0.

In our case,  $R^2 \approx 0.9$  is quite high, which indicates a moderately good fit.

---

**Note:** There are certain statistical results that can be relied upon provided that the residuals are independent random variables with expectation zero and the same variance (e.g., the Gauss–Markov theorem). Further, if they are normally distributed,

<sup>7</sup> For a model that is *not* generated via least squares, the coefficient of determination can also be negative, particularly when the fit is extremely bad. Also note that this measure is dataset-dependent. Therefore, it should not be used for comparing between models explaining different dependent variables.

then we have a number of hypothesis tests available (e.g., for the significance of coefficients). This is why various textbooks verify such assumptions. However, we do not go that far in this introductory course.

---

### 9.2.5 Multiple Regression

As another example, let us fit a model involving two independent variables, arm and hip circumference:

```
X = np.insert(body[:, [4, 5]], 0, 1, axis=1) # prepend a column of 1s
res = scipy.linalg.lstsq(X, y_true)
c = res[0]
np.round(c, 2)
## array([-63.38,    1.3 ,    0.9 ])
```

Thus, we have fitted the plane

$$\text{weight} = -63.38 + 1.3 \text{ arm circumference} + 0.9 \text{ hip circumference.}$$

We skip the visualisation part, because we do not expect it to result in a readable plot – these are multidimensional data after all. The coefficient of determination is

```
y_pred = c @ X.T
r = y_true - y_pred
1-np.var(r)/np.var(y_true)
## 0.9243996585518783
```

Root mean squared error:

```
np.sqrt(np.mean(r**2))
## 5.923223870044694
```

Mean absolute error:

```
np.mean(np.abs(r))
## 4.431548244333894
```

Thus, it is a slightly better model than the previous one — we can predict the study participants' weights with better precision, at the cost of increased model complexity.

### 9.2.6 Variable Transformation and Linearisable Models (\*)

We are of course not restricted merely to linear functions of the input variables, because by applying arbitrary transformations upon the design matrix columns, we can cover many interesting scenarios.

For instance, a polynomial model involving two variables:

$$g(v_1, v_2) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_1^2 + \beta_3 v_1 v_2 + \beta_4 v_2 + \beta_5 v_2^2$$

can be obtained by substituting  $x_1 = 1$ ,  $x_2 = v_1$ ,  $x_3 = v_1^2$ ,  $x_4 = v_1 v_2$ ,  $x_5 = v_2$ ,  $x_6 = v_2^2$ , and then fitting

$$f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_6) = c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \dots + c_6 x_6.$$

The design matrix is made of rubber, it can handle anything (unless it carries highly correlated pairs of input variables). It will still be a linear model, but with respect to transformed data. The algorithm does not care. That is the beauty of the underlying mathematics.

A creative modeller can also turn models such as  $u = ce^{av}$  into  $y = ax + b$  by replacing  $y = \log u$ ,  $x = v$ , and  $b = \log c$ . There are numerous possibilities here – we call them *linearisable models*.

As an example, let us model the life expectancy at birth in different countries as a function of their GDP per capita (PPP).

We will consider four different models:

1.  $y = c_1 + c_2 x$  (linear),
2.  $y = c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 x^2$  (quadratic),
3.  $y = c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 x^2 + c_4 x^4$  (cubic),
4.  $y = c_1 + c_2 \log x$  (logarithmic).

Here are the helper functions that create the model matrices:

```
def make_model_matrix1(x):
    return x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1]

def make_model_matrix2(x):
    return x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1, 2]

def make_model_matrix3(x):
    return x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1, 2, 3]

def make_model_matrix4(x):
    return (np.log(x)).reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1]

make_model_matrix1.__name__ = "linear model"
make_model_matrix2.__name__ = "quadratic model"
make_model_matrix3.__name__ = "cubic model"
make_model_matrix4.__name__ = "logarithmic model"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

model_matrix_makers = [
    make_model_matrix1,
    make_model_matrix2,
    make_model_matrix3,
    make_model_matrix4
]
Xs = [ make_model_matrix(world[:, 0])
    for make_model_matrix in model_matrix_makers ]

```

Fitting the models:

```

y_true = world[:, 1]
cs = [ scipy.linalg.lstsq(X, y_true)[0]
    for X in Xs ]

```

Their coefficients of determination are equal to:

```

for i in range(len(Xs)):
    R2 = 1-np.var(y_true - cs[i] @ Xs[i].T)/np.var(y_true)
    print(f"{model_matrix_makers[i].__name__:20} R2={R2:.3f}")
## linear model      R2=0.431
## quadratic model   R2=0.567
## cubic model       R2=0.607
## logarithmic model R2=0.651

```

The logarithmic model is thus the best (out of the models we have considered). The four models are depicted in Figure 9.11.

```

plt.plot(world[:, 0], world[:, 1], "o", alpha=0.1)
_x = np.linspace(world[:, 0].min(), world[:, 0].max(), 101).reshape(-1, 1)
for i in range(len(model_matrix_makers)):
    _y = cs[i] @ model_matrix_makers[i](_x).T
    plt.plot(_x, _y, label=model_matrix_makers[i].__name__)
plt.legend()
plt.xlabel("per capita GDP PPP")
plt.ylabel("life expectancy (years)")
plt.show()

```

**Exercise 9.10** Draw box plots and histograms of residuals for each model as well as the scatter-plots of residuals vs fitted values.

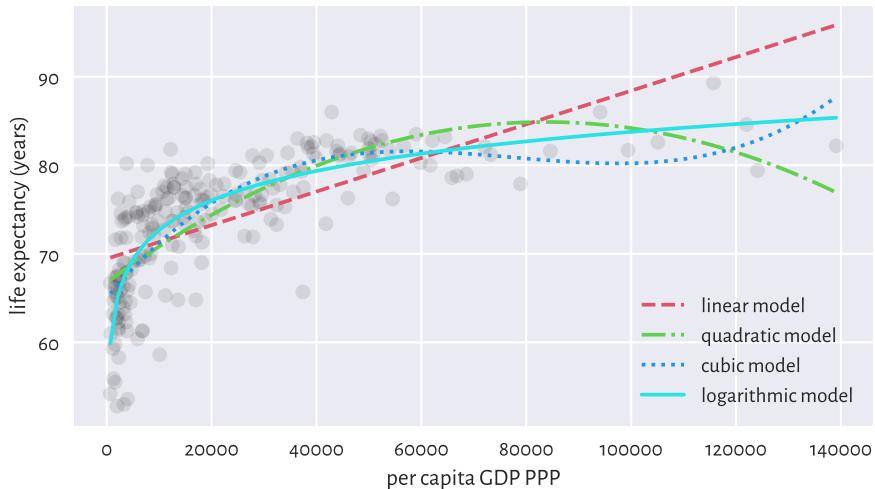


Figure 9.11: Different models for life expectancy vs GDP per-capita

### 9.2.7 Descriptive vs Predictive Power (\*)

We have *approximated* the life vs GDP relationship using a few different functions. Nevertheless, we see that the above quadratic and cubic models probably do not make much sense, semantically speaking. Sure, they do fit the data better, as far as individual points in the training set are concerned: after all, they have smaller mean squared errors (again: at these given points). However, looking at the way they behave, one does not need a university degree in economics/social policy to conclude that they probably are not the best *description* of how the reality behaves (on average).

**Important:** Naturally, a model's fit to observed data improves as the model's complexity increases. The Razor principle (by William of Ockham et al.) advises that if some phenomenon can be explained in many different ways, the simplest explanation should be chosen (*do not multiply entities* [here: introduce independent variables] *without necessity*).

In particular, the more independent variables we have in the model, the greater the  $R^2$  coefficient will be. Thus, we can try correcting for this phenomenon by considering the *adjusted R<sup>2</sup>*

$$\bar{R}^2(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = 1 - (1 - R^2(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y})) \frac{n - 1}{n - m - 1},$$

which, to some extent, penalises more complex models.

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) Model quality measures adjusted for the number of model parameters,  $m$ , can also be useful in automated variable selection. For example, the Akaike Information Criterion is given by  $AIC(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = 2m + n \log(SSR(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y})) - n \log n$  or the Bayes Information Criterion is defined via  $BIC(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = m \log n + n \log(SSR(c|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y})) - n \log n$ . However, they are dependent on the scale of  $\mathbf{y}$ .

---

Further, we should also be interested in a model's *predictive* power – how well does it generalise to data points that we do not have now (or pretend we do not have), but might face in the future. After all, we observe the modelled reality only at a few different points – the question is how does the model perform when filling the gaps between them.

In particular, we should definitely be careful when *extrapolating* the model, i.e., making predictions outside of its usual domain. For example, the linear model predicts the following life expectancy for an imaginary country with \$500,000 per capita GDP PPP:

```
cs[0] @ model_matrix_makers[0](np.array([500000])).T
## array([164.3593753])
```

and the quadratic one gives:

```
cs[1] @ model_matrix_makers[1](np.array([500000])).T
## array([-364.10630778])
```

Nonsense.

Consider the following theoretical example. Let us assume that our true model is  $y = 5 + 3x^3$ .

```
def true_model(x):
    return 5 + 3*(x**3)
```

Next, we generate a sample from this model but which is – and such is life – subject to some measurement error:

```
np.random.seed(42)
x = np.random.rand(25)
y = true_model(x) + 0.2*np.random.randn(len(x))
```

Least-squares fitting of  $y = c_1 + c_2x^3$  to the above gives:

```
X = x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 3]
c03 = scipy.linalg.lstsq(X, y)[0]
ssr03 = np.sum((y-c03 @ X.T)**2)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
np.round(c03, 2)
## array([5.01, 3.13])
```

which is not very far, but still somewhat distant from the true coefficients, 5 and 3.

However, if we decided to fit a more flexible cubic polynomial,  $y = c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + c_4x^3$

```
X = x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1, 2, 3]
c0123 = scipy.linalg.lstsq(X, y)[0]
ssr0123 = np.sum((y-c0123 @ X.T)**2)
np.round(c0123, 2)
## array([4.89, 0.32, 0.57, 2.23])
```

in terms of the SSR, the more complex model is of course better:

```
ssr03, ssr0123
## (1.0612111154029558, 0.9619488226837543)
```

but it is farther away from the *truth* (which, when we perform the fitting task based only on given  $x$  and  $y$ , is unknown). We may thus say that the first model generalises better on yet-to-be-observed data, see Figure 9.12 for an illustration.

```
_x = np.linspace(0, 1, 101)
plt.plot(x, y, "o")
plt.plot(_x, true_model(_x), "--", label="true model")
plt.plot(_x, c0123 @ (_x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1, 2, 3]).T,
         label="fitted model y=x**[0, 1, 2, 3]")
plt.plot(_x, c03 @ (_x.reshape(-1, 1)**[0, 1]).T,
         label="fitted model y=x**[0, 1]")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

We have defined the sum of squared residuals (and its function, the root mean squared error) by means of the averaged deviation from the reference values, which in fact are themselves subject to error. They are our best-shot approximation of the truth, however, they should be taken with a degree of scepticism.

In our case, given the true (reference) model  $f$  defined over the domain  $D$  (in our case,  $f(x) = 3x^3 + 5$  and  $D = [0, 1]$ ) and an empirically fitted model  $\hat{f}$ , we can replace the sample RMSE with the square root of the integrated squared error:

$$\text{RMSE}(\hat{f}|f) = \sqrt{\int_D (f(x) - \hat{f}(x))^2 dx}$$

which we can approximate numerically by sampling the above at sufficiently many points and applying the trapezoidal rule.

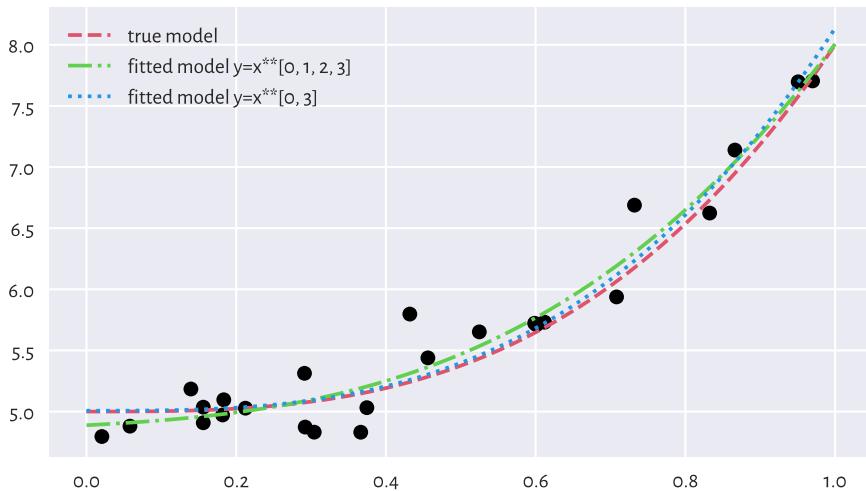


Figure 9.12: The true (theoretical) model vs some guesstimates (fitted from noisy data); more degrees of freedom does not necessarily reflect the truth better

Let us fit a range of polynomial models of different degrees.

```
ps = np.arange(1, 10)
cs, rmse_train, rmse_test = [], [], []
for p in ps:
    c = scipy.linalg.lstsq(x.reshape(-1, 1)**np.arange(p+1), y)[0]
    cs.append(c)

    y_pred = c @ (x.reshape(-1, 1)**np.arange(p+1)).T
    rmse_train.append(np.sqrt(np.mean((y-y_pred)**2)))

    _y = c @ (_x.reshape(-1, 1)**np.arange(p+1)).T
    _r = (true_model(_x) - _y)**2
    rmse_test.append(np.sqrt(0.5*np.sum(
        np.diff(_x)*(_r[1:]+_r[:-1])
    )))

plt.plot(ps, rmse_train, label="RMSE (training set)")
plt.plot(ps, rmse_test, label="RMSE (theoretical)")
plt.legend()
plt.yscale("log")
plt.xlabel("model complexity (polynomial degree)")
plt.show()
```

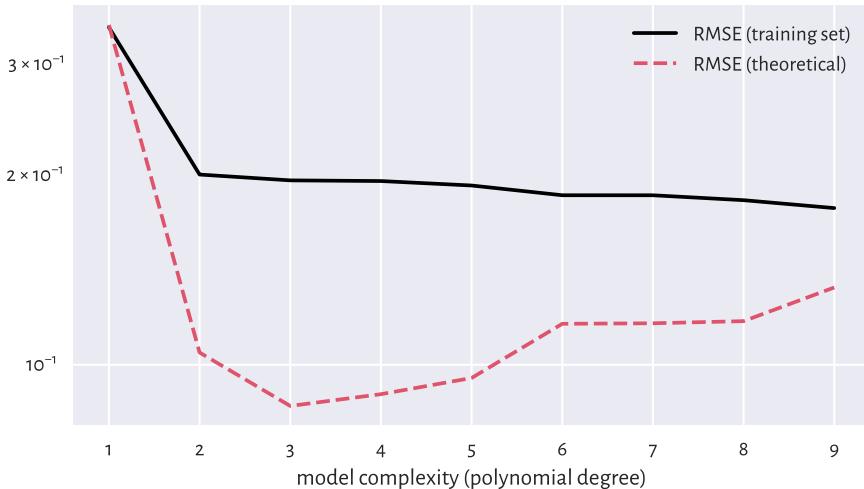


Figure 9.13: Good RMSE on training data does not necessarily imply good generalisation abilities

From Figure 9.13 we see that a model's ability to make correct generalisations to unseen data, with the increased complexity initially improves, but then becomes worse. It is quite a typical behaviour. In fact, the model with the smallest RMSE on the training set, actually *overfits* to the input sample, see Figure 9.14.

```
plt.plot(x, y, "o")
plt.plot(_x, true_model(_x), "--", label="true model")
for i in [0, 1, 8]:
    plt.plot(_x, cs[i] @ (_x.reshape(-1, 1)**np.arange(ps[i]+1)).T,
             label=f"fitted degree-{ps[i]} polynomial")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

---

**Important:** When evaluating a model's quality in terms of predictive power on unseen data, we should go beyond inspecting its behaviour merely on the points from the training sample. As the *truth* is usually not known (if it were, we would not need any guessing), a common approach in case where we have a dataset of a considerable size is to divide it (randomly) into three parts:

- training sample (say, 60%) – used to fit a model,
- test sample (the remaining 40%) – used to assess its quality (e.g., by means of RMSE).

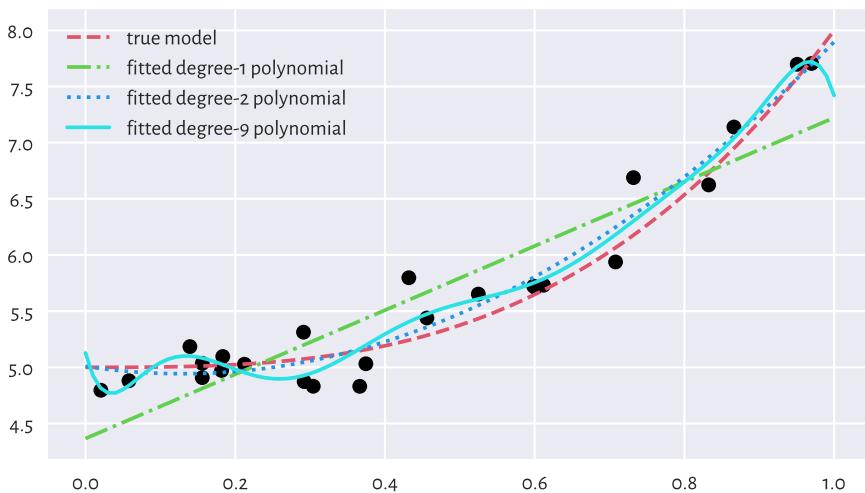


Figure 9.14: Under- and overfitting to training data

This might *emulate* an environment where some new data arrives later, see Section 12.3.3 for more details.

Furthermore, if model selection is required, we may apply a training-validation-test split (say, 60/20/20%; see Section 12.3.4) where many models are constructed on the training set, the validation set is used to compute the metrics and choose the best model, and then the test set is employed to come up with the final valuation (because we do not want the model to overfit to the test set).

---

Overall, models should never be blindly trusted – common sense must always be applied. The fact that we have fitted something using a sophisticated procedure on a dataset that was hard to obtain does not mean we must glorify it. Bad models must be discarded and we should move on. Let us not think about them too much.

### 9.2.8 Fitting Regression Models with `scikit-learn` (\*)

`scikit-learn`<sup>8</sup> (`sklearn`; [[PVG+11]]) is a huge Python package for machine learning built on top of `numpy`, `scipy`, and `matplotlib`. It has a nicely consistent API and implements or provides wrappers for many regression, classification, clustering, and dimensionality reduction algorithms (amongst others).

---

**Important:** `sklearn` is very convenient but allows for fitting models even if we do

<sup>8</sup> <https://scikit-learn.org/stable/index.html>

not understand the mathematics behind them. This is dangerous – it is like driving a manual without a driver's license only on an autopilot. Advanced students and practitioners will appreciate it, but if used by beginners, it needs to be handled with care; we should not mistake something's being easily accessible with its being safe to use. Too many bad models go into production and make our daily lives harder. Hence, as a rule, if given a function implementing some procedure and we are not able to provide its definition/mathematical properties/explain its idealised version using pseudocode, we should refrain from using it.

---

Because of the above, we shall only demo the package's API. Let us do that by fitting a multiple linear regression model for, again, weight as a function of arm and hip circumference:

```
X = body[:, [4, 5]]
y_true = body[:, 0]
import sklearn.linear_model
lm = sklearn.linear_model.LinearRegression(fit_intercept=True)
lm.fit(X, y_true)
lm.intercept_, lm.coef_
## LinearRegression()
## (-63.383425410947524, array([1.30457807, 0.8986582]))
```

In **scikit-learn**, once we construct an object representing the model to be fitted, the **fit** method will determine the optimal parameters. We have obtained exactly the same solution – it is the same method, after all.

Computing the predicted values can be done by means of the **predict** method. For example, we can calculate the coefficient of determination:

```
y_pred = lm.predict(X)
import sklearn.metrics
sklearn.metrics.r2_score(y_true, y_pred)
## 0.9243996585518783
```

This function is convenient, but do we remember the formula for the score? We should always do.

### 9.2.9 Ill-Conditioned Model Matrices (\*)

Our approach to regression analysis relies on solving an optimisation problem (the method least squares). However, sometimes the “optimal” solution that the algorithm returns might have nothing to do with the *true* minimum. And this is despite the fact that we have the theoretical results (the objective is convex) stating that the solution is unique (there are methods in statistical learning where there might be multiple local minima – this is even more difficult; see [Section 12.4.4](#)). The problem stems from our using the computer's finite-precision floating point arithmetic.

Let us fit a degree-4 polynomial to the life expectancy vs per capita GDP dataset.

```
X = world[:, [0]]**[0,1,2,3,4]
y_true = world[:, 1]
cs = dict()
```

We store the estimated model coefficients in a dictionary, because many methods will follow next. First, **scipy**:

```
res = scipy.linalg.lstsq(X, y_true)
cs["scipy_X"] = res[0]
cs["scipy_X"]
## array([ 2.33103950e-16,  6.31514064e-12,  1.34162021e-07,
##        -2.33980973e-12,  1.03490968e-17])
```

If we drew the fitted polynomial (see the figure below), we would see that the fit is actually very very bad. The result returned by **lstsq** in this case is not at all optimal. It turns out that the fitting problem is very *ill-conditioned* (and it is not the algorithm's fault): GDPs range from very small to very large ones, and taking the powers of 4 thereof results in numbers of ever greater range. Finding the least squares solution involves some matrix inverse (not necessarily directly) and such a matrix might be close to singular.

As a measure of the model matrix's ill-conditioning, we often use the so-called condition number, being the ratio of the largest to the smallest so-called *singular values*<sup>9</sup> of  $\mathbf{X}^T$ , which are in fact returned by the **lstsq** method:

```
s = res[3]
s[0] / s[-1]
## 9.101246653543121e+19
```

As a rule of thumb, if the condition number is  $10^k$ , we are losing  $k$  digits of numerical precision when performing the underlying computations. This is thus a very ill-conditioned problem, because the above number is very large.

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) The least squares regression problem can be solved by means of the singular value decomposition of the model matrix, see [Section 9.3.4](#). Let **USQ** be the SVD of  $\mathbf{X}^T$ . Then  $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{U}(1/\mathbf{S})\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{y}$ , with  $(1/\mathbf{S}) = \text{diag}(1/s_{1,1}, \dots, 1/s_{m,m})$ . Interestingly, as  $s_{1,1} \geq \dots \geq s_{m,m}$  gives the singular values of  $\mathbf{X}^T$  (square roots of the eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{X}^T\mathbf{X}$ ), the aforementioned condition number can simply be computed as  $s_{1,1}/s_{m,m}$ .

---

Let us verify the approach used by **scikit-learn**, which fits the intercept separately (but still, it is merely a wrapper around **lstsq** with a different API), and so should be slightly better-behaving:

---

<sup>9</sup> Being themselves the square roots of eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{X}^T\mathbf{X}$ . Seriously, we really need linear algebra when we even remotely think about practising data science.

```
import sklearn.linear_model
lm = sklearn.linear_model.LinearRegression(fit_intercept=True)
lm.fit(X[:, 1:], y_true)
cs["sklearn"] = np.r_[lm.intercept_, lm.coef_]
cs["sklearn"]
## LinearRegression()
## array([ 6.92257641e+01,  5.05754568e-13,  1.38835855e-08,
##        -2.18869526e-13,  9.09347414e-19])
```

Here is the condition number:

```
lm.singular_[0] / lm.singular_[-1]
## 1.4025984282521556e+16
```

The condition number is also huge – and **scikit-learn** did not warn us about it. Had we trusted the solution returned by it, we would end up with conclusions from our data analysis built on sand.

If the model matrix is almost singular, the computation of its inverse is prone to enormous numerical errors. One way of dealing with this is to remove highly correlated variables (the multicollinearity problem).

Interestingly, standardisation can *sometimes* make the fitting more numerically stable. Let  $\mathbf{Z}$  be a standardised version of the model matrix  $\mathbf{X}$  with the intercept part (the column of 1s) not included, i.e., with  $z_{i,j} = (x_{i,j} - \bar{x}_j)/s_j$  with  $\bar{x}_j$  and  $s_j$  denoting the arithmetic mean and standard deviation of the  $j$ -th column in  $\mathbf{X}$ . If  $(d_1, \dots, d_{m-1})$  is the least squares solution for  $\mathbf{Z}$ , then the least squares solution to the underlying original regression problem is

$$\left( \bar{y} - \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} \frac{d_j}{s_j} \bar{x}_j, \frac{d_1}{s_1}, \frac{d_2}{s_2}, \dots, \frac{d_{m-1}}{s_{m-1}} \right)$$

with the first term corresponding to the intercept.

Let us test this approach with **scipy.linalg.lstsq**.

```
means = np.mean(X[:, 1:], axis=0)
stds = np.std(X[:, 1:], axis=0)
Z = (X[:, 1:]-means)/stds
resZ = scipy.linalg.lstsq(Z, y_true)
c_scipyZ = resZ[0]/stds
cs["scipy_Z"] = np.r_[np.mean(y_true) - (c_scipyZ @ means.T), c_scipyZ]
cs["scipy_Z"]
## array([ 6.35946784e+01,  1.04541932e-03,  -2.41992445e-08,
##        2.39133533e-13,  -8.13307828e-19])
```

The condition number is:

```
s = resZ[3]
s[0] / s[-1]
## 139.4279225737235
```

This is still not too good (we would prefer a value close to 1) but nevertheless way better.

Figure 9.15 depicts the three fitted models, each claiming to be *the* solution to the original regression problem.

```
plt.plot(world[:, 0], world[:, 1], "o", alpha=0.1)
_x = np.linspace(world[:, 0].min(), world[:, 0].max(), 101).reshape(-1, 1)
_X = _x**[0,1,2,3,4]
for lab, c in cs.items():
    ssr = np.sum((y_true-c @ X.T)**2)
    plt.plot(_x, c @ _X.T, label=f"[lab:10] SSR={ssr:.2f}")
plt.legend()
plt.ylim(20, 120)
plt.xlabel("per capita GDP PPP")
plt.ylabel("life expectancy (years)")
plt.show()
```

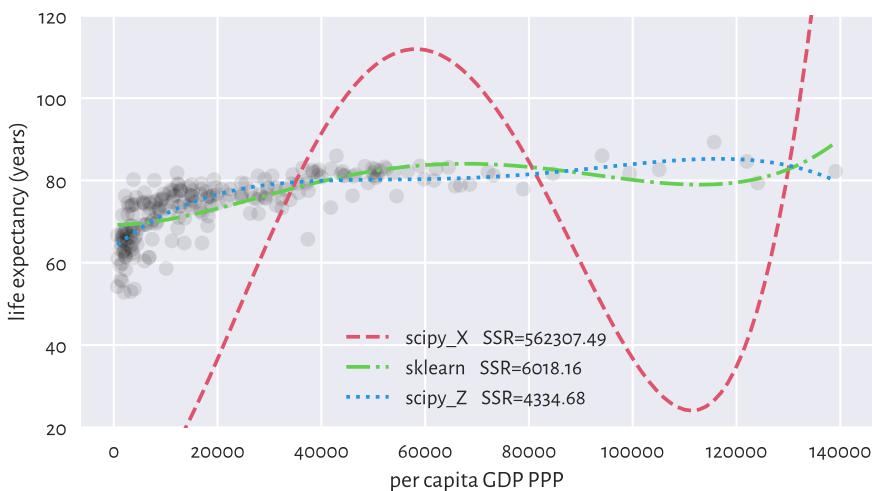


Figure 9.15: Ill-conditioned model matrix can result in the resulting models be very wrong

---

**Important:** Always check the model matrix's condition number.

---

To be strict, if we read a paper in, say, social or medical sciences (amongst others) where the researchers fit a regression model but do not provide the model matrix's condition number, we should doubt the conclusions they make.

On a final note, we might wonder why the standardisation is not done automatically by the least squares solver. As usual with most numerical methods, there is no one-fits-all solution: e.g., when there are columns of very small variance or there are outliers in data. This is why we need to study all the topics deeply: to be able to respond flexibly to many different scenarios ourselves.

---

## 9.3 Finding Interesting Combinations of Variables (\*)

### 9.3.1 Dot Products, Angles, Collinearity, and Orthogonality

It turns out that the dot product (Section 8.3) has a nice geometrical interpretation:

$$\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = \|\mathbf{x}\| \|\mathbf{y}\| \cos \alpha,$$

where  $\alpha$  is the angle between the two vectors. In other words, it is the product of the lengths of the two vectors and the cosine of the angle between them.

We can obtain the cosine part by computing the dot product of the *normalised* vectors, i.e., such that their lengths are equal to 1:

$$\cos \alpha = \frac{\mathbf{x}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{y}}{\|\mathbf{y}\|}.$$

For example, consider two vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $(1/2, 0)$  and  $(\sqrt{2}/2, \sqrt{2}/2)$ , which are depicted in Figure 9.16.

```
u = np.array([0.5, 0])
v = np.array([np.sqrt(2)/2, np.sqrt(2)/2])
```

Their dot product is equal to:

```
np.sum(u*v)
## 0.3535533905932738
```

The dot product of their normalised versions, i.e., the cosine of the angle between them is:

```
u_norm = u/np.sqrt(np.sum(u*u))
v_norm = v/np.sqrt(np.sum(v*v)) # BTW: this vector was already normalised
np.sum(u_norm*v_norm)
## 0.7071067811865476
```

The angle itself can be determined by referring to the inverse of the cosine function, i.e., arccosine.

```
np.arccos(np.sum(u_norm*v_norm)) * 180/np.pi
## 45.0
```

Notice that we have converted the angle from radians to degrees.

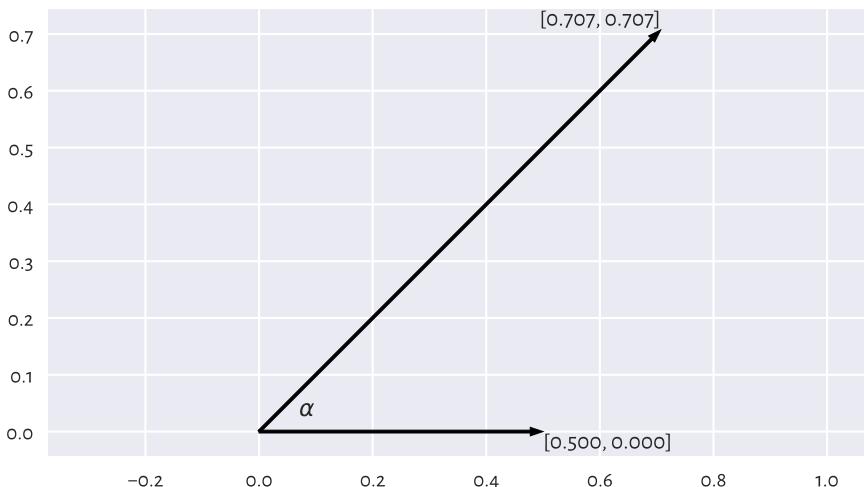


Figure 9.16: Example vectors and the angle between them

---

**Important:** If two vectors are collinear (*codirectional*, one is a scaled version of another, angle 0), then  $\cos 0 = 1$ . If they point to opposite directions (-180 degrees angle), then  $\cos \pi = -1$ . For *orthogonal* (perpendicular, 90 or -90 degree angle) vectors, we get  $\cos(\pi/2) = \cos(-\pi/2) = 0$ .

---



---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) The standard deviation  $s$  of a vector  $x$  that has already been centred (whose mean is 0) is a scaled version of the Euclidean norm (divided by the square root of the number of elements,  $n$ ), i.e.,  $s = \|x\| / \sqrt{n}$ . Looking at the definition of the Pearson linear correlation coefficient, we see that it is the dot product of the standardised versions of two vectors  $x$  and  $y$  divided by the number of elements therein. However, if the vectors are centred, we can rewrite the formula equivalently as  $r(x, y) = \frac{x}{\|x\|} \cdot \frac{y}{\|y\|} = \cos \alpha$ . It is not easy to imagine vectors in very high dimensional spaces, but at least the fact that  $r$  is bounded by -1 and 1 is implied from this observation.

---

### 9.3.2 Geometric Transformations of Points

For certain square matrices of size  $m$  by  $m$ , matrix multiplication can be thought of as an application of the corresponding geometrical transformation.

Let  $\mathbf{X}$  be a matrix of shape  $n$  by  $m$ , which we treat as representing the coordinates of  $n$  points in an  $m$ -dimensional space. For instance, if we are given a diagonal matrix:

$$\mathbf{S} = \text{diag}(s_1, s_2, \dots, s_m) = \begin{bmatrix} s_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & s_2 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & s_m \end{bmatrix},$$

then  $\mathbf{XS}$  represents *scaling* (stretching) with respect to the axes of the coordinate system in use, because:

$$\mathbf{XS} = \begin{bmatrix} s_1 x_{1,1} & s_2 x_{1,2} & \dots & s_m x_{1,m} \\ s_1 x_{2,1} & s_2 x_{2,2} & \dots & s_m x_{2,m} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ s_1 x_{n-1,1} & s_2 x_{n-1,2} & \dots & s_m x_{n-1,m} \\ s_1 x_{n,1} & s_2 x_{n,2} & \dots & s_m x_{n,m} \end{bmatrix}.$$

In **numpy** this can be implemented without actually referring to matrix multiplication; a notation like `X * np.array([s1, s2, ..., sm]).reshape(1, -1)` will suffice (element-wise multiplication and proper shape broadcasting).

Furthermore, if  $\mathbf{Q}$  is an *orthonormal* matrix, i.e., a square matrix whose columns and rows are unit vectors (normalised), all orthogonal to each other, then  $\mathbf{XQ}$  represents a combination of rotations and reflections.

Orthonormal matrices are sometimes simply referred to as orthogonal ones.

**Important:** By definition, a matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  is *orthonormal* if and only if  $\mathbf{Q}^T \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{Q}^T = \mathbf{I}$ . It is due to the  $\cos(\pi/2) = \cos(-\pi/2) = 0$  interpretation of the dot products of normalised orthogonal vectors.

In particular, for any angle  $\alpha$ , the matrix representing rotations in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,

$$\mathbf{R}(\alpha) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & \sin \alpha \\ -\sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix},$$

is orthonormal (which can be easily verified using the basic trigonometric equalities).

Furthermore,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

represent the two reflections, one against the x- and the other against the y-axis, respectively. Both are orthonormal matrices as well.

Consider a dataset  $\mathbf{X}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ :

```
np.random.seed(12345)
X = np.random.randn(10000, 2) * 0.25
```

and its scaled, rotated, and translated (shifted) version

$$\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \frac{\pi}{6} & \sin \frac{\pi}{6} \\ -\sin \frac{\pi}{6} & \cos \frac{\pi}{6} \end{bmatrix} + [3 \ 2].$$

```
t = np.array([3, 2])
S = np.diag([2, 0.5])
S
## array([[2. , 0. ],
##        [0. , 0.5]])
alpha = np.pi/6
Q = np.array([
    [np.cos(alpha), np.sin(alpha)],
    [-np.sin(alpha), np.cos(alpha)]
])
Q
## array([[ 0.8660254,  0.5        ],
##        [-0.5        ,  0.8660254]])
Y = X @ S @ Q + t
```

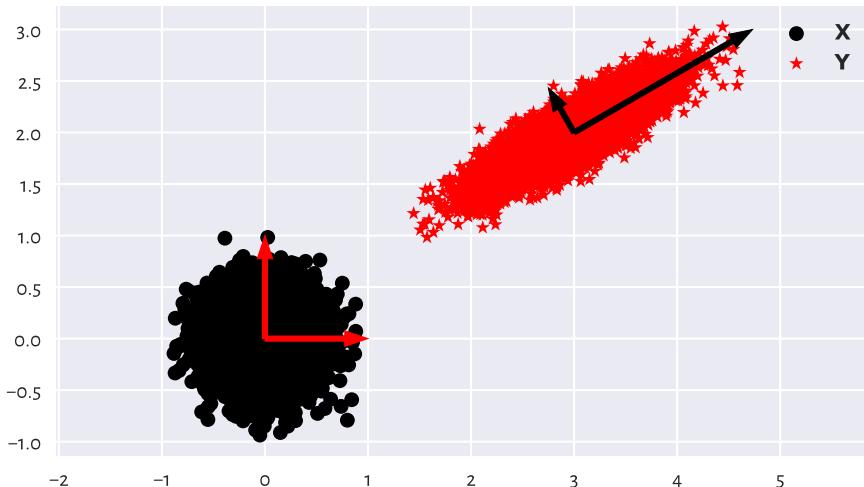


Figure 9.17: A dataset and its scaled, rotated, and shifted version

We can consider  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{XSQ} + \mathbf{t}$  a version of  $\mathbf{X}$  in a new coordinate system (basis), see

**Figure 9.17.** Each column in the transformed matrix is a shifted linear combination of the columns in the original matrix:

$$\mathbf{y}_{\cdot,j} = t_j + \sum_{k=1}^m (s_{k,k} q_{k,j}) \mathbf{x}_{\cdot,k}.$$

Computing such linear combinations of columns is natural during a dataset's pre-processing step, especially if they are on the same scale or they are unitless. Actually, the standardisation itself is a form of scaling and translation.

**Exercise 9.11** Assume that we have a dataset with two columns, giving the number of apples and the number of oranges in a fresh veggie market clients' baskets. What kind of orthonormal and scaling transforms should be applied to obtain a matrix bearing the total number of fruits and surplus apples (e.g., a row  $(4, 7)$  should be converted to  $(11, -3)$ )?

### 9.3.3 Matrix Inverse

The *inverse* of a square matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  (if it exists) is denoted with  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  – it is the matrix fulfilling the identity

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}.$$

Noting that the identity matrix  $\mathbf{I}$  is the neutral element of the matrix multiplication, the above is thus the analogue of the inverse of a scalar: something like  $3 \cdot 3^{-1} = 3 \cdot \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{3} \cdot 3 = 1$ .

**Important:** For any invertible matrices of admissible shapes, it might be shown that the following noteworthy properties hold:

- $(\mathbf{A}^{-1})^T = (\mathbf{A}^T)^{-1}$ ,
- $(\mathbf{AB})^{-1} = \mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ ,
- a matrix equality  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{BC}$  holds if and only if  $\mathbf{AC}^{-1} = \mathbf{BC}\mathbf{C}^{-1} = \mathbf{B}$ ; this is also equivalent to  $\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{BC} = \mathbf{C}$ .

Matrix inverse allows us to identify the inverses of geometrical transformations. Knowing that  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{XSQ} + \mathbf{t}$ , we can recreate the original matrix by applying:

$$\mathbf{X} = (\mathbf{Y} - \mathbf{t})(\mathbf{SQ})^{-1} = (\mathbf{Y} - \mathbf{t})\mathbf{Q}^{-1}\mathbf{S}^{-1}.$$

It is worth knowing that if  $\mathbf{S} = \text{diag}(s_1, s_2, \dots, s_m)$  is a diagonal matrix, then its inverse is  $\mathbf{S}^{-1} = \text{diag}(1/s_1, 1/s_2, \dots, 1/s_m)$ .

Furthermore, the inverse of an orthonormal matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  is always equal to its transpose,  $\mathbf{Q}^{-1} = \mathbf{Q}^T$ .

Luckily, we will not be inverting other matrices in this introductory course.

Let us verify this numerically (testing equality up to some inherent round-off error):

```
np.allclose(X, (Y-t) @ Q.T @ np.diag(1/np.diag(S)))
## True
```

### 9.3.4 Singular Value Decomposition

It turns out that given any real  $n$ -by- $m$  matrix  $\mathbf{Y}$  with  $n \geq m$ , we can find a very interesting scaling and orthonormal transforms that, when applied on a dataset whose columns are already normalised, yield exactly  $\mathbf{Y}$ .

Namely, the singular value decomposition (SVD in the so-called compact form) is a factorisation

$$\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{Q},$$

where:

- $\mathbf{U}$  is an  $n$ -by- $m$  semi-orthonormal matrix (its columns are orthonormal vectors; it holds  $\mathbf{U}^T\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}$ );
- $\mathbf{S}$  is an  $m$ -by- $m$  diagonal matrix such that  $s_{1,1} \geq s_{2,2} \geq \dots \geq s_{m,m} \geq 0$ ;
- $\mathbf{Q}$  is an  $m$ -by- $m$  orthonormal matrix.

**Important:** In data analysis, we usually apply the SVD on matrices that have already been centred (so that their column means are all 0).

```
import scipy.linalg
n = Y.shape[0]
Y_centred = Y - np.mean(Y, axis=0)
U, s, Q = scipy.linalg.svd(Y_centred, full_matrices=False)
```

And now:

```
U[:6, :] # preview first few rows
## array([[-0.00195072,  0.00474569],
##        [-0.00510625, -0.00563582],
##        [ 0.01986719,  0.01419324],
##        [ 0.00104386,  0.00281853],
##        [ 0.00783406,  0.01255288],
##        [ 0.01025205, -0.0128136 ]])
```

The norms of all the columns in  $\mathbf{U}$  are all equal to 1 (and hence standard deviations are  $1/\sqrt{n}$ ), thus they are on the same scale:

```
np.std(U, axis=0), 1/np.sqrt(n) # compare
## (array([0.01, 0.01]), 0.01)
```

Furthermore, they are orthogonal: their dot products are all equal to 0. Regarding what we have said about Pearson's linear correlation coefficients and its relation to dot products of normalised vectors, we imply that the columns in  $\mathbf{U}$  are not linearly correlated – they form *independent* dimensions.

Now  $\mathbf{S} = \text{diag}(s_1, \dots, s_m)$ , with the elements on the diagonal being

```
s
## array([49.72180455, 12.5126241])
```

is used to scale each column in  $\mathbf{U}$ . The fact that the elements on the diagonal are ordered decreasingly means that the first column in  $\mathbf{US}$  has the greatest standard deviation, the second column has the second greatest variability, and so forth.

```
S = np.diag(s)
US = U @ S
np.std(US, axis=0) # equal to s/np.sqrt(n)
## array([0.49721805, 0.12512624])
```

Multiplying  $\mathbf{US}$  by  $\mathbf{Q}$  simply rotates and/or reflects the dataset. This brings  $\mathbf{US}$  to a new coordinate system where, by construction, the dataset projected onto the direction determined by the first row in  $\mathbf{Q}$ , i.e.,  $\mathbf{q}_{1\cdot}$  has the largest variance, projection onto  $\mathbf{q}_{2\cdot}$  has the second largest variance, and so on.

```
Q
## array([[ 0.86781968,  0.49687926],
##        [-0.49687926,  0.86781968]])
```

This is why we refer to the rows in  $\mathbf{Q}$  as *principal directions* or *components*. Their scaled versions (proportional to the standard deviations along them) are depicted in Figure 9.18. Note that this way we have more or less recreated the steps needed to construct  $\mathbf{Y}$  from  $\mathbf{X}$  above (by the way we generated  $\mathbf{X}$ , we expect it to have linearly uncorrelated columns; yet,  $\mathbf{X}$  and  $\mathbf{U}$  have different column variances).

```
plt.plot(Y_centred[:, 0], Y_centred[:, 1], "o")
plt.arrow(
    0, 0, Q[0, 0]*s[0]/np.sqrt(n), Q[0, 1]*s[0]/np.sqrt(n),
    width=0.02, color="red", length_includes_head=True, zorder=2)
plt.arrow(
    0, 0, Q[1, 0]*s[1]/np.sqrt(n), Q[1, 1]*s[1]/np.sqrt(n),
    width=0.02, color="red", length_includes_head=True, zorder=2)
plt.show()
```

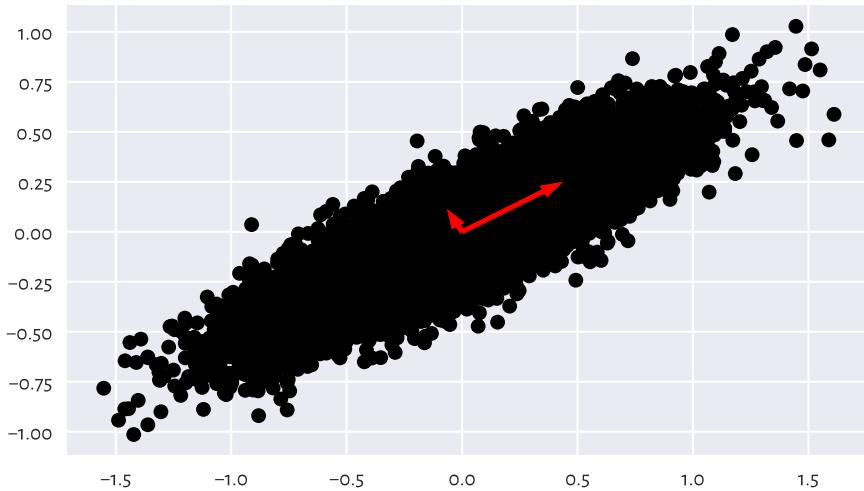


Figure 9.18: Principal directions of an example dataset (scaled so that they are proportional to the standard deviations along them)

### 9.3.5 Dimensionality Reduction with SVD

Let us consider the following example three dimensional dataset.

```
chainlink = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/clustering/fcps_chainlink.csv")
```

As we have told in [Section 7.4](#), plotting is always done on a 2-dimensional surface (be it the computer screen or book page), therefore we can look at the dataset only from one *angle* at a time.

In particular, a scatterplot matrix only depicts the dataset from the perspective of the axes of the Cartesian coordinate system (standard basis), see [Figure 9.19](#).

```
sns.pairplot(data=pd.DataFrame(chainlink))
# plt.show() # not needed :/
```

These viewpoints by no means must reveal the true geometric structure of the dataset. We know that we can actually rotate the virtual camera and find some more *interesting* angle. It turns out that our dataset represents two nonintersecting rings, hopefully visible [Figure 9.20](#).

```
fig = plt.figure()
ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 3, 1, projection="3d", facecolor="#ffff00")
ax.scatter(chainlink[:, 0], chainlink[:, 1], chainlink[:, 2])
```

(continues on next page)

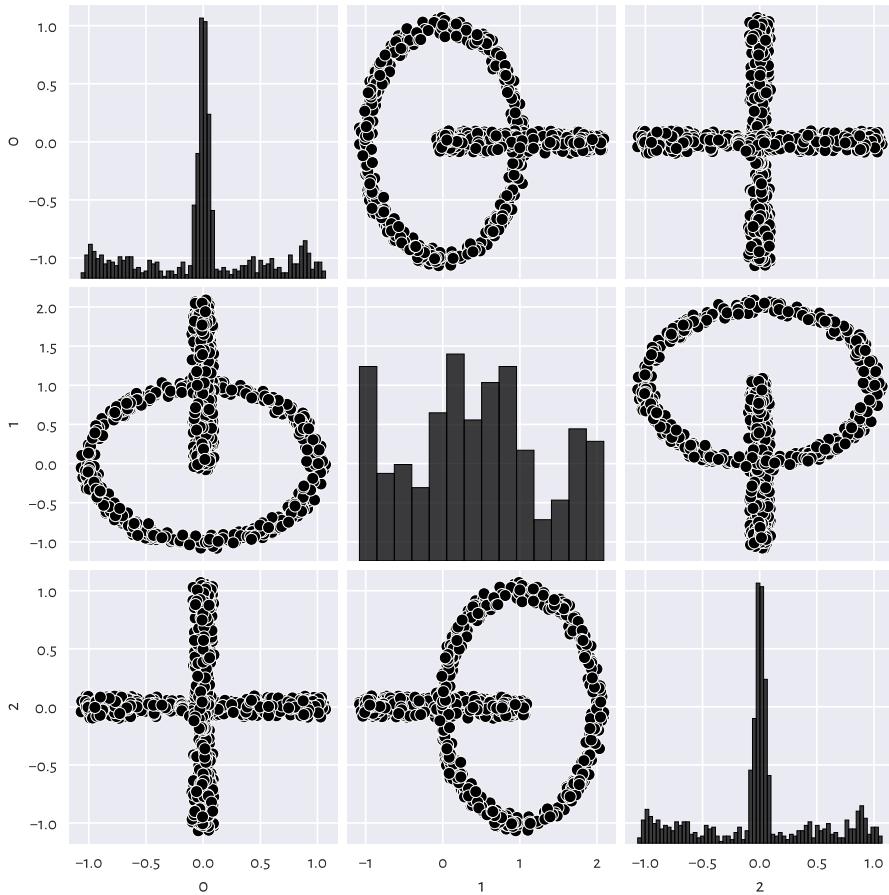


Figure 9.19: Views from the perspective of the main axes

(continued from previous page)

```
ax.view_init(elev=45, azim=45, vertical_axis="z")
ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 3, 2, projection="3d", facecolor="#ffff00ff")
ax.scatter(chainlink[:, 0], chainlink[:, 1], chainlink[:, 2])
ax.view_init(elev=37, azim=0, vertical_axis="z")
ax = fig.add_subplot(1, 3, 3, projection="3d", facecolor="#ffff00ff")
ax.scatter(chainlink[:, 0], chainlink[:, 1], chainlink[:, 2])
ax.view_init(elev=10, azim=150, vertical_axis="z")
plt.show()
```

It turns out that we may find (one of the many) such an noteworthy viewpoint using the SVD. Namely, we can perform the decomposition of a centred dataset which we

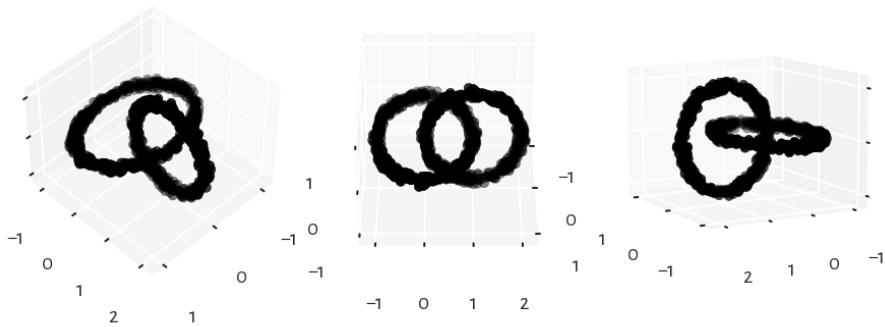


Figure 9.20: Different views on the same dataset

denote with  $\mathbf{Y}$ :

$$\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{USQ}$$

```
import scipy.linalg
Y_centered = chainlink-np.mean(chainlink, axis=0)
U, s, Q = scipy.linalg.svd(Y_centered, full_matrices=False)
```

Then, considering its rotated/reflected version

$$\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{YQ}^{-1} = \mathbf{US}$$

we know that its first column has the highest variance. Furthermore, the second column has the second highest variability, and so on. It might indeed be worth to look at that dataset from that *most informative* perspective.

Figure 9.21 gives the scatter plot for  $\mathbf{t}_{:,1}$  and  $\mathbf{t}_{:,2}$ . Maybe this does not reveal the true geometric structure of the dataset (no single two-dimensional projection would do that here), but at least it is better than the initial ones (from the pairplot).

```
T2 = U[:, :2] @ np.diag(s[:2]) # the same as (U@np.diag(s))[:, :2]
plt.plot(T2[:, 0], T2[:, 1], "o")
plt.axis("equal")
plt.show()
```

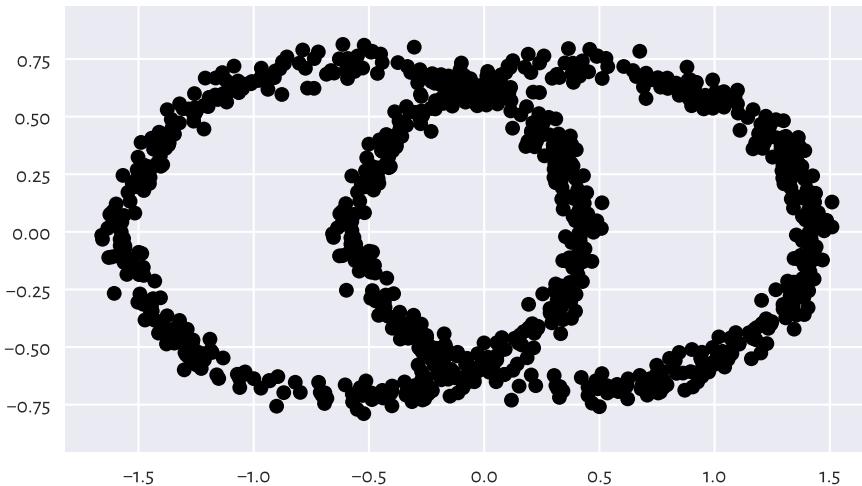


Figure 9.21: The view from the two principal axes

What we have thus done was a kind of *dimensionality reduction* – we have found a viewpoint (in the form of an orthonormal matrix, being a mixture of rotations and reflections) on  $\mathbf{Y}$  such that its orthonormal projection onto the first two axes of the Cartesian coordinate system is the most informative (in terms of having the highest variance, axiswisely).

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) The Eckart–Young–Mirsky theorem states that  $\mathbf{U}_{\cdot,:k} \mathbf{S}_{:k,:k} \mathbf{Q}_{:k,\cdot}$ . (where “: $k$ ” denotes “first  $k$  rows or columns”) is actually the best rank- $k$  approximation of  $\mathbf{Y}$  with respect to both the Frobenius and spectral norms.

---

### 9.3.6 Principal Component Analysis

*Principal component analysis* (PCA) is a fancy name for the whole process of reflecting upon what happens along the projections onto the most variable dimensions. It can be used not only for data visualisation and deduplication, but also feature engineering (as in fact it creates new columns that are linear combinations of existing ones).

Let us consider a few chosen countrywise 2016 Sustainable Society Indices<sup>10</sup>.

```
ssi = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/ssi_2016_indicators.csv",
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>10</sup> <https://ssi.wi.th-koeln.de/>

(continued from previous page)

```

comment="#")
Y = ssi.iloc[:, [3, 5, 13, 15, 19]].to_numpy()
n = Y.shape[0]
Y[:6, :] # preview
## array([[ 9.32      ,  8.13333333,   8.386      ,   8.5757     ,
##          [ 8.74      ,  7.71666667,   7.346      ,   6.8426     ,
##          [ 5.11      ,  4.31666667,   8.788      ,   9.2035     ,
##          [ 9.61      ,  7.93333333,   5.97       ,   5.5232     ,
##          [ 8.95      ,  7.81666667,   8.032      ,   8.2639     ,
##          [10.        ,  8.65       ,   1.         ,   1.         ,
##          [ 9.46249573,  6.2929302 ,  3.91062849,  7.75361284,
##          [ 4.42350654,  9.66401848]])

```

Each index is on the scale from 0 to 10. These are, in this order:

1. Safe Sanitation,
2. Healthy Life,
3. Energy Use,
4. Greenhouse Gases,
5. Gross Domestic Product.

Above we have displayed the data corresponding to the 6 following countries:

```

countries = list(ssi.iloc[:, 0])
countries[:6] # preview
## ['Albania', 'Algeria', 'Angola', 'Argentina', 'Armenia', 'Australia']

```

This is a 5-dimensional dataset, thus we cannot easily visualise it. That the pairplot does not reveal too much is left as an exercise.

Let us thus perform the SVD decomposition of a standardised version of this dataset (recall that centring is necessary, at the very least).

```

Y_std = (Y - np.mean(Y, axis=0))/np.std(Y, axis=0)
U, s, Q = scipy.linalg.svd(Y_std, full_matrices=False)

```

The standard deviations of the data projected onto the consecutive principal components (columns in **US**) are:

```

s/np.sqrt(n)
## array([2.02953531, 0.7529221 , 0.3943008 , 0.31897889, 0.23848286])

```

It is customary to check the ratios of the variances explained by the consecutive principal components, which is a normalised measure of their importances. We can compute them by calling:

```
np.cumsum(s**2)/np.sum(s**2)
## array([0.82380272, 0.93718105, 0.96827568, 0.98862519, 1.])
```

Thus, we may say that the variability within the first two components covers 94% of the variability of the whole dataset. It might thus be a good idea to consider only a 2-dimensional projection of this dataset (actually, we are quite lucky here – or someone has selected these countrywise indices for us in a very clever fashion).

The rows in **Q** give us the so-called *loadings*. They give the coefficients defining the linear combinations of the rows in **Y** that correspond to the principal components.

Let us try to interpret them.

```
np.round(Q[0, :], 2)
## array([-0.43, -0.43,  0.44,  0.45, -0.47])
```

The first row in **Q** consists of similar values, but with different signs. We can consider them a scaled version of the average of Energy Use (column 3), Greenhouse Gases (4), and MINUS Safe Sanitation (1), MINUS Healthy Life (2), MINUS Gross Domestic Product (5). Possibly some kind of a measure of a country's overall eco-unfriendliness?

```
np.round(Q[1, :], 2)
## array([ 0.52,  0.5 ,  0.52,  0.45, -0.02])
```

The second row in **Q** defines a scaled version of the average of Safe Sanitation (1), Healthy Life (2), Energy Use (3), and Greenhouse Gases (4), almost totally ignoring the GDP (5). Should we call it a measure of industrialisation? Something like this. But this naming is just for fun; mathematics – unlike the human brain – does not need our imperfect interpretations/fairy tales to function properly.

In Figure 9.22 is a scatter plot of the countries projected onto the said 2 principal directions. For readability, we only display a few chosen labels.

```
T2 = U[:, :2] @ np.diag(s[:2]) # == Y @ Q[:, :].T
plt.plot(T2[:, 0], T2[:, 1], "o", alpha=0.1)
which = [    # hand-crafted/artisan
    141, 117, 69, 123, 35, 80, 93, 45, 15, 2, 60, 56, 14,
    104, 122, 8, 134, 128, 0, 94, 114, 50, 34, 41, 33, 77,
    64, 67, 152, 135, 148, 99, 149, 126, 111, 57, 20, 63
]
for i in which:
    plt.text(T2[i, 0], T2[i, 1], countries[i], ha="center") #countries[i])
plt.axis("equal")
plt.xlabel("1st principal component (eco-unfriendliness?)")
plt.ylabel("2nd principal component (industrialisation?)")
plt.show()
```

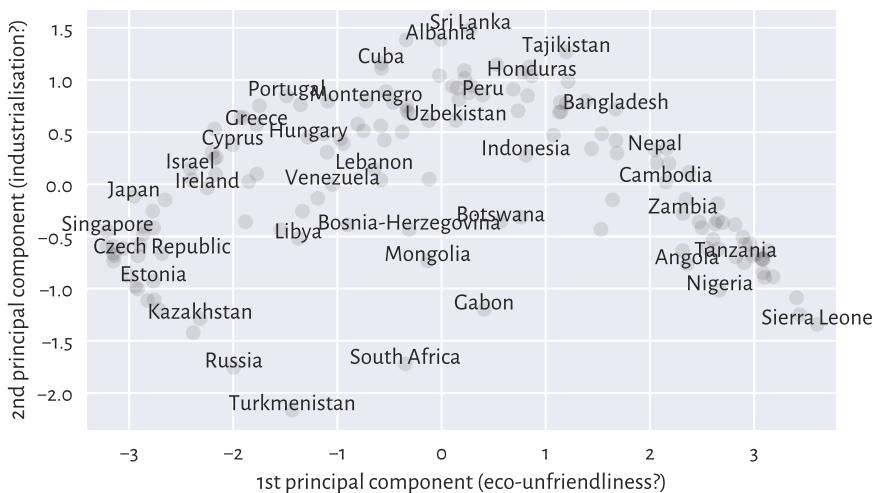


Figure 9.22: An example principal component analysis of countries

This is merely a projection, but it might be an interesting one for some practitioners.

## 9.4 Further Reading

Some now-classic introductory text in statistical learning is [[HTF17]]. We recommend [[Biso06], [BHK20], [DGL96]] for more advanced students.

## 9.5 Exercises

**Exercise 9.12** What does “correlation is not causation” mean?

**Exercise 9.13** What does linear correlation of 0.9 mean? How about rank correlation of 0.9? And linear correlation of 0.0?

**Exercise 9.14** How is the Spearman’s coefficient related to the Pearson’s one?

**Exercise 9.15** How to write a linear model equation using the notion of the dot product?

**Exercise 9.16** State the optimisation problem behind the least squares fitting of linear models.

**Exercise 9.17** What are the different ways of the numerical summarising of residuals?

**Exercise 9.18** Why is it important for the residuals to be homoscedastic?

**Exercise 9.19** Is a more complex model always better?

**Exercise 9.20** Why should extrapolation be handled with care?

**Exercise 9.21** What is the difference between a train-test and a train-validate-test split?

**Exercise 9.22** Why did we say that `scikit-learn` should be used carefully by novice users?

**Exercise 9.23** What is a condition number of the model matrix and why it should always be checked?

**Exercise 9.24** What is the geometrical interpretation of the dot product of two normalised vectors?

**Exercise 9.25** How to verify if two vectors are orthogonal?

**Exercise 9.26** What is an orthonormal projection? What is the inverse of an orthonormal matrix?

**Exercise 9.27** What is the inverse of a diagonal matrix?

**Exercise 9.28** Characterise the general properties of the three matrices obtained by performing the singular value decomposition of a given matrix of shape n-by-m.

**Exercise 9.29** How to obtain the first principal component of a given centred matrix?

**Exercise 9.30** How to compute the ratios of the variances explained by the consecutive principal components?

---

## **Part IV**

# **Heterogeneous Data**



## *Introducing Data Frames*

---

**numpy** arrays are an extremely versatile tool for performing data analysis and other numerical computations computations of various kinds. Although theoretically possible otherwise, in practice we only store elements of the same type therein, most often numbers.

**pandas**<sup>1</sup> [[McK17]] is amongst over one hundred thousand<sup>2</sup> of open-source packages and repositories that use **numpy** to provide additional data wrangling functionality. It was originally written by Wes McKinney and was heavily inspired by the `data.frame`<sup>3</sup> objects in S and R as well as tables in relational (think: SQL) databases and spreadsheets.

It is customary to load this package with the following alias:

```
import pandas as pd
```

The **pandas** package delivers a few classes, of which the most important are:

- `DataFrame` – for representing tabular data (matrix-like) with columns of possibly different types, in particular a mix of numerical and categorical variables,
- `Series` – vector-like objects for representing individual columns,
- `Index` – vector-like (usually) objects for labelling individual rows and columns of `DataFrames` and items in `Series` objects,

together with many methods for:

- transforming/aggregating/processing data, also in groups determined by categorical variables or products thereof,
- reshaping (e.g., from wide to long format) and joining datasets,
- importing/exporting data from/to various sources and formats, e.g., CSV and HDF5 files or relational databases,
- handling missing data,

which we introduce in this and further chapters.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://pandas.pydata.org/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://libraries.io/pypi/numpy>

<sup>3</sup> Data frames were first introduced in the 1991 version of the S language [[CH91]].

## 10.1 Creating Data Frames

**Important:** Let us repeat: `pandas` is built on top of `numpy` and most objects therein can be processed by `numpy` functions as well. Other functions (e.g., in `seaborn` or `sklearn`) will be accepting both `DataFrame` and `ndarray` objects, but will be converting the former to the latter automatically to enable data processing using fast C/C++/Fortran routines. What we have learnt so far still applies. But there is of course more, hence this part.

Data frames can be created, amongst others, using the `DataFrame` class constructor, which can be fed, for example, with a `numpy` matrix:

```
np.random.seed(123)
pd.DataFrame(
    np.random.rand(4, 3),
    columns=["a", "b", "c"]
)
##           a         b         c
## 0  0.696469  0.286139  0.226851
## 1  0.551315  0.719469  0.423106
## 2  0.980764  0.684830  0.480932
## 3  0.392118  0.343178  0.729050
```

Notice that rows and columns are labelled (and how readable that is).

A dictionary of vector-like objects of equal lengths is another common option:

```
np.random.seed(123)
pd.DataFrame(dict(
    u=np.round(np.random.rand(5), 2),
    v=[True, True, False, False, True],
    w=["A", "B", "C", "D", "E"],
    x=["spam", "spam", "bacon", "spam", "eggs"]
))
##           u      v   w     x
## 0  0.70  True   A  spam
## 1  0.29  True   B  spam
## 2  0.23 False   C bacon
## 3  0.55 False   D  spam
## 4  0.72  True   E  eggs
```

This illustrates the possibility of having columns of different types.

**Exercise 10.1** Check out the `pandas.DataFrame.from_dict` and `pandas.DataFrame.from_records` methods in the documentation<sup>4</sup>. Use them to create some example data frames.

Further, data frames can be read from files in different formats, for instance, CSV:

```
body = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
body.head() # display first few rows (5 by default)
##   BMXWT  BMXHT  BMXARML  BMXLEG  BMXARMC  BMXHIP  BMXWAIST
## 0    97.1   160.2     34.7    40.8     35.8    126.1    117.9
## 1    91.1   152.7     33.5    33.0     38.5    125.5    103.1
## 2    73.0   161.2     37.4    38.0     31.8    106.2     92.0
## 3    61.7   157.4     38.0    34.7     29.0    101.0     90.5
## 4    55.4   154.6     34.6    34.0     28.3     92.5     73.2
```

Reading from URLs and local files (compare Section 13.6.1) is of course supported.

**Exercise 10.2** Check out the other `pandas.read_*` functions in the `pandas` documentation – some of which we shall be discussing later.

### 10.1.1 Data Frames are Matrix-Like

Data frames are modelled through `numpy` matrices, hence we can feel quite at home with them.

For example, given:

```
np.random.seed(123)
df = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    u=np.round(np.random.rand(5), 2),
    v=[True, True, False, False, True],
    w=["A", "B", "C", "D", "E"],
    x=["spam", "spam", "bacon", "spam", "eggs"]
))
df
##      u      v      w      x
## 0  0.70  True    A  spam
## 1  0.29  True    B  spam
## 2  0.23 False   C bacon
## 3  0.55 False   D  spam
## 4  0.72  True   E  eggs
```

it is easy to fetch the number of rows and columns:

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://pandas.pydata.org/docs/>

```
df.shape
## (5, 4)
```

or the type of each column:

```
df.dtypes
## u      float64
## v      bool
## w      object
## x      object
## dtype: object
```

Recall that arrays are equipped with the `dtype` slot.

### 10.1.2 Series

There is a separate class for storing individual data frame columns: it is called `Series`.

```
s = df.loc[:, "u"] # extract the `u` column; alternatively: d.u
s
## 0    0.70
## 1    0.29
## 2    0.23
## 3    0.55
## 4    0.72
## Name: u, dtype: float64
```

A data frame with one column is printed out slightly differently:

```
s.to_frame()
##      u
## 0  0.70
## 1  0.29
## 2  0.23
## 3  0.55
## 4  0.72
```

Indexing will of course be discussed later.

**Important:** It is crucial to know when we are dealing with a `Series` and when with a `DataFrame` object, because each of them defines a slightly different set of methods.

For example:

```
s.mean()
## 0.49800000000000005
```

refers to `pandas.Series.mean` (which returns a scalar), whereas

```
df.mean(numeric_only=True)
## u      0.498
## v      0.600
## dtype: float64
```

uses `pandas.DataFrame.mean` (which yields a `Series`).

**Exercise 10.3** Look up the two methods in the `pandas` manual. Note that their argument list is slightly different.

`Series` are wrappers around `numpy` arrays.

```
s.values
## array([0.7 , 0.29, 0.23, 0.55, 0.72])
```

Most importantly, `numpy` functions can be called directly on them:

```
np.mean(s)
## 0.49800000000000005
```

Hence, what we have covered in the part dealing with vector processing still holds for data frame columns as well (there will be more, stay tuned).

`Series` can also be *named*.

```
s.name
## 'u'
```

This is convenient when we convert from/to a data frame.

```
s.rename("spam").to_frame()
##    spam
## 0  0.70
## 1  0.29
## 2  0.23
## 3  0.55
## 4  0.72
```

### 10.1.3 Index

Another important class is `Index`, which is used for encoding the row and column names in a data frame:

```
df.index # row labels
## RangeIndex(start=0, stop=5, step=1)
```

The above represents a sequence (0, 1, 2, 3, 4).

```
df.columns # column labels
## Index(['u', 'v', 'w', 'x'], dtype='object')
```

Also, we can label the individual elements in `Series` objects:

```
s.index
## RangeIndex(start=0, stop=5, step=1)
```

A quite frequent operation that we will be applying to make a data frame column act as a vector of row labels is implemented in the `set_index` method for data frames:

```
df2 = df.set_index("x")
df2
##           u      v   w
## x
## spam    0.70  True  A
## spam    0.29  True  B
## bacon   0.23 False  C
## spam    0.55 False  D
## eggs    0.72  True  E
```

This `Index` object is named:

```
df2.index.name
## 'x'
```

which is handy when we decide that we want to convert the vector of row labels back to a standalone column:

```
df2.reset_index()
##       x      u      v   w
## 0  spam  0.70  True  A
## 1  spam  0.29  True  B
## 2 bacon  0.23 False  C
## 3  spam  0.55 False  D
## 4  eggs  0.72  True  E
```

There is also an option to get rid of the current `.index` and to replace it with the default label sequence, i.e., 0, 1, 2, ...:

```
df2.reset_index(drop=True)
##      u      v   w
## 0  0.70  True  A
## 1  0.29  True  B
## 2  0.23 False  C
## 3  0.55 False  D
## 4  0.72  True  E
```

**Important:** In due course, we will be calling `df.reset_index(drop=True)` quite frequently, sometimes more than once in a single chain of commands.

**Exercise 10.4** Use the `pandas.DataFrame.rename` method to change the name of the `u` column in `df` to `spam`.

Also, a *hierarchical* index – one that is comprised of more than two levels – is possible:

```
df.sort_values("x", ascending=False).set_index(["x", "v"])
##           u   w
## x      v
## spam  True  0.70  A
##       True  0.29  B
##       False 0.55  D
## eggs  True  0.72  E
## bacon False  0.23  C
```

Note that a group of three consecutive `spams` does not have the labels repeated – this is for increased readability.

**Important:** We will soon see that hierarchical indexes might arise after aggregating data in groups (via the `groupby` method).

For example<sup>5</sup>:

```
nhanes = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
res = nhanes.groupby(["RIAGENDR", "DMDEDUC2"])["BMXBMI"].mean()
res # BMI by gender and education
## RIAGENDR DMDEDUC2
## 1             1.0        28.765244
```

(continues on next page)

<sup>5</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P\\_DEMO.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P_DEMO.htm)

(continued from previous page)

```

##          2.0    28.534737
##          3.0    29.637793
##          4.0    30.323158
##          5.0    28.689736
##          9.0    28.080000
## 2         1.0    30.489032
##          2.0    31.251247
##          3.0    30.969200
##          4.0    31.471476
##          5.0    28.891357
##          7.0    30.200000
##          9.0    33.950000
## Name: BMXBMI, dtype: float64

```

But let us fret not, as there is always:

```

res.reset_index()
##      RIAGENDR DMDEDUC2   BMXBMI
## 0         1     1.0  28.765244
## 1         1     2.0  28.534737
## 2         1     3.0  29.637793
## 3         1     4.0  30.323158
## 4         1     5.0  28.689736
## 5         1     9.0  28.080000
## 6         2     1.0  30.489032
## 7         2     2.0  31.251247
## 8         2     3.0  30.969200
## 9         2     4.0  31.471476
## 10        2     5.0  28.891357
## 11        2     7.0  30.200000
## 12        2     9.0  33.950000

```

---

## 10.2 Aggregating Data Frames

Here is an example data frame:

```

np.random.seed(123)
d = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    u = np.round(np.random.rand(5), 2),
    v = np.round(np.random.randn(5), 2),

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
w = ["spam", "bacon", "spam", "eggs", "sausage"]
), index=["a", "b", "c", "d", "e"])
d
##      u      v      w
## a  0.70  0.32    spam
## b  0.29 -0.05   bacon
## c  0.23 -0.20    spam
## d  0.55  1.98    eggs
## e  0.72 -1.62  sausage
```

First, all **numpy** functions can be applied directly on individual columns (i.e., objects of type `Series`), as the latter are, after all, vector-like.

```
np.quantile(d.loc[:, "u"], [0, 0.5, 1])
## array([0.23, 0.55, 0.72])
```

For more details on the `loc[...]`-type indexing, see below. By then, the meaning of the above should be clear from the context.

Most **numpy** functions also work if they are fed with data frames, but we will need to extract the numeric matrix columns manually.

```
np.quantile(d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]], [0, 0.5, 1], axis=0)
## array([[ 0.23, -1.62],
##        [ 0.55, -0.05],
##        [ 0.72,  1.98]])
```

Sometimes the results will automatically be coerced to a `Series` object with `index` slot set appropriately:

```
np.mean(d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]], axis=0)
## u      0.498
## v      0.086
## dtype: float64
```

Many operations, for convenience, have also been implemented as methods for the `Series` and `DataFrame` classes, e.g., `mean`, `median`, `min`, `max`, `quantile`, `var`, `std` (with `ddof=1` by default, interestingly), and `skew`.

```
d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]].mean(numeric_only=True)
## u      0.498
## v      0.086
## dtype: float64
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]].quantile([0, 0.5, 1], numeric_only=True)
##           u         v
## 0.0   0.23 -1.62
## 0.5   0.55 -0.05
## 1.0   0.72  1.98
```

Also note the **describe** method, which returns a few statistics at the same time.

```
d.describe()
##              u            v
## count    5.000000  5.000000
## mean     0.498000  0.086000
## std      0.227969  1.289643
## min      0.230000 -1.620000
## 25%      0.290000 -0.200000
## 50%      0.550000 -0.050000
## 75%      0.700000  0.320000
## max      0.720000  1.980000
```

**Note:** (\*) Let us stress that above we see the corrected for bias (but still only asymptotically unbiased) version of standard deviation (ddof=1), given by  $\sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2}$ , compare [Section 5.1](#).

**Exercise 10.5** Check out the `pandas.DataFrame.agg` method that can apply all aggregating operations from a given list of functions. Write a call equivalent to `d.describe()`.

### 10.3 Transforming Data Frames

By applying the already well-known vectorised mathematical `numpy` functions, we can transform each data cell and return an object of the same type as the input one.

```
np.exp(d.loc[:, "u"])
## a    2.013753
## b    1.336427
## c    1.258600
## d    1.733253
## e    2.054433
## Name: u, dtype: float64
np.exp(d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]])
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
##           u           v
## a  2.013753  1.377128
## b  1.336427  0.951229
## c  1.258600  0.818731
## d  1.733253  7.242743
## e  2.054433  0.197899
```

When applying the binary arithmetic, comparison, and logical operators on an object of class `Series` and a scalar or a `numpy` vector, the operations are performed elementwisely – a style with which we are already familiar.

For instance, here is a standardised version of the `u` column:

```
u = d.loc[:, "u"]
(u - np.mean(u)) / np.std(u)
## a    0.990672
## b   -1.020098
## c   -1.314357
## d    0.255025
## e    1.088759
## Name: u, dtype: float64
```

For two objects of class `Series`, the operators are vectorised somewhat differently from their `numpy` counterparts: they are applied on the pairs of elements having *identical labels* (i.e., labelwisely). Still, if we are transforming the columns that come from the same data frame (and thus having identical `index` slots; this is the most common scenario), there will be no surprises, because this is equivalent to elementwise action. For instance:

```
d.loc[:, "u"] > d.loc[:, "v"]
## a    True
## b    True
## c    True
## d   False
## e    True
## dtype: bool
```

For transforming many numerical columns at once, it is a good idea either to convert them to a numeric matrix explicitly and then use the basic `numpy` functions:

```
uv = d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]].values
uv = (uv-np.mean(uv, axis=0))/np.std(uv, axis=0)
uv
## array([[ 0.99067229,  0.20286225],
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
##      [-1.0200982 , -0.11790285],
##      [-1.3143573 , -0.24794275],
##      [ 0.25502455,  1.64197052],
##      [ 1.08875866, -1.47898717])
```

or to use the `pandas.DataFrame.apply` method which invokes a given function on each column separately:

```
def standardise(x): return (x-np.mean(x))/np.std(x)
uv = d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]].apply(standardise)
uv
##           u          v
## a  0.990672  0.202862
## b -1.020098 -0.117903
## c -1.314357 -0.247943
## d  0.255025  1.641971
## e  1.088759 -1.478987
```

In both cases, we can then write:

```
d.loc[:, ["u", "v"]] = uv
```

to replace the old content with the transformed one.

Also, new columns can be added based on transformed versions of the existing ones:

```
d.loc[:, "uv_squared"] = (d.loc[:, "u"] * d.loc[:, "v"])**2
d
##           u          v          w    uv_squared
## a  0.990672  0.202862   spam  0.040389
## b -1.020098 -0.117903 bacon  0.014465
## c -1.314357 -0.247943   spam  0.106201
## d  0.255025  1.641971   eggs  0.175346
## e  1.088759 -1.478987 sausage 2.592938
```

---

## 10.4 Indexing Series Objects

Recall that each `DataFrame` and `Series` object is equipped with a slot called `index`, which is an object of class `Index` (or subclass thereof), giving the row and element labels, respectively. It turns out that we may apply the `index` operator, `[...]`, to subset these objects not only through the `indexers` known from the `numpy` part (e.g., numerical ones,

i.e., by position) but also ones that pinpoint the items via their labels. That is quite a lot of index-ing.

Let us study different forms thereof in very detail.

In this section we play with two example objects of class `Series`:

```
np.random.seed(123)
b = pd.Series(np.round(np.random.uniform(0,1,10),2))
b.index = np.random.permutation(np.arange(0:10])
b
## 2    0.70
## 1    0.29
## 8    0.23
## 7    0.55
## 9    0.72
## 4    0.42
## 5    0.98
## 6    0.68
## 3    0.48
## 0    0.39
## dtype: float64
c = b.copy()
c.index = list("abcdefghijkl")
c
## a    0.70
## b    0.29
## c    0.23
## d    0.55
## e    0.72
## f    0.42
## g    0.98
## h    0.68
## i    0.48
## j    0.39
## dtype: float64
```

They consist of the same values, in the same order, but have different labels (`.index` slots). In particular, `b`'s labels are integers which *do not* match the physical element positions (where 0 would denote the first element, etc.).

---

**Important:** For `numpy` vectors, we had four different indexing schemes: by scalar (extracts an element at given position), slice, integer vector, and logical vector. `Series` objects are *additionally* labelled, therefore they can *additionally* be accessed taking into account the contents of the `.index` slot.

---

### 10.4.1 Do Not Use [...] Directly

Applying the index operator, [...], directly on `Series` is generally not a good idea:

```
b[0]
## 0.39
b[ 0 ]
## 0    0.39
## dtype: float64
```

both do not select the first item, but the item labelled 0.

However:

```
b[0:1] # slice - 0 only
## 2    0.7
## dtype: float64
```

and

```
c[0] # there is no label `0`
## 0.7
```

fall back to position-based indexing.

Confusing? Well, with some self-discipline, the solution is easy. Namely:

**Important:** To stay away from potential problems, we should never apply [...] directly on `Series` objects.

### 10.4.2 loc[...]

To avoid ambiguity, which is what we want, we should be referring to `Series.loc[...]` and `Series.iloc[...]` for label- and position-based filtering, respectively.

And thus:

```
b.loc[0]
## 0.39
```

returns the element labelled 0. On the other hand, `c.loc[0]` will raise a `KeyError`, because `c` consists of character labels only.

Next, we can use lists of labels to select a *subset*.

```
b.loc[ [0, 1, 0] ]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 0    0.39
## 1    0.29
## 0    0.39
## dtype: float64
c.loc[ ["j", "b", "j"] ]
## j    0.39
## b    0.29
## j    0.39
## dtype: float64
```

The result is always of type `Series`.

Slicing behaves differently as the range is *inclusive* at both sides:

```
b.loc[1:7]
## 1    0.29
## 8    0.23
## 7    0.55
## dtype: float64
b.loc[0:4:-1]
## 0    0.39
## 3    0.48
## 6    0.68
## 5    0.98
## 4    0.42
## dtype: float64
c.loc["d":"g"]
## d    0.55
## e    0.72
## f    0.42
## g    0.98
## dtype: float64
```

return all elements between the two indicated labels.

Be careful that if there are repeated labels, then we will be returning all the matching items:

```
d = pd.Series([1, 2, 3, 4], index=["a", "b", "a", "c"])
d.loc["a"]
## a    1
## a    3
## dtype: int64
```

The result is not a scalar but a `Series` object.

### 10.4.3 `iloc[...]`

Here are some examples of position-based indexing:

```
b.iloc[0] # the same: c.iloc[0]  
## 0.7
```

returns the first element.

```
b.iloc[1:7] # the same: b.iloc[1:7]  
## 1    0.29  
## 8    0.23  
## 7    0.55  
## 9    0.72  
## 4    0.42  
## 5    0.98  
## dtype: float64
```

returns the 2nd, 3rd, ..., 7th element (not including `b.iloc[7]`, i.e., the 8th one).

### 10.4.4 Logical Indexing

Indexing using a logical vector-like object is also available.

We usually will be using `loc[...]` with either a `Series` object of identical `.index` slot as the subsetted object or a logical `numpy` vector.

```
b.loc[(b > 0.4) & (b < 0.6)]  
## 7    0.55  
## 4    0.42  
## 3    0.48  
## dtype: float64
```

For `iloc[...]`, the indexer must be unlabelled, like in, e.g., `b.loc[i.values]`.

---

## 10.5 Indexing Data Frames

### 10.5.1 `loc[...]` and `iloc[...]`

For data frames, `iloc` and `loc` can be used too, but they now require two arguments, serving as row and column selectors.

For example:

```
np.random.seed(123)
d = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    u = np.round(np.random.rand(5), 2),
    v = np.round(np.random.randn(5), 2),
    w = ["spam", "bacon", "spam", "eggs", "sausage"],
    x = [True, False, True, False, True]
), index=["a", "b", "c", "d", "e"])
```

And now:

```
d.loc[d.loc[:, "u"] > 0.5, "u":"w"]
##      u      v      w
## a  0.70  0.32    spam
## d  0.55  1.98    eggs
## e  0.72 -1.62  sausage
```

selects the rows where the values in the u column are greater than 0.5 and then returns all columns between u and w.

Furthermore,

```
d.iloc[:3, :].loc[:, ["u", "w"]]
##      u      w
## a  0.70    spam
## b  0.29   bacon
## c  0.23    spam
```

fetches the first 3 rows (by position – iloc is necessary) and then selects two indicated columns.

**Important:** We can write d.u as a shorter version of d.loc[:, "u"]. This improves the readability in contexts such as:

```
d.loc[(d.u >= 0.5) & (d.u <= 0.7), ["u", "w"]]
##      u      w
## a  0.70    spam
## d  0.55    eggs
```

However, this accessor is not universal: we can check this out by considering a data frame featuring a column named, e.g., mean.

**Exercise 10.6** Use `pandas.DataFrame.drop` to select all columns but v in d.

**Exercise 10.7** Use `pandas.Series.isin` (amongst others) to select all rows with spam and bacon on the d's menu.

**Exercise 10.8** In the `tips`<sup>6</sup> dataset, select data on male customers where total bill was in the [10, 20] interval. Also, select data from Saturday and Sunday with tip greater than \$5 from `tips`.

### 10.5.2 Adding Rows and Columns

`loc[...]` can also be used to add new columns to an existing data frame:

```
d.loc[:, "y"] = d.loc[:, "u"]**2 # or d.loc[:, "y"] = d.u**2
d
##      u      v      w      x      y
## a  0.70  0.32    spam  True  0.4900
## b  0.29 -0.05   bacon False  0.0841
## c  0.23 -0.20    spam  True  0.0529
## d  0.55  1.98   eggs False  0.3025
## e  0.72 -1.62  sausage True  0.5184
```

Notation like “`d.new_column = ...`” will not work. As we have said, `loc` and `iloc` are universal, other accessors – not so much.

**Exercise 10.9** Use `pandas.DataFrame.insert` to add a new column not necessarily at the end of `d`.

**Exercise 10.10** Use `pandas.DataFrame.append` to add a few more rows to `d`.

### 10.5.3 Random Sampling

As a simple application of what we have covered so far, let us consider the case of randomly sampling a number of rows from an existing data frame.

For the most basic use cases, we can use the `pandas.DataFrame.sample` method. It includes scenarios such as:

- randomly select 5 rows, without replacement,
- randomly select 20% rows, with replacement,
- randomly rearrange all the rows.

For example:

```
body = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_adult_female_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
body.sample(5, random_state=123) # 5 random rows without replacement
##      BMXWT  BMXHT  BMXARML  BMXLEG  BMXARMC  BMXHIP  BMXWAIST
## 4214     58.4   156.2     35.2    34.7     27.2    99.5     77.5
(continues on next page)
```

---

<sup>6</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/other/tips.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/other/tips.csv)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 3361 73.7 161.0 36.5 34.5 29.0 107.6 98.2
## 3759 61.4 164.6 37.5 40.4 26.9 93.5 84.4
## 3733 120.4 158.8 33.5 34.6 40.5 147.2 129.3
## 1121 123.5 157.5 35.5 29.0 50.5 143.0 136.4
```

Notice the `random_state` argument which controls the seed of the random number generator so that we get reproducible results. Alternatively, we could call `numpy.random.seed`.

**Exercise 10.11** Show how the 3 aforementioned scenarios can be implemented manually using `iloc[...]` and `numpy.random.permutation` or `numpy.random.choice`.

In machine learning practice, as we shall see later, we are used to training and evaluating machine learning models on different (mutually disjoint) subsets of the whole data frame.

For instance, we might be interested in performing the so-called *train/test split*, where 80% (or 60% or 70%) of the randomly selected rows would constitute the first new data frame and the remaining 20% (or 40% or 30%) would go to the second one.

Given a data frame like:

```
x = body.head(10) # this is just an example
x
##   BMXWT  BMXHT  BMXARML  BMXLEG  BMXARMC  BMXHIP  BMXWAIST
## 0  97.1  160.2    34.7   40.8    35.8   126.1   117.9
## 1  91.1  152.7    33.5   33.0    38.5   125.5   103.1
## 2  73.0  161.2    37.4   38.0    31.8   106.2    92.0
## 3  61.7  157.4    38.0   34.7    29.0   101.0    90.5
## 4  55.4  154.6    34.6   34.0    28.3    92.5    73.2
## 5  62.0  144.7    32.5   34.2    29.8   106.7    84.8
## 6  66.2  166.5    37.5   37.6    32.0    96.3    95.7
## 7  75.9  154.5    35.4   37.6    32.7   107.7    98.7
## 8  77.2  159.2    38.5   40.5    35.7   102.0    97.5
## 9  91.6  174.5    36.1   45.9    35.2   121.3   100.3
```

one way to perform the aforementioned split is to generate a random permutation of the set of row indices:

```
np.random.seed(123) # reproducibility matters
idx = np.random.permutation(x.shape[0])
idx
## array([4, 0, 7, 5, 8, 3, 1, 6, 9, 2])
```

And then to pick the first 80% of these indices to construct the data frame number one:

```

k = int(x.shape[0]*0.8)
x.iloc[idx[:k], :]
##   BMXWT  BMXHT  BMXARML  BMXLEG  BMXARMC  BMXHIP  BMXWAIST
## 4   55.4   154.6    34.6    34.0    28.3    92.5    73.2
## 0   97.1   160.2    34.7    40.8    35.8   126.1   117.9
## 7   75.9   154.5    35.4    37.6    32.7   107.7    98.7
## 5   62.0   144.7    32.5    34.2    29.8   106.7    84.8
## 8   77.2   159.2    38.5    40.5    35.7   102.0    97.5
## 3   61.7   157.4    38.0    34.7    29.0   101.0    90.5
## 1   91.1   152.7    33.5    33.0    38.5   125.5   103.1
## 6   66.2   166.5    37.5    37.6    32.0    96.3    95.7

```

and the remaining ones to generate the second dataset:

```

x.iloc[idx[k:], :]
##   BMXWT  BMXHT  BMXARML  BMXLEG  BMXARMC  BMXHIP  BMXWAIST
## 9   91.6   174.5    36.1    45.9    35.2   121.3   100.3
## 2   73.0   161.2    37.4    38.0    31.8   106.2    92.0

```

**Exercise 10.12** In the `wine_quality_all`<sup>7</sup> dataset, leave out all but the white wines. Partition the resulting data frame randomly into three data frames: `wines_train` (60% of the rows), `wines_validate` (another 20% of the rows), and `wines_test` (the remaining 20%).

**Exercise 10.13** Consider the white wines dataset again. Write a function `kfold` which takes a data frame `x` and an integer `k>1` on input. Return a list of data frames resulting in randomly splitting `x` into `k` disjoint chunks of equal (or almost equal if that is not possible) sizes.

#### 10.5.4 Hierarchical Indices (\*)

Consider the following `DataFrame` object with a hierarchical index:

```

np.random.seed(123)
d = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    year = sorted([2023, 2024, 2025]*4),
    quarter = ["Q1", "Q2", "Q3", "Q4"]*3,
    data = np.round(np.random.rand(12), 2)
)).set_index(["year", "quarter"])
d
##                  data
## year quarter
## 2023 Q1      0.70
##       Q2      0.29
##       Q3      0.23

```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>7</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/other/wine\\_quality\\_all.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/other/wine_quality_all.csv)

(continued from previous page)

```
##      Q4      0.55
## 2024 Q1      0.72
##      Q2      0.42
##      Q3      0.98
##      Q4      0.68
## 2025 Q1      0.48
##      Q2      0.39
##      Q3      0.34
##      Q4      0.73
```

The index has both levels named, but this is purely for aesthetic reasons.

Indexing using `loc[...]` by default relates to the first level of the hierarchy:

```
d.loc[2023, :]
##           data
## quarter
## Q1      0.70
## Q2      0.29
## Q3      0.23
## Q4      0.55
d.loc[[2023, 2025], :]
##           data
## year quarter
## 2023 Q1      0.70
##      Q2      0.29
##      Q3      0.23
##      Q4      0.55
## 2025 Q1      0.48
##      Q2      0.39
##      Q3      0.34
##      Q4      0.73
```

To access deeper levels, we can use tuples as indexers:

```
d.loc[(2023, "Q1"), :]
## data    0.7
## Name: (2023, Q1), dtype: float64
d.loc[((2023, "Q1"), (2024, "Q3")), :]
##           data
## year quarter
## 2023 Q1      0.70
## 2024 Q3      0.98
```

In certain scenarios, though, it will probably be much easier to subset a hierarchical in-

dex by using `reset_index` and `set_index` creatively (together with `loc[...]` and `pandas.Series.isin`, etc.).

The `:`` operator for slicing can be used only *directly* within square brackets, but we can always use the `slice` constructor to create them from within any context:

```
d.loc[(slice(None), ["Q1", "Q3"]), :] # `:`, ["Q1", "Q3"]
##           data
## year quarter
## 2023 Q1      0.70
##     Q3      0.23
## 2024 Q1      0.72
##     Q3      0.98
## 2025 Q1      0.48
##     Q3      0.34
d.loc[(slice(None, None, -1), slice("Q2", "Q3")), :] # ::-1, "Q2":"Q3"
##           data
## year quarter
## 2025 Q3      0.34
##     Q2      0.39
## 2024 Q3      0.98
##     Q2      0.42
## 2023 Q3      0.23
##     Q2      0.29
```

---

## 10.6 Further Operations on Data Frames

### 10.6.1 Sorting

Let us consider another example dataset. Here are the yearly (for 2018) average air quality data<sup>8</sup> in the Australian state of Victoria.

```
air = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_means.csv",
    comment="#")
air = (
    air.
    loc[air.param_id.isin(["BPM2.5", "NO2"])].
    reset_index(drop=True)
)
air
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>8</sup> <https://discover.data.vic.gov.au/dataset/epa-air-watch-all-sites-air-quality-hourly-averages-yearly>

(continued from previous page)

```

##           sp_name param_id      value
## 0       Alphington    BPM2.5 7.848758
## 1       Alphington      N02 9.558120
## 2   Altona North      N02 9.467912
## 3     Churchill    BPM2.5 6.391230
## 4     Dandenong      N02 9.800705
## 5     Footscray    BPM2.5 7.640948
## 6     Footscray      N02 10.274531
## 7 Geelong South    BPM2.5 6.502762
## 8 Geelong South      N02 5.681722
## 9   Melbourne CBD    BPM2.5 8.072998
## 10        Moe    BPM2.5 6.427079
## 11 Morwell East    BPM2.5 6.784596
## 12 Morwell South    BPM2.5 6.512849
## 13 Morwell South      N02 5.124430
## 14   Traralgon    BPM2.5 8.024735
## 15   Traralgon      N02 5.776333

```

**sort\_values** is a convenient means to order the rows with respect to one criterion:

```

air.sort_values("value", ascending=False)
##           sp_name param_id      value
## 6     Footscray      N02 10.274531
## 4     Dandenong      N02 9.800705
## 1     Alphington      N02 9.558120
## 2   Altona North      N02 9.467912
## 9   Melbourne CBD    BPM2.5 8.072998
## 14   Traralgon    BPM2.5 8.024735
## 0     Alphington    BPM2.5 7.848758
## 5     Footscray    BPM2.5 7.640948
## 11  Morwell East    BPM2.5 6.784596
## 12  Morwell South    BPM2.5 6.512849
## 7  Geelong South    BPM2.5 6.502762
## 10        Moe    BPM2.5 6.427079
## 3     Churchill    BPM2.5 6.391230
## 15   Traralgon      N02 5.776333
## 8  Geelong South      N02 5.681722
## 13  Morwell South      N02 5.124430

```

Sorting with respect to more criteria is also possible:

```

air.sort_values(["param_id", "value"], ascending=[True, False])
##           sp_name param_id      value
## 9   Melbourne CBD    BPM2.5 8.072998

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

## 14      Traralgon    BPM2.5   8.024735
## 0       Alphington    BPM2.5   7.848758
## 5       Footscray    BPM2.5   7.640948
## 11      Morwell East    BPM2.5   6.784596
## 12      Morwell South    BPM2.5   6.512849
## 7       Geelong South    BPM2.5   6.502762
## 10      Moe        BPM2.5   6.427079
## 3       Churchill    BPM2.5   6.391230
## 6       Footscray     NO2    10.274531
## 4       Dandenong    NO2    9.800705
## 1       Alphington    NO2    9.558120
## 2       Altona North    NO2    9.467912
## 15      Traralgon     NO2    5.776333
## 8       Geelong South    NO2    5.681722
## 13      Morwell South    NO2    5.124430

```

Here, in each group of identical parameters, we get a decreasing order with respect to the value.

**Exercise 10.14** (\*) Compare the ordering with respect to `param_id` and `value` vs `value` and then `param_id`.

**Exercise 10.15** (\*\*) Perform identical reorderings but using only `loc[...]`, `iloc[...]`, and `numpy.argsort`.

**Note:** (\*) `DataFrame.sort_values` unfortunately uses a non-stable algorithm by default (a modified quicksort). If a data frame is sorted with respect to one criterion, and then we reorder it with respect to another one, tied observations are not guaranteed to be listed in the original order:

```
(pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_means.csv",
    comment="#")
    .sort_values("sp_name")
    .sort_values("param_id")
    .set_index("param_id")
    .loc[[ "BPM2.5", "NO2"], :]
    .reset_index())
##   param_id      sp_name     value
## 0    BPM2.5  Melbourne CBD  8.072998
## 1    BPM2.5          Moe  6.427079
## 2    BPM2.5      Footscray  7.640948
## 3    BPM2.5  Morwell East  6.784596
## 4    BPM2.5      Churchill  6.391230
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

## 5   BPM2.5  Morwell South  6.512849
## 6   BPM2.5      Traralgon  8.024735
## 7   BPM2.5    Alphington  7.848758
## 8   BPM2.5  Geelong South  6.502762
## 9     NO2  Morwell South  5.124430
## 10    NO2      Traralgon  5.776333
## 11    NO2  Geelong South  5.681722
## 12    NO2  Altona North  9.467912
## 13    NO2    Alphington  9.558120
## 14    NO2    Dandenong  9.800705
## 15    NO2    Footscray  10.274531

```

We have lost the ordering based on station names in the two subgroups. To switch to a mergesort-like method (`timsort`), we should pass `kind="stable"`.

```

(pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
             "teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_means.csv",
             comment="#")
 .sort_values("sp_name")
 .sort_values("param_id", kind="stable")  # !
 .set_index("param_id")
 .loc[[ "BPM2.5", "NO2"], :]
 .reset_index())
##   param_id      sp_name     value
## 0   BPM2.5    Alphington  7.848758
## 1   BPM2.5    Churchill  6.391230
## 2   BPM2.5    Footscray  7.640948
## 3   BPM2.5  Geelong South  6.502762
## 4   BPM2.5  Melbourne CBD  8.072998
## 5   BPM2.5        Moe  6.427079
## 6   BPM2.5  Morwell East  6.784596
## 7   BPM2.5  Morwell South  6.512849
## 8   BPM2.5      Traralgon  8.024735
## 9     NO2    Alphington  9.558120
## 10    NO2  Altona North  9.467912
## 11    NO2    Dandenong  9.800705
## 12    NO2    Footscray  10.274531
## 13    NO2  Geelong South  5.681722
## 14    NO2  Morwell South  5.124430
## 15    NO2      Traralgon  5.776333

```

---

### 10.6.2 Stacking and Unstacking (Long and Wide Forms)

Let us discuss some further ways to transform data frames, that benefit from, make sense because of, or are possible due to their being able to store data of different types.

The above `air` dataset is in the so-called *long* format, where all measurements are *stacked* one after/below another. Such a form is quite convenient for the purpose of storing data, but not necessarily for all processing tasks, compare [[Wic14]]. Recall from the matrix part that a more natural way would be to have a single *observation* (e.g., data for a measurement station) in each row.

We can *unstack* the `air` data frame (convert to the *wide* format) quite easily:

```
air.set_index(["sp_name", "param_id"]).unstack().loc[:, "value"]
## param_id      BPM2.5      NO2
## sp_name
## Alphington    7.848758  9.558120
## Altona North   NaN        9.467912
## Churchill     6.391230  NaN
## Dandenong     NaN        9.800705
## Footscray      7.640948  10.274531
## Geelong South  6.502762  5.681722
## Melbourne CBD  8.072998  NaN
## Moe            6.427079  NaN
## Morwell East   6.784596  NaN
## Morwell South  6.512849  5.124430
## Traralgon     8.024735  5.776333
```

The missing values are denoted with NaNs (not-a-number), see Section 15.1 for more details. Interestingly, we got a hierarchical index in the columns, hence the `loc[...]` part.

Equivalently:

```
air_wide = air.pivot("sp_name", "param_id", "value").\
    rename_axis(index=None, columns=None)
air_wide
##                  BPM2.5      NO2
## Alphington    7.848758  9.558120
## Altona North   NaN        9.467912
## Churchill     6.391230  NaN
## Dandenong     NaN        9.800705
## Footscray      7.640948  10.274531
## Geelong South  6.502762  5.681722
## Melbourne CBD  8.072998  NaN
## Moe            6.427079  NaN
## Morwell East   6.784596  NaN
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## Morwell South 6.512849 5.124430
## Traralgon     8.024735 5.776333
```

The `rename_axis` part is there so as to get rid of the `name` parts of the `index` and `columns` slots.

The other way around, we can use the `stack` method:

```
air_wide.T.rename_axis(index="location", columns="param").\
    stack().rename("value").reset_index()
#> #>   location      param      value
#> #> 0   BPM2.5    Alphington 7.848758
#> #> 1   BPM2.5    Churchill 6.391230
#> #> 2   BPM2.5    Footscray 7.640948
#> #> 3   BPM2.5    Geelong South 6.502762
#> #> 4   BPM2.5    Melbourne CBD 8.072998
#> #> 5   BPM2.5    Moe        6.427079
#> #> 6   BPM2.5    Morwell East 6.784596
#> #> 7   BPM2.5    Morwell South 6.512849
#> #> 8   BPM2.5    Traralgon 8.024735
#> #> 9   NO2       Alphington 9.558120
#> #> 10  NO2       Altona North 9.467912
#> #> 11  NO2       Dandenong 9.800705
#> #> 12  NO2       Footscray 10.274531
#> #> 13  NO2       Geelong South 5.681722
#> #> 14  NO2       Morwell South 5.124430
#> #> 15  NO2       Traralgon 5.776333
```

We used the data frame transpose (`T`) to get a location-major order (less boring an outcome in this context).

### 10.6.3 Set-Theoretic Operations

Here are two not at all disjoint sets of imaginary persons:

```
A = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
                 "teaching_data/master/marek/some_birth_dates1.csv",
                 comment="#")
A
#> #>           Name BirthDate
#> #> 0   Paitoon Ornwimol 26.06.1958
#> #> 1   Antónia Lata 20.05.1935
#> #> 2   Bertoldo Mallozzi 17.08.1972
#> #> 3   Nedeljko Bukv 19.12.1921
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 4      Micha Kitchen 17.09.1930
## 5      Mefodiy Shachar 01.10.1914
## 6      Paul Meckler 29.09.1968
## 7      Katarzyna Lasko 20.10.1971
## 8      Åge Trelstad 07.03.1935
## 9      Duchanee Panomyaong 19.06.1952
```

and

```
B = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/some_birth_dates2.csv",
    comment="#")
```

B

```
##                  Name BirthDate
## 0      Hushang Naigamwala 25.08.1991
## 1          Zhen Wei 16.11.1975
## 2      Micha Kitchen 17.09.1930
## 3      Jodoc Alwin 16.11.1969
## 4          Igor Mazal 14.05.2004
## 5      Katarzyna Lasko 20.10.1971
## 6      Duchanee Panomyaong 19.06.1952
## 7      Mefodiy Shachar 01.10.1914
## 8      Paul Meckler 29.09.1968
## 9      Noe Tae-Woong 11.07.1970
## 10     Åge Trelstad 07.03.1935
```

In both datasets, there is a single column whose elements uniquely identify each record (i.e., `Name`). In the language of relational databases, we would call it a *primary key*. In such a case, implementing the set-theoretic operations is relatively easy:

$A \cap B$  (intersection) – the rows that are both in  $A$  and in  $B$ :

```
A.loc[A.Name.isin(B.Name), :]
```

```
##                  Name BirthDate
## 4      Micha Kitchen 17.09.1930
## 5      Mefodiy Shachar 01.10.1914
## 6      Paul Meckler 29.09.1968
## 7      Katarzyna Lasko 20.10.1971
## 8      Åge Trelstad 07.03.1935
## 9      Duchanee Panomyaong 19.06.1952
```

$A - B$  (difference) – the rows that are in  $A$  but not in  $B$ :

```
A.loc[~A.Name.isin(B.Name), :]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
##           Name BirthDate
## 0  Paitoon Ornwimol 26.06.1958
## 1      Antónia Lata 20.05.1935
## 2 Bertoldo Mallozzi 17.08.1972
## 3     Nedeljko Bukv 19.12.1921
```

$A \cup B$  (union) – the rows that exist in A or are in B:

```
pd.concat((A, B.loc[~B.Name.isin(A.Name), :]))
##           Name BirthDate
## 0  Paitoon Ornwimol 26.06.1958
## 1      Antónia Lata 20.05.1935
## 2 Bertoldo Mallozzi 17.08.1972
## 3     Nedeljko Bukv 19.12.1921
## 4      Micha Kitchen 17.09.1930
## 5    Mefodiy Shachar 01.10.1914
## 6        Paul Meckler 29.09.1968
## 7   Katarzyna Lasko 20.10.1971
## 8       Åge Trelstad 07.03.1935
## 9 Duchanee Panomyaong 19.06.1952
## 0     Hushang Naigamwala 25.08.1991
## 1         Zhen Wei 16.11.1975
## 3       Jodoc Alwin 16.11.1969
## 4        Igor Mazal 14.05.2004
## 9      Noe Tae-Woong 11.07.1970
```

There are no duplicate rows in the output.

**Exercise 10.16** Determine  $(A \cup B) - (A \cap B) = (A - B) \cup (B - A)$  (symmetric difference).

**Exercise 10.17** (\*) Determine the union, intersection, and difference of the `wine_sample1`<sup>9</sup> and `wine_sample2`<sup>10</sup> datasets, where there is no column uniquely identifying the observations. Hint: consider using `pandas.DataFrame.duplicated` or `pandas.DataFrame.drop_duplicates`.

#### 10.6.4 Joining (Merging)

In database design, it is common to normalise the datasets in order to avoid the duplication of information and pathologies stemming from them (e.g., [[[Data3](#)]]).

**Example 10.18** The above air quality parameters are separately described in another data frame:

---

<sup>9</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/other/wine\\_sample1.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/other/wine_sample1.csv)

<sup>10</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/other/wine\\_sample2.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/other/wine_sample2.csv)

```

param = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_param.csv",
    comment="#")
param.rename(dict(param_std_unit_of_measure="unit"), axis=1)
##   param_id           param_name      unit      param_short_name
## 0     API      Airborne particle index    none  Visibility Reduction
## 1   BPM2.5        BAM Particles < 2.5 micron ug/m3          PM2.5
## 2      CO      Carbon Monoxide      ppm            CO
## 3   HPM10      Hivol PM10 ug/m3          NaN
## 4     NO2      Nitrogen Dioxide     ppb          NO2
## 5      O3       Ozone      ppb            O3
## 6   PM10      TEOM Particles <10micron ug/m3          PM10
## 7  PPM2.5      Partisol PM2.5 ug/m3          NaN
## 8     SO2      Sulfur Dioxide     ppb            SO2

```

We could have stored them alongside the air data frame, but that would be a waste of space.

Also, if we wanted to modify some datum (note, e.g., the annoying double space in `param_name` for `BPM2.5`), we would have to update all the relevant records.

Instead, we can always look the information up by `param_id` and join (merge) the two data frames only if we need it.

Let us discuss the possible join operations by studying the two following data sets:

```

A = pd.DataFrame({
    "x": ["a0", "a1", "a2", "a3"],
    "y": ["b0", "b1", "b2", "b3"]
})
A
##   x   y
## 0 a0 b0
## 1 a1 b1
## 2 a2 b2
## 3 a3 b3

```

and:

```

B = pd.DataFrame({
    "x": ["a0", "a2", "a2", "a4"],
    "z": ["c0", "c1", "c2", "c3"]
})
B
##   x   z
## 0 a0 c0

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 1  a2  c1
## 2  a2  c2
## 3  a4  c3
```

They both have one column somewhat *in common*, x.

The *inner (natural) join* returns the records that have a match in both datasets:

```
pd.merge(A, B, on="x")
##      x    y    z
## 0  a0  b0  c0
## 1  a2  b2  c1
## 2  a2  b2  c2
```

The *left join* of A with B guarantees to return all the records from A, even those which are not matched by anything in B.

```
pd.merge(A, B, how="left", on="x")
##      x    y    z
## 0  a0  b0  c0
## 1  a1  b1  NaN
## 2  a2  b2  c1
## 3  a2  b2  c2
## 4  a3  b3  NaN
```

The *right join* of A with B is the same as the left join of B with A:

```
pd.merge(A, B, how="right", on="x")
##      x    y    z
## 0  a0  b0  c0
## 1  a2  b2  c1
## 2  a2  b2  c2
## 3  a4  NaN  c3
```

Finally, the *full outer join* is the set-theoretic union of the left and the right join:

```
pd.merge(A, B, how="outer", on="x")
##      x    y    z
## 0  a0  b0  c0
## 1  a1  b1  NaN
## 2  a2  b2  c1
## 3  a2  b2  c2
## 4  a3  b3  NaN
## 5  a4  NaN  c3
```

**Exercise 10.19** Join `air_quality_2018_value11` with `air_quality_2018_point12` and `air_quality_2018_param13`.

**Exercise 10.20** Normalise `air_quality_201814` yourself so that you get the three data frames mentioned in the previous exercise (`value`, `point`, `param`).

**Exercise 10.21** (\*) In the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) by the US Centres for Disease Control and Prevention, each participant is uniquely identified by their sequence number (`SEQN`), which is mentioned in numerous datasets, including:

- demographic variables<sup>15</sup>;
- body measures<sup>16</sup>;
- audiometry<sup>17</sup>;
- and many more<sup>18</sup>.

Join a few chosen datasets that are to your liking.

### 10.6.5 ...And (Too) Many More

Looking at the list of methods for the `DataFrame` and `Series` classes in the `pandas` package's documentation<sup>19</sup>, we can see that they are abundant. Together with the object-oriented syntax, we will often find ourselves appreciating the high readability of even quite complex operation chains such as `data.drop_duplicates().groupby(["year", "month"]).mean().reset_index()`.

Nevertheless, in fact, we should admit that the methods are too plentiful – they make an impression that someone was too generous by including a list of all the possible *verbs* related to data analysis, even if they can be easily expressed as a combination of 2–3 simpler operations. Therefore, in order to prevent the reader from being overloaded with too much new information, below we will be discussing only the most noteworthy features that often appear in data wrangling scenarios.

As strong advocates of minimalism (which is more environmentally friendly and sustainable), not rarely will we be more eager to fall back to the hand-crafted combinations of the more basic (universal) building blocks from `numpy` and `scipy` instead. This is also in line with our putting emphasis on developing *transferable* skills – as Python

<sup>11</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/air\\_quality\\_2018\\_value.csv.gz](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_value.csv.gz)

<sup>12</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/air\\_quality\\_2018\\_point.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_point.csv)

<sup>13</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/air\\_quality\\_2018\\_param.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_param.csv)

<sup>14</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/air\\_quality\\_2018.csv.gz](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018.csv.gz)

<sup>15</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P\\_DEMO.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P_DEMO.htm)

<sup>16</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P\\_BMX.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P_BMX.htm)

<sup>17</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/AUX\\_J.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/AUX_J.htm)

<sup>18</sup> <https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/continuousnhanes/default.aspx?BeginYear=2017>

<sup>19</sup> <https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/reference/index.html>

with **pandas** is not the only combo where we can work with data frames (e.g., base R allows that too).

---

## 10.7 Exercises

**Exercise 10.22** How are data frames different from matrices?

**Exercise 10.23** What are the use cases of the `name` slot in `Series` and `Index` objects?

**Exercise 10.24** What is the purpose of `set_index` and `reset_index`?

**Exercise 10.25** Why learning `numpy` is crucial when someone wants to become a proficient user of `pandas`?

**Exercise 10.26** What is the difference between `iloc[...]` and `loc[...]`?

**Exercise 10.27** Why applying the index operator `[...]` directly on a `Series` or `DataFrame` object is not necessarily a good idea?

**Exercise 10.28** What is the difference between `.index`, `Index`, and `.columns`?

**Exercise 10.29** How to compute the arithmetic mean and median of all the numeric columns in a data frame, using a single line of code?

**Exercise 10.30** What is a train/test split and how to perform it using `numpy` and `pandas`?

**Exercise 10.31** What is the difference between stacking and unstacking? Which one yields a wide (as opposed to long) format?

**Exercise 10.32** Name different data frame join (merge) operations and explain how they work.

**Exercise 10.33** How does sorting with respect to more than one criterion work?

**Exercise 10.34** Name the basic set-theoretic operations on data frames.

---



## Handling Categorical Data

---

So far we have been mostly dealing with *quantitative* (numeric) data – real numbers on which we can apply various mathematical operations, such as computing the arithmetic mean or taking the square thereof. Of course, not every transformation thereof must always make sense in every context (e.g., multiplying temperatures – what does it mean when we say that it is twice as hot today as compared to yesterday?), but still, the possibilities were plenty.

*Qualitative* data (also known as categorical data, factors, enumerated types), on the other hand, take a small number of unique values and support a very limited set of admissible operations. Usually, we can only determine where two entities are equal to each other or not (think: eye colour, blood type, or a flag whether a patient is ill).

In datasets involving many features, which we shall cover in [Chapter 12](#), categorical variables are often used for observation *grouping* (e.g., so that we can compute the best and average time for marathoners in each age category or draw box plots for finish times of men and women separately). Also, they may serve as target variables in statistical classification tasks (e.g., so that we can determine if an email is “spam” or “not spam”).

Also, sometimes we might additionally be able to *rank* the observations (Australian school grades are *linearly ordered* like F (fail) < P (pass) < C (credit) < D (distinction) < HD (high distinction), some questionnaires use Likert-type scales such as “strongly disagree” < “disagree” < “neutral” < “agree” < “strongly agree”, etc.).

---

### 11.1 Representing and Generating Categorical Data

Common ways to represent a categorical variable with  $l$  distinct levels  $\{L_1, L_2, \dots, L_l\}$  is by storing it as:

- a vector of strings,
- a vector of integers between 0 (inclusive) and  $l$  (exclusive).

These two are easily interchangeable.

Furthermore, for  $l = 2$  (binary data), another convenient representation is by means

of logical vectors. This can be extended to a so-called one-hot encoded representation using a logical vector of length  $l$ .

Let us consider the data on the original whereabouts of the top 16 marathoners (the 37th PZU Warsaw Marathon dataset):

```
marathon = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/37_pzu_warsaw_marathon_simplified.csv",
    comment="#")
cntrs = np.array(marathon.loc[:, "country"], dtype="str")
cntrs16 = cntrs[:16]
cntrs16
## array(['KE', 'KE', 'KE', 'ET', 'KE', 'ET', 'MA', 'PL', 'IL',
##        'PL', 'KE', 'PL', 'PL'], dtype='|<U2')
```

These are two-letter ISO 3166 country codes, encoded of course as strings (notice the `dtype="str"` argument).

Calling `numpy.unique` allows us to determine the set of distinct categories:

```
cat_cntrs16 = np.unique(cntrs16)
cat_cntrs16
## array(['ET', 'IL', 'KE', 'MA', 'PL'], dtype='|<U2')
```

Hence, `cntrs16` is a categorical vector of length  $n=16$  (`len(cntrs16)`) with data assuming one of  $l = 5$  different levels (`len(cat_cntrs16)`).

---

**Important:** `numpy.unique` sorts the distinct values lexicographically. In other words, they are not listed in the order of appearance, which might be something desirable in certain contexts.

---

### 11.1.1 Encoding and Decoding Factors

In order to *encode* a label vector through a set of consecutive nonnegative integers, we pass the `return_inverse=True` argument to `numpy.unique`:

```
cat_cntrs16, codes_cntrs16 = np.unique(cntrs16, return_inverse=True)
cat_cntrs16
## array(['ET', 'IL', 'KE', 'MA', 'PL'], dtype='|<U2')
codes_cntrs16
## array([2, 2, 2, 0, 2, 2, 0, 3, 4, 4, 1, 4, 2, 2, 4, 4])
```

The code sequence 2, 2, 2, 0, ... corresponds to the 3rd, 3rd, 3rd, 1st, ... level in `cat_cntrs16`, i.e., Kenya, Kenya, Kenya, Ethiopia, ....

The values between  $0$  and  $l - 1 = 4$  can be used to index a given array of length  $l = 5$ . Hence, in order to *decode* our factor, we can write:

```
cat_cntrs16[codes_cntrs16]
## array(['KE', 'KE', 'KE', 'ET', 'KE', 'ET', 'MA', 'PL', 'PL', 'IL',
##        'PL', 'KE', 'KE', 'PL', 'PL'], dtype='<U2')
```

We can use any other set of labels now:

```
np.array(["Ethiopia", "Israel", "Kenya", "Morocco", "Poland"])[codes_cntrs16]
## array(['Kenya', 'Kenya', 'Kenya', 'Ethiopia', 'Kenya', 'Kenya',
##        'Ethiopia', 'Morocco', 'Poland', 'Poland', 'Israel', 'Poland',
##        'Kenya', 'Kenya', 'Poland', 'Poland'], dtype='<U8')
```

This is an instance of the *recoding* of a categorical variable.

**Important:** Despite the fact that we can *represent* categorical variables using a set of integers, it does not mean that they become instances of a quantitative type. Arithmetic operations thereon do not really make sense.

**Note:** When we represent categorical data using numeric codes, it is possible to introduce non-occurring levels. Such information can be useful, e.g., we could explicitly indicate that there were no runners from Australia in the top 16.

**Exercise 11.1** (\*\*\*) Determine the set of unique values in `cntrs16` in the order of appearance (and not sorted lexicographically). Then, encode `cntrs16` using this level set.

Hint: check out the `return_index` argument to `numpy.unique` and the `numpy.searchsorted` function.

### 11.1.2 Categorical Data in pandas

`pandas` includes<sup>1</sup> a special `dtype` for storing categorical data. Namely, we can write:

```
cntrs16_series = marathon.iloc[:16, :].loc[:, "country"].astype("category")
cntrs16_series
## 0      KE
## 1      KE
## 2      KE
## 3      ET
## 4      KE
```

(continues on next page)

<sup>1</sup> [https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/user\\_guide/categorical.html](https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/user_guide/categorical.html)

(continued from previous page)

```

## 5    KE
## 6    ET
## 7    MA
## 8    PL
## 9    PL
## 10   IL
## 11   PL
## 12   KE
## 13   KE
## 14   PL
## 15   PL
## Name: country, dtype: category
## Categories (5, object): ['ET', 'IL', 'KE', 'MA', 'PL']

```

or, equivalently in our case, `pd.Series(cntrs16, dtype="category")`. This yields a Series object displayed as if it was represented using string labels, however, in fact it is encoded using the numeric representation. This can be revealed by accessing:

```

cntrs16_series.cat.codes.to_numpy()
## array([2, 2, 2, 0, 2, 2, 0, 3, 4, 4, 1, 4, 2, 2, 4, 4], dtype=int8)
cntrs16_series.cat.categories
## Index(['ET', 'IL', 'KE', 'MA', 'PL'], dtype='object')

```

exactly matching what we have obtained with `numpy.unique`. Most often, however, categorical data in data frames will be stored as ordinary strings.

### 11.1.3 Binary Data and Logical Vectors

*Binary data* is a special case of the qualitative setting, where we only have two categories.

For convenience, we usually encode the two classes as integers:

- 0 (or logical `False`, e.g., healthy/fail/off/non-spam/absent/...) and
- 1 (or `True`, e.g., ill/success/on/spam/present/...).

**Important:** When converting logical to numeric, `False` becomes 0 and `True` becomes 1. Conversely, 0 is converted to `False` and anything else (including -0.326) to `True`.

For example:

```

np.array([True, False, True, True, False]).astype(int)
## array([1, 0, 1, 1, 0])

```

The other way around:

```
np.array([-2, -0.326, -0.000001, 0.0, 0.1, 1, 7643]).astype(bool)
## array([ True,  True,  True, False,  True,  True,  True])
```

or, equivalently:

```
np.array([-2, -0.326, -0.000001, 0.0, 0.1, 1, 7643]) != 0
## array([ True,  True,  True, False,  True,  True,  True])
```

**Exercise 11.2** Given a numeric vector  $x$ , create a vector of the same length as  $x$  whose  $i$ -th element is equal to "yes" if  $x[i]$  is in the unit interval and to "no" otherwise. Use `numpy.where`, which can act as a vectorised version of the `if` statement.

#### 11.1.4 One-Hot Encoding (\*)

Let  $x$  be vector of  $n$  integers in  $\{0, \dots, l - 1\}$ . Its *one-hot* encoded version is a 0-1 (or, equivalently, logical) matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  of shape  $n$  by  $l$  such that  $r_{i,j} = 1$  if and only if  $x_i = j$ .

For example, if  $x = (0, 1, 2, 1)$  and  $l = 4$ , then:

$$\mathbf{R} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Such a representation is useful when solving a multiclass classification problem by means of  $l$  binary classifiers. For example, if *spam*, *bacon*, and *hot dogs* are on the menu, then *spam* is encoded as  $(1, 0, 0)$ , i.e., yeah-spam, nah-bacon, and nah-hot dog. We can build three binary classifiers, each specialising in telling whether what it encounters is a given food or something else.

**Example 11.3** Write a function to one-hot encode a given categorical vector.

**Example 11.4** Write a function to decode a one-hot encoded matrix.

#### 11.1.5 Binning Numeric Data (Revisited)

Numerical data can be converted to categorical via binning (quantisation). This results in information (precision) loss, however, it also opens some new possibilities. In fact, this is what we needed to do in order to draw all the histograms in Chapter 4. Also, reporting observation counts in each bin instead of raw data enables us to include them in printed reports (in the form of tables).

**Note:** As strong proponents of openness and transparency, we always encourage all entities (governments, universities, non-for-profits, corporations, etc.) to share (e.g., under the Creative Commons CC-BY-SA-4.0 license) unabridged versions of their

datasets to enable public scrutiny and getting the most of the possibilities they can bring for the public good.

Of course, sometimes the sharing of unprocessed information can violate the privacy of the subjects. In such a case, it might be a good idea to communicate them in a binned form.

---

Consider the 16 best marathon finish times (in minutes):

```
mins = marathon.loc[:, "mins"].to_numpy()
mins16 = mins[:16]
mins16
## array([129.32, 130.75, 130.97, 134.17, 134.68, 135.97, 139.88, 143.2 ,
##        145.22, 145.92, 146.83, 147.8 , 149.65, 149.88, 152.65, 152.88])
```

`numpy.searchsorted` can be used to determine the interval where each value in `mins` falls.

```
bins = [130, 140, 150]
codes_mins16 = np.searchsorted(bins, mins16)
codes_mins16
## array([0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3])
```

By default, the intervals are of the form  $(a, b]$  (not including  $a$ , including  $b$ ). Code 0 corresponds to values less than the first bin bound, whereas code 3 – greater than or equal to the last bound:

`pandas.cut` us another interface to the same binning method. It returns a vector-like object of dtype "category", with very readable labels generated automatically (and ordered, see [Section 11.4.7](#)):

```
cut_mins16 = pd.Series(pd.cut(mins16, [-np.inf, 130, 140, 150, np.inf]))
cut_mins16
## 0      (-inf, 130.0]
## 1      (130.0, 140.0]
## 2      (130.0, 140.0]
## 3      (130.0, 140.0]
## 4      (130.0, 140.0]
## 5      (130.0, 140.0]
## 6      (130.0, 140.0]
## 7      (140.0, 150.0]
## 8      (140.0, 150.0]
## 9      (140.0, 150.0]
## 10     (140.0, 150.0]
## 11     (140.0, 150.0]
## 12     (140.0, 150.0]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

## 13      (140.0, 150.0]
## 14      (150.0, inf]
## 15      (150.0, inf]
## dtype: category
## Categories (4, interval[float64, right]): [(-inf, 130.0] < (130.0, 140.0] < (140.0,
##                                              (150.0, inf]]
cut_mins16.cat.categories.astype("str")
## Index(['(-inf, 130.0]', '(130.0, 140.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]',
##        '(150.0, inf)'],
##       dtype='object')

```

**Exercise 11.5** (\*) Check out the `numpy.histogram_bin_edges` function which tries to determine some informative interval bounds automatically based on a range of simple heuristics. Also, `numpy.linspace` and `numpy.geomspace`, which we have covered in Chapter 4, can be useful for generating equidistant bounds on linear and logarithmic scale, respectively.

**Example 11.6** (\*\*\*) We can create a set of the corresponding categories manually, for example, as follows:

```

bins2 = np.r_[-np.inf, bins, np.inf]
cat_mins16 = np.array(
    [f"({bins2[i-1]}, {bins2[i]}]" for i in range(1, len(bins2))]
)
cat_mins16
## array(['(-inf, 130.0]', '(130.0, 140.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]',
##        '(150.0, inf]'], dtype='<U14')

```

Recall from Section 5.6.3 that list comprehensions are a convenient substitute for a `for` loop and the `list.append` method. Recoding based on the above yields:

```

cat_mins16[codes_mins16]
## array(['(-inf, 130.0]', '(130.0, 140.0]', '(130.0, 140.0]',
##        '(130.0, 140.0]', '(130.0, 140.0]', '(130.0, 140.0]',
##        '(130.0, 140.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]',
##        '(140.0, 150.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]',
##        '(140.0, 150.0]', '(140.0, 150.0]', '(150.0, inf]',
##        '(150.0, inf]'], dtype='<U14')

```

### 11.1.6 Generating Pseudorandom Labels

It is worth knowing that `numpy.random.choice` allows us to create a pseudorandom sample with categories picked with any probabilities:

```

np.random.seed(123)
np.random.choice(
    a=["spam", "bacon", "eggs", "tempeh"],
    p=[ 0.7,     0.1,   0.15,    0.05],
    replace=True,
    size=16
)
## array(['spam', 'spam', 'spam', 'spam', 'bacon', 'spam', 'tempeh', 'spam',
##        'spam', 'spam', 'spam', 'bacon', 'spam', 'spam', 'spam', 'bacon'],
##       dtype='<U6')

```

Hence, if we generate a sufficiently large sample, we will expect "spam" to occur ca. 70% times, and "tempeh" to be drawn in 5% of the cases, etc.

---

## 11.2 Frequency Distributions

### 11.2.1 Counting

For arbitrary categorical data, we can call:

```

cat_cntrs16, counts_cntrs16 = np.unique(cntrs16, return_counts=True)
cat_cntrs16, counts_cntrs16
## (array(['ET', 'IL', 'KE', 'MA', 'PL'], dtype='<U2'), array([2, 1, 7, 1, 5]))

```

to get both the set of unique categories and the *corresponding* number of occurrences. For instance, there were 7 runners from Kenya amongst the top 16.

If we *already* have an array of integer codes between 0 and  $l - 1$ , there is no need to call **numpy.unique**, as **numpy.bincount** can return the number of times each code appears therein.

```

np.bincount(codes_cntrs16)
## array([2, 1, 7, 1, 5])

```

Of course, a vector of counts can easily be turned into a vector of proportions (fractions):

```

counts_cntrs16 / np.sum(counts_cntrs16)
## array([0.125 , 0.0625, 0.4375, 0.0625, 0.3125])

```

Hence, almost 31.25% of the top runners were from Poland (it is a marathon in Warsaw after all...). We can of course multiply the above by 100 to get the percentages.

We can output a nice *frequency table* by storing both objects in a single data frame (or a Series object with an appropriate vector of row labels):

```
table = pd.DataFrame({
    "Country": cat_cntrs16,
    "%": 100 * counts_cntrs16 / np.sum(counts_cntrs16)
})
table
##   Country      %
## 0      ET  12.50
## 1      IL   6.25
## 2      KE  43.75
## 3      MA   6.25
## 4      PL  31.25
```

**Example 11.7** (\*) In Section 14.3 we will discuss `IPython.display.Markdown` as a means to embed arbitrary Markdown code inside IPython/Jupyter reports. In the meantime, let us just note that nicely formatted tables can be created from data frames by calling:

```
import IPython.display
IPython.display.Markdown(table.to_markdown(index=False))
```

| Country | %     |
|---------|-------|
| ET      | 12.5  |
| IL      | 6.25  |
| KE      | 43.75 |
| MA      | 6.25  |
| PL      | 31.25 |

`pandas.Series.value_counts` is even more convenient, as it returns a Series object equipped with a readable index (element labels):

```
marathon.iloc[:16, :].loc[:, "country"].value_counts()
## KE     7
## PL     5
## ET     2
## MA     1
## IL     1
## Name: country, dtype: int64
```

By default, data are ordered with respect to the counts, decreasingly.

**Exercise 11.8** In Chapter 4 we have mentioned the `numpy.histogram` function which applies the binning of a numeric vector and then counts the number of occurrences. This is merely a helper function: the same result can be obtained by means of the more basic `numpy.searchsorted`,

`numpy.bincount`, and `numpy.histogram_bin_edges`. Apply `numpy.histogram` on the whole `37_pzu_warsaw_marathon_mins` dataset.

**Exercise 11.9** Using `numpy.argsort`, sort `counts_cntrs16` increasingly together with the corresponding items in `cat_cntrs16`.

### 11.2.2 Two-Way Contingency Tables: Factor Combinations

Some datasets may feature many categorical columns, each having possibly different levels. Let us now consider the whole `marathon` dataset:

```
marathon.loc[:, "age"] = marathon.category.str.slice(1) # first two chars
marathon.loc[marathon.age >= "60", "age"] = "60+" # too few runners aged 70+
marathon = marathon.loc[:, ["sex", "age", "country"]]
marathon.head()
##   sex age country
## 0   M  20      KE
## 1   M  20      KE
## 2   M  20      KE
## 3   M  20      ET
## 4   M  30      KE
```

The three columns are: sex, age (in 10-year brackets), and country. We can of course analyse the data distribution in each column individually, however, some interesting patterns might also arise when we study the *combinations* of levels of different variables.

Here are the levels of the sex and age variables:

```
np.unique(marathon.loc[:, "sex"])
## array(['F', 'M'], dtype=object)
np.unique(marathon.loc[:, "age"])
## array(['20', '30', '40', '50', '60+'], dtype=object)
```

We thus have 10 different possible combinations thereof.

A two-way *contingency table* is a matrix which gives the number of occurrences of each pair of values:

```
v = marathon.loc[:, ["sex", "age"]].value_counts().unstack(fill_value=0)
v
##    age    20    30    40    50    60+
##    sex
##    F     240   449   262   43   19
##    M     879  2200  1708  541   170
```

Hence, for example, there were 19 women aged 60 and over amongst the marathoners. Nice.

The *marginal* (one dimensional) frequency distributions can be recreated by computing the rowwise and columnwise sums.

```
np.sum(v, axis=1)
## sex
## F      1013
## M      5498
## dtype: int64
np.sum(v, axis=0)
## age
## 20     1119
## 30     2649
## 40     1970
## 50      584
## 60+    189
## dtype: int64
```

### 11.2.3 Combinations of Even More Factors

`pandas.DataFrame.value_counts` can also be used with a combination of more than 2 categorical variables:

```
marathon.loc[:, ["sex", "age", "country"]].value_counts().\
    rename("count").reset_index()
##      sex   age country  count
## 0     M    30      PL  2081
## 1     M    40      PL  1593
## 2     M    20      PL   824
## 3     M    50      PL   475
## 4     F    30      PL   422
## ..
## 189   M    30      SI     1
## 190   F   60+      EE     1
## 191   F   60+      FI     1
## 192   M    30      PE     1
## 193   F    20      BE     1
##
## [194 rows x 4 columns]
```

Of course, the display will be in the *long* format (compare Section 10.6.2) here, as high-dimensional arrays are not nicely printable.

## 11.3 Visualising Factors

Methods for visualising categorical data are by no means fascinating (unless we use them as grouping variables in more complex datasets, but this is a topic that we cover in [Chapter 12](#)).

### 11.3.1 Bar Plots

Bar plots are self-explanatory and hence will do the trick most of the time, see [Figure 11.1](#).

```
ind = np.arange(len(cat_cntrs16))
plt.bar(ind, height=counts_cntrs16,
        color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8)
plt.xticks(ind, cat_cntrs16)
plt.show()
```

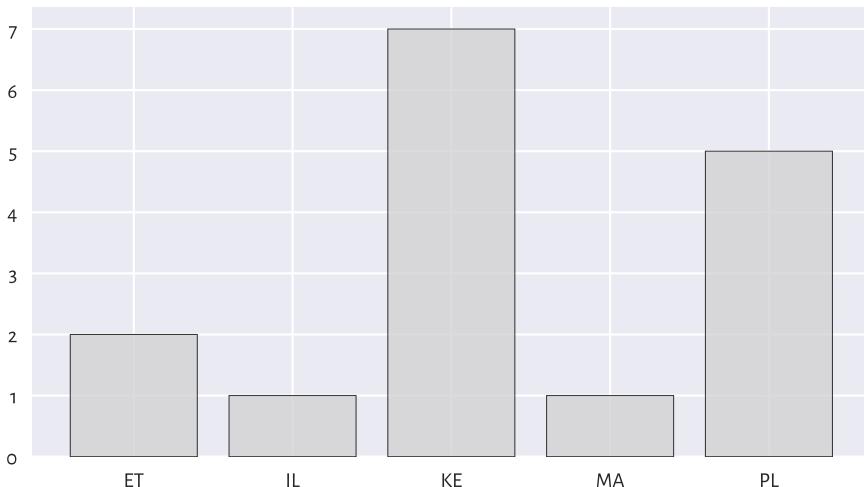


Figure 11.1: Bar plot for the top 16 marathoners' countries

The `ind` vector gives the x-coordinates of the bars, here: consecutive integers. By calling `matplotlib.pyplot.xticks` we assign them readable labels.

**Exercise 11.10** Assign a different colour to each bar.

**Exercise 11.11** Draw a bar plot which features percentages instead of counts, so that the total bar height is 100%.

**Exercise 11.12** Print the frequency table and draw a bar plot for the top 100 marathoners' countries.

**Exercise 11.13** (\*) Print the frequency table and draw a bar plot all the marathoners (not just the elite ones), ordered from the highest to the lowest counts. There will be too many bars, therefore replace the few last bars with a single one, labelled 'All other'.

A bar plot is a versatile tool for visualising the counts also in the two-variable case, see Figure 11.2:

```
v = marathon.loc[:, ["sex", "age"]].value_counts().\
    rename("count").reset_index()
sns.barplot(x="age", hue="sex", y="count", data=v)
plt.show()
```

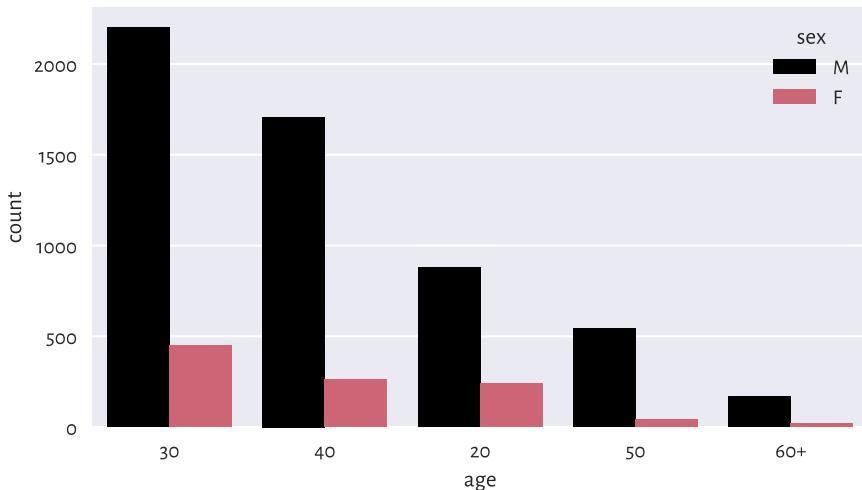


Figure 11.2: Number of runners by age category and sex

**Exercise 11.14** (\*) Draw a similar chart using `matplotlib.pyplot.bar`.

**Exercise 11.15** (\*\*) Create a stacked bar plot similar to the one in Figure 11.3, where we have horizontal bars for data that have been normalised so that for each sex their sum is 100%.

### 11.3.2 Political Marketing and Statistics

Even such a simple plot can be manipulated. For example, presidential elections were held in Poland in 2020. In the second round, Andrzej Duda had won against Rafał Trzaskowski. In Figure 11.4 we have the official results that might be presented by one of the infamous Polish TV conglomerate:

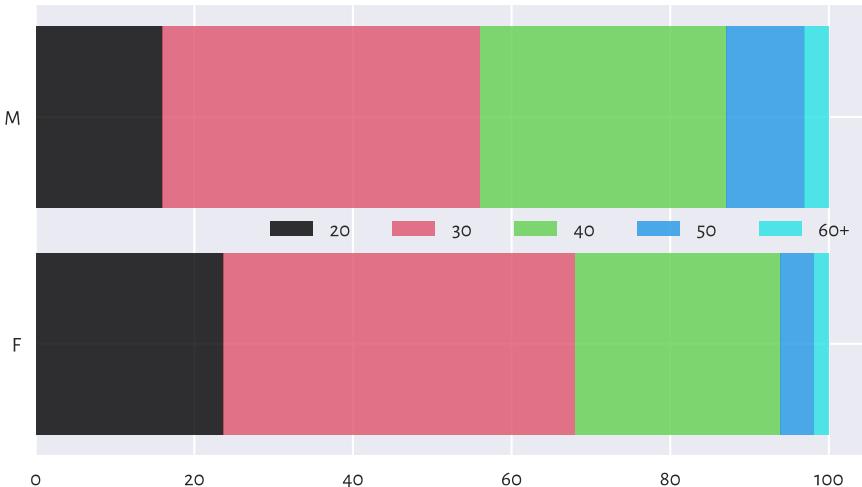


Figure 11.3: Example stacked bar plot: Age distribution for different sexes amongst all the runners

```
plt.bar([1, 2], height=[51.03, 48.97], width=0.25,
        color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8)
plt.xticks([1, 2], ["Duda", "Trzaskowski"])
plt.ylabel("%")
plt.xlim(0, 3)
plt.ylim(48.9, 51.1)
plt.show()
```

Such a great victory! Wait... it was a close vote after all! We should just take a look at the y-axis tick marks.

Another media outlet could have reported it like in Figure 11.5:

```
plt.bar([1, 2], height=[51.03, 48.97], width=0.25,
        color="lightgray", edgecolor="black", alpha=0.8)
plt.xticks([1, 2], ["Duda", "Trzaskowski"])
plt.ylabel("%")
plt.xlim(0, 3)
plt.ylim(0, 250)
plt.yticks([0, 100])
plt.show()
```

The moral of the story is:

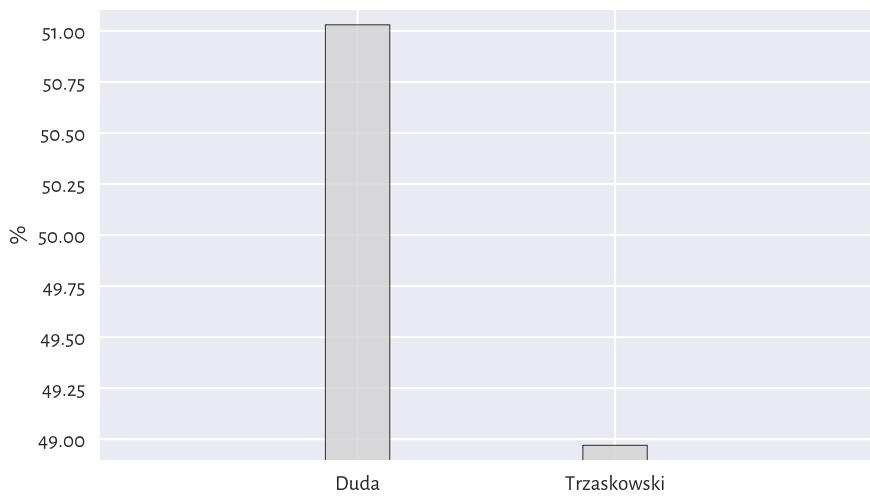


Figure 11.4: Flawless victory!

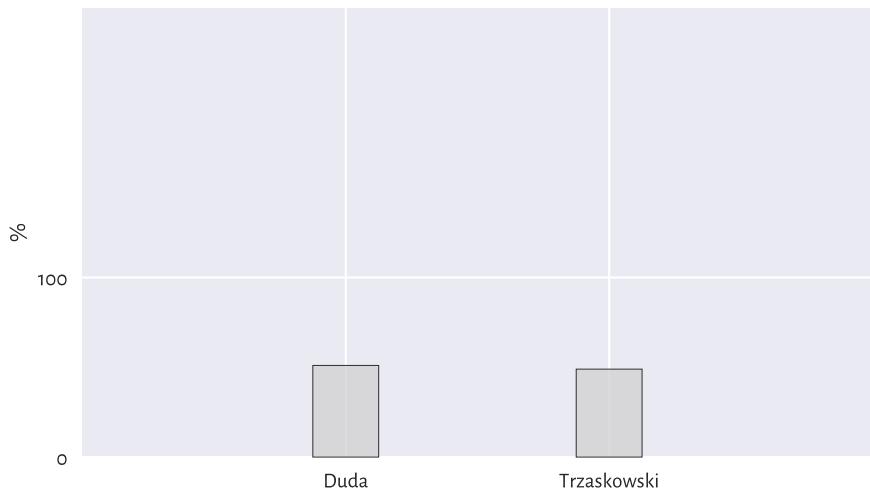


Figure 11.5: It was a draw, so close!

---

**Important:** Always read the y-axis tick marks. And when drawing own bar plots, do not trick the reader; this is unethical.

---

### 11.3.3 Pie Cha... Don't Even Trip

We are definitely not going to discuss the infamous pie charts, because their use in data analysis has been widely criticised for a long time (it is difficult to judge the ratios of areas of their slices). Case closed. Good morning.

### 11.3.4 Pareto Charts (\*)

As a general (empirical) rule, it is usually the case that most instances of something's happening (usually 70–90%) are due to only few causes (10–30%). This is known as the *Pareto rule* (with 80% vs 20% being an often cited rule of thumb).

**Example 11.16** In Chapter 6 we modelled the US cities' population dataset using the Pareto distribution (the very same Pareto, but a different, yet related object). We discovered that only ca. 14% of the settlements (those with 10,000 or more inhabitants) is home to as much as 84% of the population. Hence, we may say that this data domain follows the Pareto rule.

Here is a dataset<sup>2</sup> fabricated by the Clinical Excellence Commission in New South Wales, Australia, listing the most frequent causes for medication errors:

```
cat_med = np.array([
    "Unauthorised drug", "Wrong IV rate", "Wrong patient", "Dose missed",
    "Underdose", "Wrong calculation", "Wrong route", "Wrong drug",
    "Wrong time", "Technique error", "Duplicated drugs", "Overdose"
])
counts_med = np.array([1, 4, 53, 92, 7, 16, 27, 76, 83, 3, 9, 59])
np.sum(counts_med) # total number of medication errors
## 430
```

Let us order the dataset with respect to the counts, decreasingly:

```
o = np.argsort(counts_med)[::-1] # ordering permutation (decreasing)
cat_med = cat_med[o] # order categories based on counts
counts_med = counts_med[o] # equivalent to np.sort(counts_med)[::-1]
pd.DataFrame(dict(
    category=cat_med,
    count=counts_med
)) # nicer display
##           category   count
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.cec.health.nsw.gov.au/CEC-Academy/quality-improvement-tools/pareto-charts>

(continued from previous page)

|       |                   |    |
|-------|-------------------|----|
| ## 0  | Dose missed       | 92 |
| ## 1  | Wrong time        | 83 |
| ## 2  | Wrong drug        | 76 |
| ## 3  | Overdose          | 59 |
| ## 4  | Wrong patient     | 53 |
| ## 5  | Wrong route       | 27 |
| ## 6  | Wrong calculation | 16 |
| ## 7  | Duplicated drugs  | 9  |
| ## 8  | Underdose         | 7  |
| ## 9  | Wrong IV rate     | 4  |
| ## 10 | Technique error   | 3  |
| ## 11 | Unauthorised drug | 1  |

Pareto charts are tools which may aid in visualising the Pareto-ruled datasets. They are based on bar plots, but feature some extras:

- bars are listed in a decreasing order,
- the cumulative percentage curve is added.

The plotting of the Pareto chart is a little tricky, because it involves using two different Y axes (as usual, fine-tuning of the figure and studying the manual of the `matplotlib` package is left as an exercise.)

```
x = np.arange(len(cat_med)) # 0, 1, 2, ...
p = 100.0*counts_med/np.sum(counts_med) # percentages

fig, ax1 = plt.subplots()
ax1.set_xticks(x-0.5, cat_med, rotation=60)
ax1.set_ylabel("%")
ax1.bar(x, height=p)

ax2 = ax1.twinx() # creates a new coordinate system with a shared x-axis
ax2.plot(x, np.cumsum(p), "ro-")
ax2.grid(visible=False)
ax2.set_ylabel("cumulative %")

fig.tight_layout()
plt.show()
```

From Figure 11.6, we can read that 5 causes (less than 40%) correspond to ca. 85% of the medication errors. More precisely,

```
pd.DataFrame({
    "category": cat_med,
    "cumulative %": np.round(np.cumsum(p), 1)
```

(continues on next page)

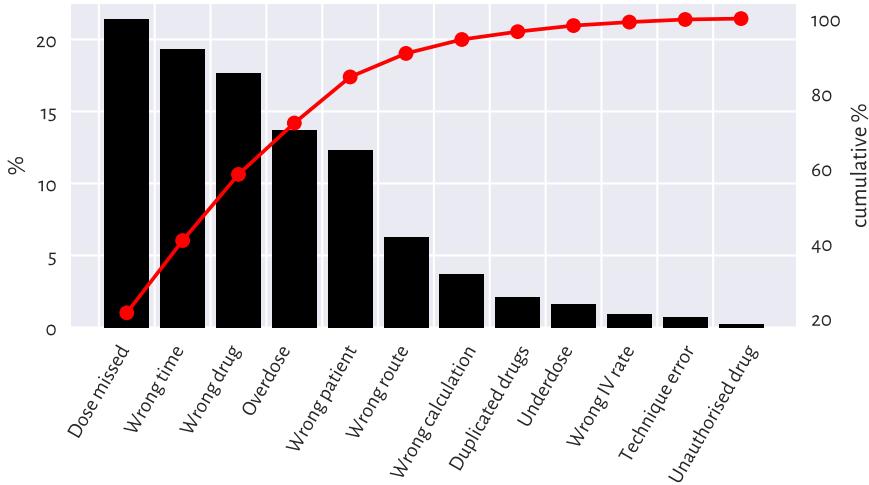


Figure 11.6: The most frequent causes for medication errors

(continued from previous page)

|       | category          | cumulative % |
|-------|-------------------|--------------|
| ## 0  | Dose missed       | 21.4         |
| ## 1  | Wrong time        | 40.7         |
| ## 2  | Wrong drug        | 58.4         |
| ## 3  | Overdose          | 72.1         |
| ## 4  | Wrong patient     | 84.4         |
| ## 5  | Wrong route       | 90.7         |
| ## 6  | Wrong calculation | 94.4         |
| ## 7  | Duplicated drugs  | 96.5         |
| ## 8  | Underdose         | 98.1         |
| ## 9  | Wrong IV rate     | 99.1         |
| ## 10 | Technique error   | 99.8         |
| ## 11 | Unauthorised drug | 100.0        |

Note that there is an explicit assumption here that a single error is only due to a single cause. Also, we presume that each medication error has a similar degree of severity.

Policy makers and quality controllers often rely on such simplifications, therefore they most probably are going to be addressing only the top causes. If we have ever wondered why some processes (mal)function the way they do, there is a hint above. However, coming up with something more effective yet so simple at the same time requires much more effort.

### 11.3.5 Heat Maps

Two-way contingency tables can be depicted by means of a heatmap, where each count affects the corresponding cell's colour intensity, see Figure 11.7.

```
from matplotlib import cm
v = marathon.loc[:, ["sex", "age"]].value_counts().unstack(fill_value=0)
sns.heatmap(v, annot=True, fmt="d", cmap=cm.get_cmap("copper"))
plt.show()
```

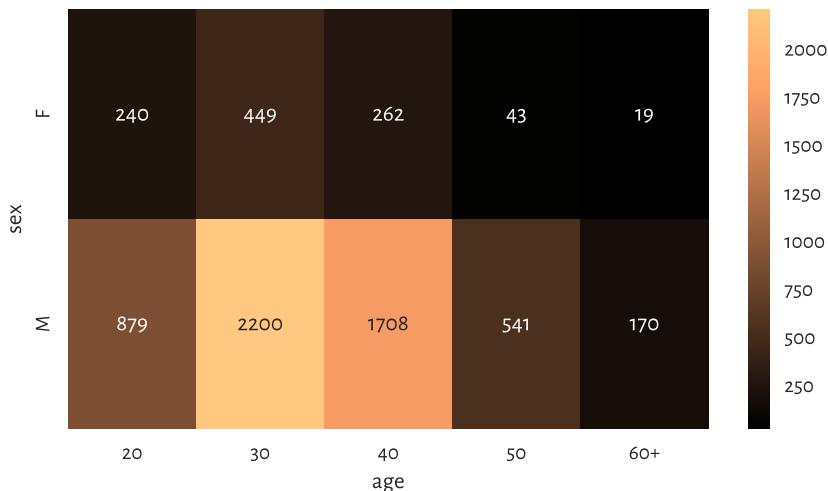


Figure 11.7: Heatmap for the marathoners' sex and age category

## 11.4 Aggregating and Comparing Factors

### 11.4.1 A Mode

As we have already said, the only operation on categorical data that we can rely on is counting (because we have an equivalence relation on the set of labels and nothing more). Therefore, as far as qualitative data aggregation is concerned, what we are left with is the *mode*, i.e., the most frequently occurring value.

```
cat_cntrs16, counts_cntrs16 = np.unique(cntrs16, return_counts=True)
cat_cntrs16[np.argmax(counts_cntrs16)]
## 'KE'
```

Recall that if `i` is `numpy.argmax(counts)` (*argument maximum*, i.e., where is it?), then `counts[i]` is the same as `numpy.max(counts)` and `cat[i]` is the category with the greatest counts.

**Important:** A mode might be ambiguous.

For instance, amongst the fastest 22 runners, there is a tie between Kenya and Poland – both meet our definition of a mode:

```
cat_cntrs22, counts_cntrs22 = np.unique(cntrs[:22], return_counts=True)
cat_cntrs22[np.where(counts_cntrs22 == np.max(counts_cntrs22))]
## array(['KE', 'PL'], dtype='<U2')
```

To avoid any bias, it would be best to report both of them as potential mode candidates. Alternatively, we can pick one at random (calling `numpy.random.choice`).

#### 11.4.2 Binary Data as Logical Vectors

Perhaps the most useful arithmetic operation on logical vectors is the sum.

```
cntrs16 = cntrs[:16]
cntrs16 # recall
## array(['KE', 'KE', 'KE', 'ET', 'KE', 'KE', 'ET', 'MA', 'PL', 'PL', 'IL',
##        'PL', 'KE', 'KE', 'PL', 'PL'], dtype='<U2')
np.sum(cntrs16 == "PL")
## 5
```

is the number of elements in `cntrs16` that are equal to "PL" (because the sum of 0s and 1s is equal to the number of 1s in the sequence). Note that (`cntrs16 == "PL"`) is a logical vector that represents a binary categorical variable with levels: not-Poland (`False`) and Poland (`True`).

If we divide the above result by the length of the vector, we will get the proportion:

```
np.mean(cntrs16 == "PL")
## 0.3125
```

Hence, 31.25% amongst the top 16 runners are from Poland.

**Exercise 11.17** What is the meaning of `numpy.all`, `numpy.any`, `numpy.min`, `numpy.max`, `numpy.cumsum`, and `numpy.cumprod` applied on logical vectors?

**Note:** (\*\*\*) Having the 0/1 (or zero/nonzero) vs `False/True` correspondence allows us to perform some logical operations using integer arithmetic. In particular, assuming that `p` and `q` are logical values and `a` and `b` are numeric ones, we have, what follows:

- $p+q \neq 0$  means that at least one value is True and  $p+q = 0$  if and only if both are False;
  - more generally,  $p+q = 2$  if both elements are True,  $p+q = 1$  if only one is True (we call it exclusive-or, XOR), and  $p+q = 0$  if both are False;
  - $p*q \neq 0$  means that both values are True and  $p*q = 0$  holds whenever at least one is False;
  - $1-p$  corresponds to negation of  $p$ ;
  - $p*a + (1-p)*b$  is equal to  $a$  if  $p$  is True and equal to  $b$  otherwise.
- 

### 11.4.3 Pearson's Chi-Squared Test (\*)

The Kolmogorov–Smirnov test that we described in Section 6.2.3 verifies whether a given sample differs significantly from a hypothesised *continuous* distribution, i.e., it works for *numeric* data.

For binned/categorical data, we can use a classical and easy-to-understand test developed by Karl Pearson in 1900. It is supposed to judge whether the difference between the observed proportions  $\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_l$  and the theoretical ones  $p_1, \dots, p_l$  is significantly large or not:

$$\begin{cases} H_0 : \hat{p}_i = p_i \text{ for all } i = 1, \dots, l & \text{(null hypothesis)} \\ H_1 : \hat{p}_i \neq p_i \text{ for some } i = 1, \dots, l & \text{(alternative hypothesis)} \end{cases}$$

Having such a test is beneficial, e.g., when the data we have at hand are based on small surveys that are supposed to serve as estimates of what might be happening in a larger population.

Going back to our political example from Section 11.3.2, it turns out that one of the pre-election polls indicated that  $c = 516$  out of  $n = 1017$  people would vote for the first candidate. We have  $\hat{p}_1 = 50.74\%$  (Duda) and  $\hat{p}_2 = 49.26\%$  (Traskowski). If we would like to test whether the observed proportions are significantly different from each other, we could test them against the theoretical distribution  $p_1 = 50\%$  and  $p_2 = 50\%$ , stating that there is a tie between the competitors (up to a sampling error).

As a natural test statistic is based on the relative squared differences:

$$\hat{T} = n \sum_{i=1}^l \frac{(\hat{p}_i - p_i)^2}{p_i}.$$

```
c, n = 516, 1017
p_observed = np.array([c, n-c]) / n
p_expected = np.array([0.5, 0.5])
T = n * np.sum( (p_observed-p_expected)**2 / p_expected )
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
T
## 0.2212389380530986
```

Similarly to the continuous case in [Section 6.2.3](#), we should reject the null hypothesis, if

$$\hat{T} \geq K,$$

where the critical value  $K$  is based on the fact that, if the null hypothesis is true,  $\hat{T}$  follows the  $\chi^2$  (chi-squared, hence the name of the test) distribution with  $l - 1$  degrees of freedom, see `scipy.stats.chi2`.

```
alpha = 0.001 # significance level
scipy.stats.chi2.ppf(1-alpha, len(p_observed)-1)
## 10.827566170662733
```

As  $\hat{T} < K$  (because  $0.22 < 10.83$ ), we cannot deem the two proportions significantly different from each other. In other words, this poll did not indicate (at significance level 0.1%) any of the candidates as a clear winner.

**Exercise 11.18** Determine the smallest  $c$ , i.e., the number of respondents indicating they would vote for Duda, that leads to the rejection of the null hypothesis.

#### 11.4.4 Two-Sample Pearson's Chi-Squared Test (\*)

Let us consider the data depicted in [Figure 11.3](#) and test whether the runners' age distributions differ significantly between females and males.

We have  $l = 5$  categories. First, denote the total number of observations in both groups with  $n'$  and  $n''$ .

```
d = marathon.loc[:, ["sex", "age"]].value_counts().unstack(fill_value=0)
c1, c2 = d.to_numpy() # first row, second row
n1 = c1.sum()
n2 = c2.sum()
n1, n2
## (1013, 5498)
```

The observed proportions in the first group (females), denoted as  $\hat{p}'_1, \dots, \hat{p}'_l$ , are, respectively:

```
p1 = c1/n1
p1
## array([0.23692004, 0.44323791, 0.25863771, 0.04244817, 0.01875617])
```

Here are the proportions in the second group (males),  $\hat{p}''_1, \dots, \hat{p}''_l$ :

```
p2 = c2/n2
p2
## array([0.15987632, 0.40014551, 0.31065842, 0.09839942, 0.03092033])
```

We would like to verify whether the corresponding proportions are equal to each other (up to some sampling error):

$$\begin{cases} H_0 : \hat{p}'_i = \hat{p}''_i \text{ for all } i = 1, \dots, l & \text{(null hypothesis)} \\ H_1 : \hat{p}'_i \neq \hat{p}''_i \text{ for some } i = 1, \dots, l & \text{(alternative hypothesis)} \end{cases}$$

In other words, we are interested whether the categorical data in the two groups come from the same discrete probability distribution.

Taking the estimated expected proportions,

$$\bar{p}_i = \frac{c'_i + c''_i}{n' + n''},$$

for all  $i = 1, \dots, l$ , the test statistic this time is equal to:

$$\hat{T} = n' \sum_{i=1}^l \frac{(\hat{p}'_i - \bar{p}_i)^2}{\bar{p}_i} + n'' \sum_{i=1}^l \frac{(\hat{p}''_i - \bar{p}_i)^2}{\bar{p}_i},$$

which is a variation on the one-sample theme presented in Section 11.4.4.

```
pp = (c1+c2)/(n1+n2)
T = n1 * np.sum( (p1-pp)**2 / pp ) + n2 * np.sum( (p2-pp)**2 / pp )
T
## 75.31373854741857
```

It can be shown that, if the null hypothesis is true, the test statistic *approximately* follows the  $\chi^2$  distribution with  $l - 1$  degrees of freedom<sup>3</sup>. The critical value  $K$  is equal to:

```
alpha = 0.001 # significance level
scipy.stats.chi2.ppf(1-alpha, len(c1)-1)
## 18.46682695290317
```

As  $\hat{T} \geq K$  (because  $75.31 \geq 18.47$ ), we reject the null hypothesis. And so, the age distribution differs across sexes (at significance level 0.1%).

---

<sup>3</sup> Notice that [[PTVF07]] in Section 14.3 suggests  $l$  degrees of freedom, but do not agree with the reasoning therein. Also, simple Monte Carlo simulations suggests that  $l - 1$  is a better candidate.

### 11.4.5 Measuring Association (\*)

Let us consider Australian Bureau of Statistics' National Health Survey 2018<sup>4</sup> data on the prevalence of certain medical conditions as a function of age. Here is the extracted contingency table:

```

l = [
    "Arthritis", "Asthma", "Back problems", "Cancer (malignant neoplasms)",
    "Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease", "Diabetes mellitus",
    "Heart, stroke and vascular disease", "Kidney disease",
    "Mental and behavioural conditions", "Osteoporosis"],
    ["15-44", "45-64", "65+"]
]

C = 1000*np.array([
    [ 360.2,      1489.0,      1772.2],
    [1069.7,      741.9,      433.7],
    [1469.6,      1513.3,      955.3],
    [ 28.1,       162.7,      237.5],
    [ 103.8,      207.0,      251.9],
    [ 135.4,      427.3,      607.7],
    [ 94.0,       344.4,      716.0],
    [ 29.6,       67.7,       123.3],
    [2218.9,      1390.6,      725.0],
    [ 36.1,       312.3,      564.7],
]).astype(int)

pd.DataFrame(C, index=l[0], columns=l[1])
##                                     15-44   45-64   65+
## Arthritis                      360000  1489000  1772000
## Asthma                          1069000  741000   433000
## Back problems                   1469000  1513000  955000
## Cancer (malignant neoplasms)   28000   162000   237000
## Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 103000  207000   251000
## Diabetes mellitus                135000  427000   607000
## Heart, stroke and vascular disease 94000   344000   716000
## Kidney disease                  29000   67000    123000
## Mental and behavioural conditions 2218000 1390000  725000
## Osteoporosis                    36000   312000   564000

```

Cramér's  $V$  is one of a few ways to measure the degree of association between two categorical variables. It is equal to 0 (lowest possible value) if the two variables are independent (there is no association between them) and 1 (highest possible value) if they are tied.

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.abs.gov.au/statistics/health/health-conditions-and-risks/national-health-survey-first-results/2017-18>

```
scipy.stats.contingency.association(C)
## 0.316237999724298
```

The above means that there might be a small association between age and the prevalence of certain conditions. In other words, it might be the case that some conditions are more prevalent in different age groups than others.

Given a two-way contingency table  $C$  with  $n$  rows and  $m$  columns and assuming that

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m \frac{(c_{i,j} - e_{i,j})^2}{e_{i,j}},$$

where

$$e_{i,j} = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^m v_{i,k} \sum_{k=1}^n c_{k,j}}{\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m c_{i,j}}$$

the Cramér coefficient is given by

$$V = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\min\{n-1, m-1\} \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m c_{i,j}}}.$$

Here,  $c_{i,j}$  gives the actually observed counts and  $e_{i,j}$  denotes the number that we would expect if the two variables were actually independent.

**Exercise 11.19** Compute the Cramér  $V$  using only `numpy` functions.

**Exercise 11.20** (\*) Actually we can easily verify the hypothesis whether  $V$  does not differ significantly from 0, i.e., whether the variables are independent. Looking at  $T$ , we see that this is actually the test statistic in Pearson's chi-squared goodness-of-fit test.

```
E = C.sum(axis=1).reshape(-1, 1) * C.sum(axis=0).reshape(1, -1) / C.sum()
T = np.sum((C-E)**2 / E)
T
## 3715440.465191512
```

If the data are really independent,  $T$  follows the chi-squared distribution  $n + m - 1$ , hence the critical value is equal to

```
alpha = 0.001 # significance level
scipy.stats.chi2.ppf(1-alpha, C.shape[0] + C.shape[1] - 1)
## 32.90949040736021
```

as it is greater than  $T$ , we conclude (at significance level 0.1%) that the conditions are not independent of age.

**Exercise 11.21** (\*) Take a look at Table 19: Comorbidity of selected chronic conditions of the *National Health Survey 2018*<sup>5</sup>, where we clearly see that many disorders co-occur. Visualise them on some heatmaps and bar plots (including data grouped by sex and age).

#### 11.4.6 Binned Numeric Data

Generally, modes do not work for continuous data, where repeated values are – at least theoretically – highly unlikely (unless someone does not report them with full digit precision). It might make sense to compute it on binned data, though.

Looking at a histogram, the mode is the interval corresponding to the highest bar (hopefully assuming there is only one). If we would like to obtain a single number, we can choose for example the middle of this interval as the mode.

Of course, for numeric data, the mode will heavily depend on the binning (recall that we can also apply logarithmic binning). Thus, the question “what is the most popular income” is overall quite difficult to answer.

**Exercise 11.22** Compute some potentially informative modes for the *2020 UK income*<sup>6</sup> data. Play around with different numbers of bins for linear and logarithmic binning and see how it affects the mode.

#### 11.4.7 Ordinal Data (\*)

The case where the categories can be linearly ordered, is called *ordinal data*. This gives a few more options as except for the mode, thanks to the existence of order statistics, we can also easily define sample quantiles. However, the standard methods for resolving ties will not work, hence we need to be careful.

For example, median of a sample of student grades (P, P, C, D, HD) is C, but (P, P, C, D, HD, HD) is either C or D - we can choose one at random or just report that the solution is ambiguous.

Another option, of course, is to treat ordinal data as numbers (e.g., F=0, P=1, ..., HD=4). In the latter example, the median would be equal to 2.5.

There are some cases, though, where the conversion of labels to consecutive integers is far from optimal – because it gives the impression that the “distance” between different levels is always equal (linear).

**Exercise 11.23** (\*\*) The *grades\_results*<sup>7</sup> represents the grades (F, P, C, D, HD) of 100 students attending an imaginary course in a virtual Australian university. You can load it in the form of an ordered categorical Series by calling:

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://www.abs.gov.au/statistics/health/health-conditions-and-risks/national-health-survey-first-results/2017-18>

<sup>6</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/%5Cteaching\\_data/master/marek/uk\\_income\\_simulated\\_2020.txt](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/%5Cteaching_data/master/marek/uk_income_simulated_2020.txt)

<sup>7</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/grades\\_results.txt](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/grades_results.txt)

```

grades = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/grades_results.txt", dtype="str")
grades = pd.Series(pd.Categorical(grades,
    categories=["F", "P", "C", "D", "HD"], ordered=True))
grades
## 0      F
## 1      F
## 2      F
## 3      F
## 4      F
## ...
## 118    HD
## 119    HD
## 120    HD
## 121    HD
## 122    HD
## Length: 123, dtype: category
## Categories (5, object): ['F' < 'P' < 'C' < 'D' < 'HD']

```

How would you determine the average grade represented as a number between 0 and 100, taking into account that for a P you need at least 50%, C is given for  $\geq 60\%$ , D for  $\geq 70\%$ , and HD for only 80% of the points. Come up with a pessimistic, optimistic, and a best-shot estimate and then compare your result to the true corresponding scores listed in the `grades_scores`<sup>8</sup> dataset.

---

## 11.5 Exercises

**Exercise 11.24** Does it make sense to compute the arithmetic mean of a categorical variable?

**Exercise 11.25** Name the basic use cases for categorical data.

**Exercise 11.26** (\*) What is a Pareto chart?

**Exercise 11.27** How to deal with the case of the mode being nonunique?

**Exercise 11.28** What is the meaning of `numpy.mean((x > 0) & (x < 1))`, where `x` is a numeric vector?

**Exercise 11.29** What is the meaning of the sum and mean for binary data (logical vectors)?

**Exercise 11.30** List some ways to visualise multidimensional categorical data.

**Exercise 11.31** (\*) State the null hypotheses verified by the one- and two-sample chi-squared tests.

---

<sup>8</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/grades\\_scores.txt](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/grades_scores.txt)

**Exercise 11.32** (\*) How is Cramér's V defined and what values does it take?

---

# 12

---

## *Processing Data in Groups*

---

Let us consider (once again) a subset of the US Centres for Disease Control and Prevention National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey data, this time carrying some body measures (`P_BMX1`) and demographics (`P_DEMO2`).

```
nhanes = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
nhanes = (
    nhanes
    .loc[
        (nhanes.loc[:, "DMDBORN4"] <= 2) & (nhanes.loc[:, "RIDAGEYR"] >= 18),
        ["RIDAGEYR", "BMXWT", "BMXHT", "BMXBMI", "RIAGENDR", "DMDBORN4"]
    ]
    .rename({
        "RIDAGEYR": "age",
        "BMXWT": "weight",
        "BMXHT": "height",
        "BMXBMI": "bmival",
        "RIAGENDR": "gender",
        "DMDBORN4": "usborn"
    }, axis=1)
    .dropna()
    .reset_index(drop=True)
)

nhanes.loc[:, "usborn"] = nhanes.loc[:, "usborn"].astype("category").\
    cat.rename_categories(["yes", "no"]).astype("str")

nhanes.loc[:, "gender"] = nhanes.loc[:, "gender"].astype("category").\
    cat.rename_categories(["male", "female"]).astype("str")

nhanes.loc[:, "bmicat"] = pd.cut(nhanes.loc[:, "bmival"],
    bins=[0, 18.5, 25, 30, np.inf],
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P\\_BMX.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P_BMX.htm)

<sup>2</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P\\_DEMO.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P_DEMO.htm)

(continued from previous page)

```

    labels=["underweight", "normal", "overweight", "obese"]
)
nhanes.head()
##   age  weight  height  bmival gender usborn      bmicat
## 0  29    97.1  160.2    37.8 female   no       obese
## 1  49    98.8  182.3    29.7 male    yes  overweight
## 2  36    74.3  184.2    21.9 male    yes    normal
## 3  68   103.7  185.3    30.2 male    yes       obese
## 4  76    83.3  177.1    26.6 male    yes  overweight

```

We consider only the adult (at least 18 years old) participants, whose country of birth (the US or not) is well-defined.

We have a mix of categorical (gender, US born-ness, BMI category) and numerical (age, weight, height, BMI) variables. Unless we had encoded qualitative variables as integers, this would not be possible with plain matrices.

In this section, we will treat the categorical columns as grouping variables, so that we can, e.g., summarise or visualise the data *in each group* separately, because it is likely that data distributions vary across different factor levels. This is much like having many data frames stored in one object.

`nhanes` is thus an example of heterogeneous data at their best.

## 12.1 Basic Methods

`DataFrame` and `Series` objects are equipped with the `groupby` methods, which assist in performing a wide range of popular operations in data groups defined by one or more data frame columns (compare [[Wic11]]).

They return objects of class `DataFrameGroupBy` and `SeriesGroupby`:

```

type(nhanes.groupby("gender"))
## <class 'pandas.core.groupby.generic.DataFrameGroupBy'>
type(nhanes.groupby("gender").height) # or (...)["height"]
## <class 'pandas.core.groupby.generic.SeriesGroupBy'>

```

**Important:** `DataFrameGroupBy` and `SeriesGroupBy` inherit from (extend) the `GroupBy` class, hence they have many methods in common. Knowing that they are separate types is useful in exploring the list of possible methods and slots in the `pandas` manual.

**Exercise 12.1** Skim through the documentation<sup>3</sup> of the said classes.

For example, the **size** method determines the number of observations in each group:

```
nhanes.groupby("gender").size()
## gender
## female    4514
## male      4271
## dtype: int64
```

This returns an object of type **Series**.

Another example, this time with grouping with respect to a combination of levels in two qualitative columns:

```
nhanes.groupby(["gender", "bmcat"]).size()
## gender bmcat
## female underweight    93
##          normal       1161
##          overweight   1245
##          obese        2015
## male   underweight    65
##          normal       1074
##          overweight   1513
##          obese        1619
## dtype: int64
```

This yielded a **Series** with a hierarchical index (row labels). We can always use **reset\_index** to convert it to standalone columns:

```
nhanes.groupby(["gender", "bmcat"]).size().rename("counts").reset_index()
##   gender      bmcat  counts
## 0 female  underweight     93
## 1 female      normal    1161
## 2 female  overweight   1245
## 3 female      obese    2015
## 4 male   underweight     65
## 5 male      normal    1074
## 6 male  overweight   1513
## 7 male      obese    1619
```

Take note of the **rename** part thanks to which we have obtained a readable column name.

**Exercise 12.2** Unstack the above data frame (i.e., convert it from the long to the wide format).

---

<sup>3</sup> <https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/reference/groupby.html>

**Exercise 12.3** (\*) Note the difference between `pandas.GroupBy.count` and `pandas.GroupBy.size` methods.

### 12.1.1 Aggregating Data in Groups

The `DataFrameGroupBy` and `SeriesGroupBy` classes are equipped with a number of well-known aggregation functions, for example:

```
nhanes.groupby("gender").mean().reset_index()
##   gender      age     weight     height     bmival
## 0  female  48.956580  78.351839 160.089189 30.489189
## 1    male  49.653477  88.589932 173.759541 29.243620
```

The arithmetic mean was computed only on numeric columns. Further, a few common aggregates are generated by `describe`:

```
nhanes.groupby("gender").height.describe().reset_index()
##   gender  count      mean       std ...     25%     50%     75%   max
## 0  female  4514.0  160.089189  7.035483 ...  155.3  160.0  164.8 189.3
## 1    male  4271.0  173.759541  7.702224 ...  168.5  173.8  178.9 199.6
##
## [2 rows x 9 columns]
```

But we can always apply a custom list of functions using `aggregate`:

```
(
  nhanes.
  loc[:, ["gender", "height", "weight"]].
  groupby("gender").
  aggregate([np.mean, np.median, len]).
  reset_index()
)
##   gender      height             weight
##           mean median   len      mean median   len
## 0  female  160.089189  160.0  4514  78.351839  74.1  4514
## 1    male  173.759541  173.8  4271  88.589932  85.0  4271
```

The result's `columns` slot is a hierarchical index.

Own functions can of course be passed as well, e.g., arbitrary inline *lambda expressions*:

```
(
  nhanes.
  loc[:, ["gender", "height", "weight"]].
  groupby("gender").
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

aggregate(lambda x: (np.max(x)-np.min(x))/2).
reset_index()
)
##   gender  height  weight
## 0  female    29.1 110.85
## 1   male     27.5 102.90

```

**Note:** (\*\*\*) The column names in the output object are generated by reading the applied functions' `__name__` slots, see, e.g., `print(np.mean.__name__)`.

```

mr = lambda x: (np.max(x)-np.min(x))/2
mr.__name__ = "midrange"
(
    nhanes.
    loc[:, ["gender", "height", "weight"]].
    groupby("gender").
    aggregate([np.mean, mr]).
    reset_index()
)
##   gender      height          weight
##                   mean midrange      mean midrange
## 0  female  160.089189      29.1  78.351839  110.85
## 1   male   173.759541      27.5  88.589932  102.90

```

### 12.1.2 Transforming Data in Groups

We can easily transform individual columns relative to different data groups by means of the `transform` method for `GroupBy` objects.

```

def standardise(x):
    return (x-np.mean(x, axis=0))/np.std(x, axis=0, ddof=1)

nhanes["height_std"] = (
    nhanes.
    loc[:, ["height", "gender"]].
    groupby("gender").
    transform(standardise)
)
(
    nhanes.
    loc[:, ["gender", "height", "height_std"]].

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

groupby("gender").
aggregate([np.mean, np.std])
)
##           height          height_std
##             mean         std      mean   std
## gender
## female  160.089189  7.035483 -1.353518e-15  1.0
## male    173.759541  7.702224  3.155726e-16  1.0

```

The new column gives the *relative z-scores*: a woman with relative z-score of 0 has height of 160.1 cm, whereas a man with the same z-score has height of 173.8 cm.

**Exercise 12.4** Create a data frame comprised of 5 tallest men and 5 tallest women.

### 12.1.3 Manual Splitting Into Subgroups (\*)

It turns out that `GroupBy` objects and their derivatives are *iterable* (compare [Section 3.4](#)), therefore the grouped data frames and series can be easily processed manually in case where the built-in methods are insufficient (i.e., not so rarely).

Let us consider a small sample of our data frame.

```

grouped = nhanes.loc[:5, ["gender", "weight", "height"]].groupby("gender")
list(grouped)
## [('female',   gender  weight  height
## 0  female    97.1   160.2
## 5  female    91.1   152.7), ('male',   gender  weight  height
## 1  male     98.8   182.3
## 2  male     74.3   184.2
## 3  male    103.7   185.3
## 4  male     83.3   177.1)]

```

Therefore, when iterating through a `GroupBy` object, we get access to pairs giving all the levels of the grouping variable and the subsets of the input data frame corresponding to these categories.

```

for level, df in grouped:
    # df is a data frame - we can do whatever we want
    print(f"There are {df.shape[0]} subjects with gender={level}.")
## There are 2 subjects with gender='female'.
## There are 4 subjects with gender='male'.

```

Let us also demonstrate that the splitting can be done manually without the use of `pandas`. Calling `numpy.split(arr, ind)` returns a list with `arr` (being an array-like ob-

ject, e.g., a matrix, a vector, or a data frame) split rowwisely into `len(ind)+1` chunks at indices given by `ind`.

For example:

```
np.split(np.arange(10)*10, [3, 7])
## [array([ 0, 10, 20]), array([30, 40, 50, 60]), array([70, 80, 90])]
```

To split a data frame into groups defined by a categorical column, we can first sort it with respect to the criterion of interest, for instance, the gender data:

```
nhanes_srt = nhanes.sort_values("gender", kind="stable")
```

Then, we can use `numpy.unique` to fetch the indices of first occurrences of each series of identical labels:

```
levels, where = np.unique(nhanes_srt.loc[:, "gender"], return_index=True)
levels, where
## (array(['female', 'male'], dtype=object), array([ 0, 4514]))
```

This can now be used for dividing the sorted data frame into chunks:

```
nhanes_grp = np.split(nhanes_srt, where[1:])
```

We obtained a list of data frames split at rows specified by `where[1:]`. Here is a preview of the first and the last row in each chunk:

```
for i in range(len(levels)):
    print(f"level='{levels[i]}'; preview:")
    print(nhanes_grp[i].iloc[ [0, -1], : ])
    print("")
## level='female'; preview:
##      age  weight  height  bmival  gender usborn  bmicat  height_std
## 0      29     97.1   160.2    37.8  female      no  obese     0.015750
## 8781   67     82.8   147.8    37.9  female      no  obese    -1.746744
##
## level='male'; preview:
##      age  weight  height  bmival  gender usborn      bmicat  height_std
## 1      49     98.8   182.3    29.7  male     yes  overweight    1.108830
## 8784   74     59.7   167.5    21.3  male      no  normal    -0.812693
```

We can apply any operation on each subgroup we have learned so far, our imagination is the only limiting factor, e.g., aggregate some columns:

```
nhanes_agg = [
    dict(
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

level=t.loc[:, "gender"].iloc[0],
height_mean=np.mean(t.loc[:, "height"]),
weight_mean=np.mean(t.loc[:, "weight"])
)
for t in nhanes_grp
]
nhanes_agg
## [{"level': 'female', 'height_mean': 160.0891891891892, 'weight_mean': 78.351838723

```

Finally, the results may be combined, e.g., to form a data frame:

```

pd.DataFrame(nhanes_agg)
##   level  height_mean  weight_mean
## 0  female    160.089189     78.351839
## 1    male     173.759541     88.589932

```

We see that manual splitting is very powerful but quite tedious in case where we would like to perform the basic operations such as computing some basic aggregates. These scenarios are very common, no wonder why the **pandas** developers came up with an additional, convenience interface in the form of the **pandas.DataFrame.groupby** and **pandas.Series.groupby** methods and the **DataFrameGroupBy** and **SeriesGroupby** classes. However, it is still worth knowing the low-level way to perform splitting in case of more ambitious tasks.

**Exercise 12.5** (\*\*\*) Using **numpy.split** and **matplotlib.pyplot.boxplot**, draw a box-and-whisker plot of heights grouped by BMI category (four boxes side by side).

**Exercise 12.6** (\*\*\*) Using **numpy.split**, compute the relative z-scores of the height column separately for each BMI category.

**Note:** (\*\*) A simple trick to allow grouping with respect to more than one column is to apply **numpy.unique** on a string vector that combines the levels of the grouping variables, e.g., by concatenating them like `nhanes_srt.gender + "—" + nhanes_srt.bmicat` (assuming that `nhanes_srt` is ordered with respect to these two criteria).

## 12.2 Plotting Data in Groups

The **seaborn** package is particularly convenient for plotting grouped data – it is highly interoperable with **pandas**.

### 12.2.1 Series of Box Plots

For example, Figure 12.1 depicts a box plot with four boxes side by side:

```
sns.boxplot(x="bmival", y="gender", hue="usborn",
            data=nhanes, palette="Set2")
plt.show()
```

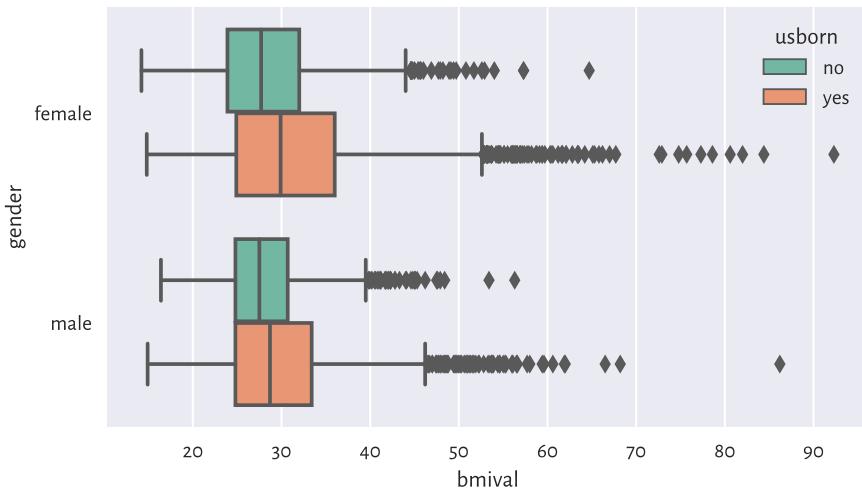


Figure 12.1: The distribution of BMIs for different genders and countries of birth

Let us contemplate for a while how easy it is now to compare the BMI distribution in different groups. Here, we have two grouping variables, as specified by the `y` and `hue` arguments.

**Exercise 12.7** Create a similar series of violin plots.

**Exercise 12.8** Add the average BMIs in each group to the above box plot.

### 12.2.2 Series of Bar Plots

In Figure 12.2, on the other hand, we have a bar plot representing a two way contingency table (obtained in a different way than in Chapter 11):

```
sns.barplot(
    y="counts",
    x="gender",
    hue="bmicat",
    palette="Set2",
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

data=(  

    nhanes.  

    groupby(["gender", "bmicat"]).
    size().
    rename("counts").
    reset_index()  

)  

)  

plt.show()

```

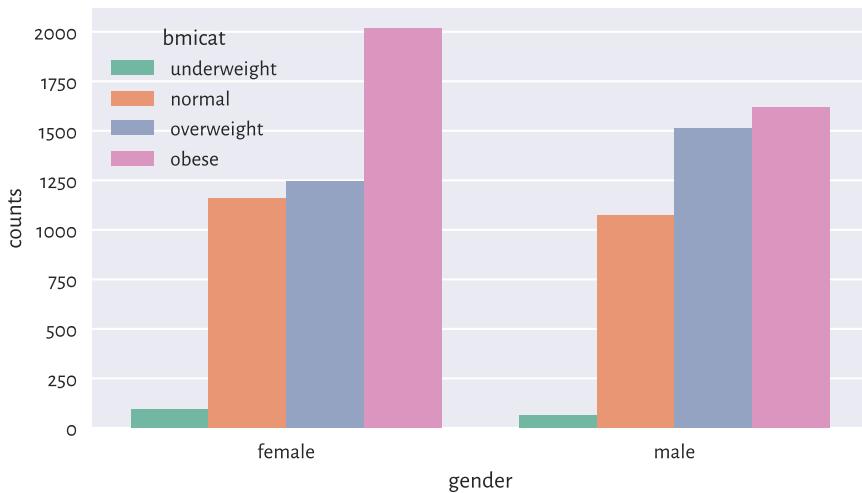


Figure 12.2: Number of persons for each gender and BMI category

**Exercise 12.9** Draw a similar bar plot where the bar heights sum to 100% for each gender.

**Exercise 12.10** Using the two-sample chi-squared test, verify whether the BMI category distributions differ significantly from each other across genders.

### 12.2.3 Semitransparent Histograms

Figure 12.3 illustrates that playing with semitransparent objects can make comparisons easy. By passing `common_norm=False`, we have scaled each density histogram separately, which is the behaviour we desire if samples are of different lengths.

```

sns.histplot(data=nhanes, x="weight", hue="usborn",
             element="step", stat="density", common_norm=False)
plt.show()

```

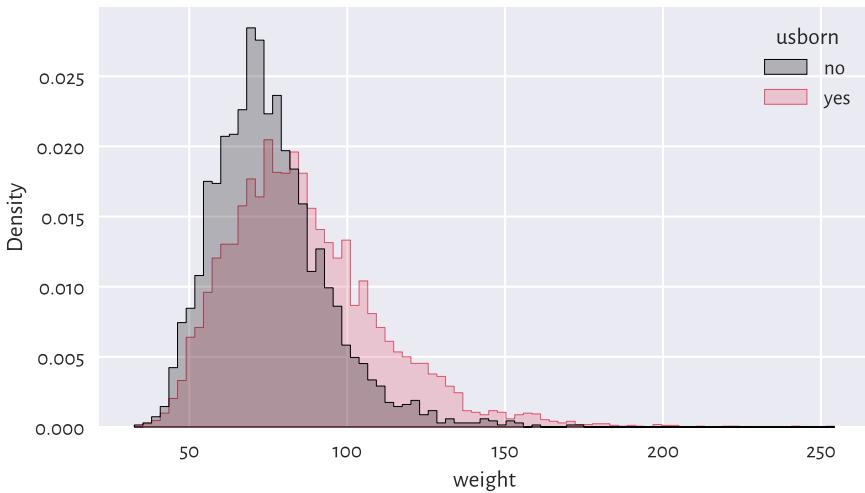


Figure 12.3: Clearly, the weight distribution of the US-born participants has higher mean and variance

#### 12.2.4 Scatterplots with Group Information

Scatterplots for grouped data can display category information using points of different shapes or colours, compare Figure 12.4.

```
sns.scatterplot(x="height", y="weight", hue="gender", data=nhanes, alpha=0.1)
plt.show()
```

#### 12.2.5 Grid (Trellis) Plots

Grid plot (also known as trellis, panel, or lattice plots) are a way to visualise data separately for each factor level. All the plots share the same coordinate ranges which makes them easily comparable. For instance, Figure 12.5 depicts a series of histograms of weights grouped by a combination of two categorical variables.

```
grid = sns.FacetGrid(nhanes, col="gender", row="usborn")
grid.map(sns.histplot, "weight", stat="density", color="lightgray")
# plt.show() # not required...
```

**Exercise 12.11** Pass `hue="bmicat"` additionally to `seaborn.FacetGrid`.

---

**Important:** Grid plots can bear any kind of data visualisation we have discussed so far (e.g., histograms, bar plots, scatterplots).

---

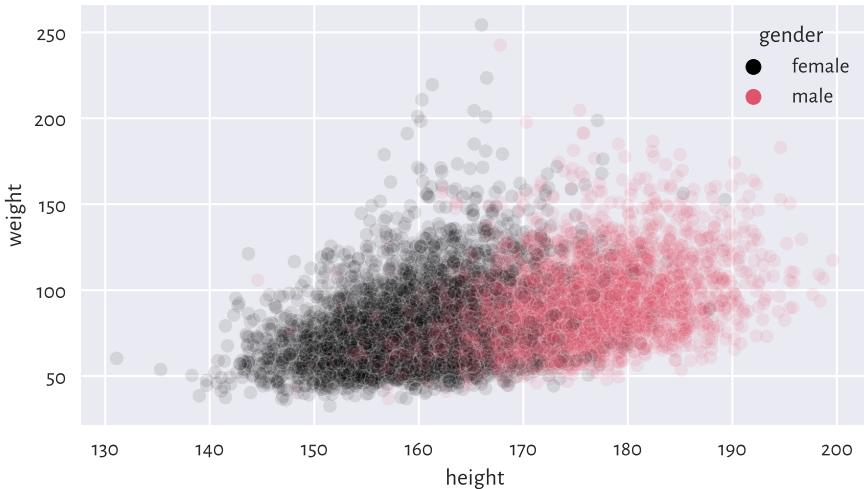


Figure 12.4: Weight vs height grouped by gender

**Exercise 12.12** Draw a trellis plot with scatterplots of weight vs height grouped by BMI category and gender.

### 12.2.6 Comparing ECDFs with the Two-Sample Kolmogorov–Smirnov Test (\*)

Figure 12.6 compares the empirical cumulative distribution functions of the weight distributions for US and non-US born participants.

```
sns.ecdfplot(data=nhanes, x="weight", hue="usborn")
plt.show()
```

A two-sample Kolmogorov–Smirnov test can be used to check whether two empirical cumulative distribution functions  $\hat{F}'_n$  (e.g., weight of the US-born participants) and  $\hat{F}''_m$  (e.g., weight of non-US-born persons) are significantly different or not from each other:

$$\begin{cases} H_0 : \hat{F}'_n = \hat{F}''_m & \text{(null hypothesis)} \\ H_1 : \hat{F}'_n \neq \hat{F}''_m & \text{(two-sided alternative)} \end{cases}$$

The test statistic is a variation of the one-sample variant discussed in Section 6.2.3. Namely, let

$$\hat{D}_{n,m} = \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} |\hat{F}'_n(t) - \hat{F}''_m(t)|.$$

Computing the above is slightly trickier than in the previous case, but luckily an appropriate procedure is already implemented in `scipy`:

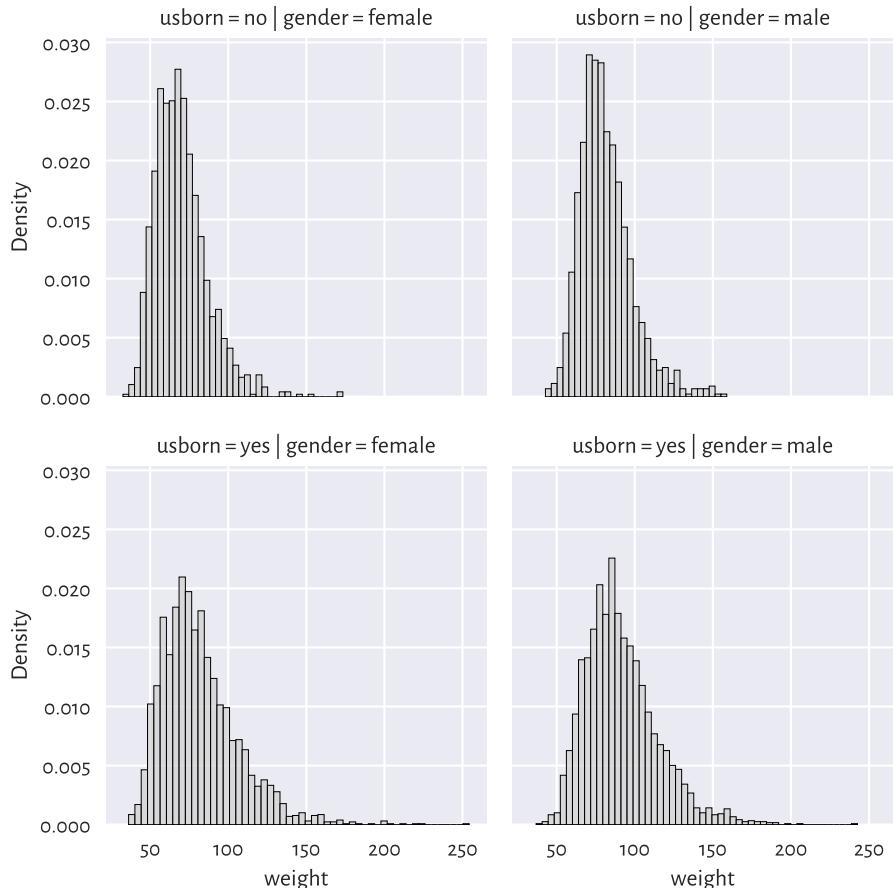


Figure 12.5: Distribution of weights for different genders and countries of birth

```
x12 = nhanes.set_index("usborn").weight
x1 = x12.loc["yes"]
x2 = x12.loc["no"]
Dnm = scipy.stats.ks_2samp(x1, x2)[0]
Dnm
## 0.22068075889911914
```

Assuming significance level  $\alpha = 0.001$ , the critical value is approximately (for larger  $n$  and  $m$ ) equal to

$$K_{n,m} = \sqrt{-\frac{\log(\alpha/2)(n+m)}{2nm}},$$

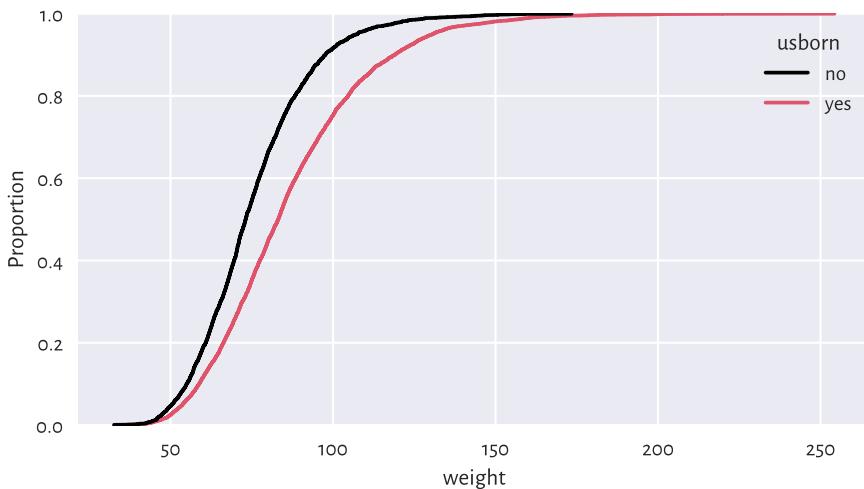


Figure 12.6: Empirical cumulative distribution functions of weight distributions for different birthplaces

```
alpha = 0.001
np.sqrt(-np.log(alpha/2) * (len(x1)+len(x2)) / (2*len(x1)*len(x2)))
## 0.04607410479813944
```

As usual, we reject the null hypothesis when  $\hat{D}_{n,m} \geq K_{n,m}$ , which is exactly the case here (at significance level 0.1%). In other words, weights of US- and non-US-born participants differ significantly.

---

**Important:** Frequentist hypothesis testing only takes into account the deviation between distributions that is explainable due to sampling effects (the assumed randomness of the data generation process). For large sample sizes, even very small deviations<sup>4</sup> will be deemed *statistically significant*, but it does not mean that we should consider them as *practically significant*. For instance, if a very costly, environmentally unfriendly, and generally inconvenient for everyone upgrade leads to a process' improvement such that we reject the null hypothesis stating that two distributions are equal, but it turns out that the gains are ca. 0.5%, the good old common sense should be applied.

---

**Exercise 12.13** Compare ECDFs of weights of males who are between 18 and 25 years old. Determine whether they are significantly different.

---

<sup>4</sup> Including those that are merely due to round-off errors, in very large samples.

---

**Important:** Some statistical textbooks and many research papers in the social sciences (amongst many others) employ the significance level of  $\alpha = 5\%$ , which is often criticised as too high (and for similar reasons we do not introduce the notion of  $p$ -values, which most practitioners misunderstand anyway). As many stakeholders aggressively push towards constant improvements in terms of inventing bigger, better, faster, more efficient things, larger  $\alpha$  allows for generating more *sensational* discoveries, because it considers smaller differences as already significant, and thus possibly adding to what we call the reproducibility crisis in the empirical sciences.

We, on the other hand, claim that it is better to err on the side of being cautious – which, in the long run, is more sustainable, and eco-friendly.

---

### 12.2.7 Comparing Quantiles

Plotting quantiles in two samples against each other can also give us some further (informal) insight with regard to the possible distributional differences. Figure 12.7 depicts an example Q-Q plot (compare Section 6.2.2 for a one-sample version), where we see that the distributions have similar shapes (points more or less lie on a straight line), but they are shifted and/or scaled (if they were, they would be on the identity line).

```
x = nhanes.weight.loc[nhanes.usborn == "yes"]
y = nhanes.weight.loc[nhanes.usborn == "no"]
xd = np.sort(x)
yd = np.sort(y)
if len(xd) > len(yd): # interpolate between quantiles in a longer sample
    xd = np.quantile(xd, np.arange(1, len(yd)+1)/(len(yd)+1))
else:
    yd = np.quantile(yd, np.arange(1, len(xd)+1)/(len(xd)+1))
plt.plot(xd, yd, "o")
plt.axline((xd[len(xd)//2], xd[len(xd)//2]), slope=1,
            linestyle=":", color="gray") # identity line
plt.xlabel("Sample quantiles (weight; usborn=yes)")
plt.ylabel("Sample quantiles (weight; usborn=no)")
plt.show()
```

Notice that we interpolated between the quantiles in a larger sample to match the length of the shorter vector.

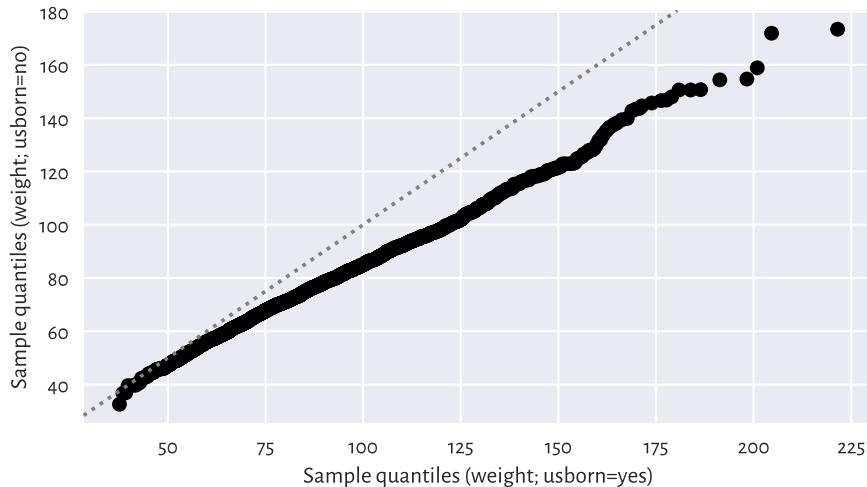


Figure 12.7: A two-sample Q-Q plot

## 12.3 Classification Tasks

Let us consider a small sample of white, rather sweet wines from a much larger `wine quality`<sup>5</sup> dataset.

```
wine_train = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/other/sweetwhitewine_train2.csv",
    comment="#")
wine_train.head()
##      alcohol      sugar  bad
## 0  10.625271  10.340159  0
## 1   9.066111  18.593274  1
## 2  10.806395   6.206685  0
## 3  13.432876   2.739529  0
## 4   9.578162   3.053025  0
```

We are given each wine's alcohol and residual sugar content, as well as a binary categorical variable stating whether a group of sommeliers deem a given beverage quite bad (1) or not (0). Figure 12.8 reveals that bad wines are rather low in... alcohol and, to some extent, sugar.

<sup>5</sup> <http://archive.ics.uci.edu/ml/datasets/Wine+Quality>

```
sns.scatterplot(x="alcohol", y="sugar",
                 data=wine_train, hue="bad", palette=["black", "red"], alpha=0.5)
plt.xlabel("alcohol")
plt.ylabel("sugar")
plt.legend(title="bad")
plt.show()
```

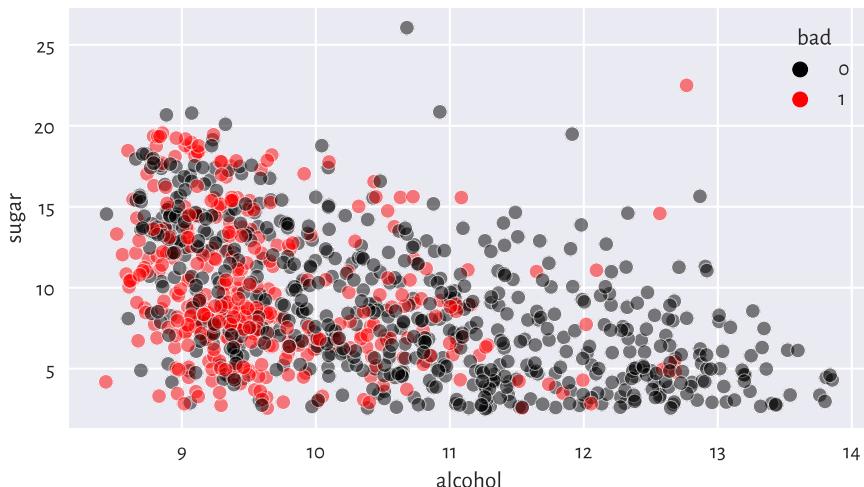


Figure 12.8: Scatterplot for sugar vs alcohol content for white, rather sweet wines, and whether they are considered bad (1) or drinkable (0) by some experts

Someone answer the door! We have just received a delivery: quite a few new wine bottles whose alcohol and sugar contents have, luckily, been given on their respective labels.

```
wine_test = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
                        "teaching_data/master/other/sweetwhitewine_train2.csv",
                        comment="#").iloc[:, :-1]
wine_test.head()
##      alcohol      sugar
## 0  10.625271  10.340159
## 1   9.066111  18.593274
## 2  10.806395   6.206685
## 3  13.432876   2.739529
## 4   9.578162   3.053025
```

We would like to determine which of the wines from the test set might be not-bad

without asking an expert for their opinion. In other words, we would like to exercise a *classification* task. More formally:

---

**Important:** Assume we are given a set of training points  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  and the corresponding reference outputs  $\mathbf{y} \in \{L_1, L_2, \dots, L_l\}^n$  in the form of a categorical variable with  $l$  distinct levels. The aim of a *classification* algorithm is to predict what the outputs for each point from a possibly different dataset  $\mathbf{X}' \in \mathbb{R}^{n' \times m}$ , i.e.,  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}' \in \{L_1, L_2, \dots, L_l\}^{n'}$ , might be.

---

In other words, we are asked to fill the gaps in a categorical variable. Recall that in a regression problem (Section 9.2), the reference outputs were numerical.

**Exercise 12.14** Which of the following are instances of classification problems and which are regression tasks?

- Detect email spam;
- Predict a market stock price;
- Predict the likeability of a new advertising piece;
- Assess credit risk;
- Detect tumour tissues in medical images;
- Predict time-to-recovery of cancer patients;
- Recognise smiling faces on photographs;
- Detect unattended luggage in airport security camera footage;
- Turn on emergency braking to avoid a collision with pedestrians in autonomous vehicle.

What kind of data should you gather in order to tackle them?

### 12.3.1 K-Nearest Neighbour Classification

One of the simplest approaches to classification – good enough for such an introductory course – is based on the information about a test point’s nearest neighbours (compare Section 8.4.4) living in the training sample.

Fix  $k \geq 1$ . Namely, to classify some  $\mathbf{x}' \in \mathbb{R}^m$ :

1. Find the indices  $N_k(\mathbf{y}) = \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$  of the  $k$  points from  $\mathbf{X}$  closest to  $\mathbf{x}'$ , i.e., ones that fulfil for all  $j \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$

$$\|\mathbf{x}_{i_1, \cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \dots \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{i_k, \cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\| \leq \|\mathbf{x}_{j, \cdot} - \mathbf{x}'\|.$$

2. Classify  $\mathbf{x}'$  as  $y' = \text{mode}(y_{i_1}, \dots, y_{i_k})$ , i.e., assign it the label that most frequently occurs amongst its  $k$  nearest neighbours. If a mode is nonunique, resolve the ties, for example, at random.

It is thus a very similar algorithm to  $k$ -nearest neighbour regression (Section 9.2.1), where we replaced the *quantitative* mean with the *qualitative* mode.

This is a variation on the theme: if you don't know what to do in a given situation, try to mimic what most of the other people around you are doing. Or, if you don't know what to think about a particular wine, but amongst the 5 similar ones (in terms of alcohol and sugar content) three were said to be awful, say that you don't like it because it's not sweet enough. Thanks to this, others will think you are a very sophisticated wine taster.

Let us apply a 5-nearest neighbour classifier on the standardised version of the dataset: as we are about to use a technique based on pairwise distances, it would be best if the variables were on the same scale.

```
k = 5
y_train = wine_train['bad'].to_numpy()
```

Computing the z-scores for the train set:

```
X_train = wine_train.loc[:, ["alcohol", "sugar"]].to_numpy()
means = np.mean(X_train, axis=0)
sds = np.std(X_train, axis=0)
Z_train = (X_train-means)/sds
```

The z-scores for the test set (let us stress that they are based on the aggregates computed for the train set):

```
Z_test = (wine_test.loc[:, ["alcohol", "sugar"]].to_numpy()-means)/sds
```

Making the predictions:

```
def knn_class(X_test, X_train, y_train, k):
    nnis = scipy.spatial.KDTree(X_train).query(X_test, k)[1]
    nnls = y_train[nnis] # same as: y_train[nnis.reshape(-1)].reshape(-1, k)
    return scipy.stats.mode(nnls.reshape(-1, k), axis=1)[0].reshape(-1)

y_pred = knn_class(Z_test, Z_train, y_train, k)
y_pred[:10] # preview
## array([0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0])
```

First, we have fetched the indices of each test point's nearest neighbours (amongst the points in the training set). Then, we have fetched their corresponding labels; they are stored in a matrix with  $k$  columns. Finally, we computed the modes in each row, and hence classified each point in the test set.

**Note:** Unfortunately, `scipy.stats.mode` does not resolve the possible ties at random.

Nevertheless, in our case,  $k$  is odd and the number of possible classes is  $l = 2$ , therefore the mode is always unique.

Figure 12.9 shows how nearest neighbour classification categorises different regions of a section of the two-dimensional plane. The greater the  $k$ , the smoother the decision boundaries. Naturally, in regions corresponding to few training points we do not expect the classification accuracy to be good enough.

```
x1 = np.linspace(Z_train[:, 0].min(), Z_train[:, 0].max(), 100)
x2 = np.linspace(Z_train[:, 1].min(), Z_train[:, 1].max(), 100)
xg1, xg2 = np.meshgrid(x1, x2)
Xg12 = np.column_stack((xg1.reshape(-1), xg2.reshape(-1)))
ks = [5, 25]
for i in range(len(ks)):
    plt.subplot(1, len(ks), i+1)
    yg12 = knn_class(Xg12, Z_train, y_train, ks[i])
    plt.scatter(Z_train[:, 0], Z_train[:, 1],
                c=np.array(["black", "red"])[y_train], alpha=0.5)
    plt.contourf(x1, x2, yg12.reshape(len(x2), len(x1)),
                  cmap="RdGy_r", alpha=0.5)
    plt.title(f"$k={ks[i]}$")
    plt.xlabel("alcohol")
    plt.ylabel("sugar")
plt.show()
```

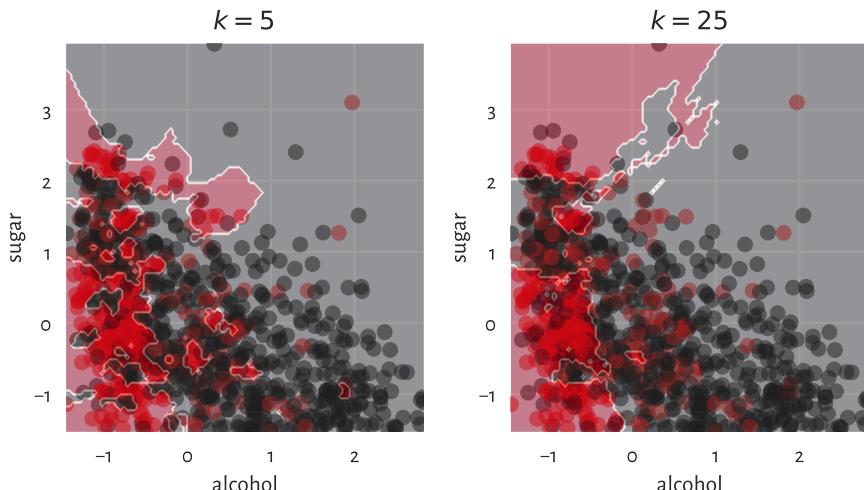


Figure 12.9:  $K$ -nearest neighbour classification of a whole, dense, two-dimensional grid of points for different  $k$

**Example 12.15** (\*\*\*) The same with the **scikit-learn** package:

```
import sklearn.neighbors
knn = sklearn.neighbors.KNeighborsClassifier(k)
knn.fit(Z_train, y_train)
y_pred2 = knn.predict(Z_test)
```

We can verify that the results are identical to the ones above by calling:

```
np.all(y_pred2 == y_pred)
## True
```

### 12.3.2 Assessing the Quality of Predictions

It is time to reveal the truth: our test wines, it turns out, have already been assessed by some experts.

```
y_test = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/other/sweetwhitewine_train2.csv",
    comment="#").iloc[:, -1].to_numpy()
y_test[:10] # preview
## array([0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1])
```

The *accuracy* score is the most straightforward measure of the similarity between these true labels (denoted  $y'$ ) and the ones predicted by the classifier (denoted  $\hat{y}'$ ). It is defined as a ratio of the correctly classified instances to all the instances.

```
np.mean(y_test == y_pred)
## 0.788
```

Thus, 79% of the wines were correctly classified with regard to their true quality. Before we get too enthusiastic, let us note that our dataset is slightly imbalanced:

```
pd.Series(y_test).value_counts() # contingency table
## 0    639
## 1    361
## dtype: int64
```

It turns out that 639 out of 1000 wines in our sample are (truly) good. Therefore, a classifier which labels all the wines as great would have accuracy of ca. 64%. Thus, our machine learning approach to wine quality assessment is not that usable after all.

Thus, it is always good to analyse the corresponding *confusion matrix*, which is a two-way contingency table summarising the correct decisions and errors we make.

```
C = pd.DataFrame(
    dict(y_pred=y_pred, y_test=y_test)
).value_counts().unstack(fill_value=0)
C
## y_test      0      1
## y_pred
## 0          548   121
## 1          91    240
```

In the binary classification case ( $l = 2$ ) such as this one, its entries are usually referred to as what is given in the table below. The terms *positive* and *negative* refer to the output predicted by a classifier, i.e., they indicate whether some  $\hat{y}'$  is equal to 1 and 0, respectively.

Table 12.1: The different cases of true vs predicted labels in a binary classification task

| $(l = 2)$      | $y' = 0$                      | $y' = 1$                       |
|----------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| $\hat{y}' = 0$ | <b>True Negative</b>          | False Negative (Type II error) |
| $\hat{y}' = 1$ | False Positive (Type I error) | <b>True Positive</b>           |

Ideally, the number of false positives and false negatives should be as low as possible. The accuracy score only takes the raw number of true negatives (TN) and true positives (TP) into account and thus might not be a good metric in imbalanced classification problems.

There are, fortunately, some more meaningful measures in the case where class 1 less frequently occurring and where mispredicting it is considered more hazardous than making an inaccurate prediction with respect to class 0 (most will agree that it is better to be surprised by a vino mis-labelled as bad, than be disappointed with a highly recommended product where we have already built some expectations around it; not getting diagnosed with COVID-19 where we actually are sick can be more dangerous for the people around us than being forced to stay at home where it turned out to be only some mild headache after all; and so forth).

- *Precision* answers the question: If the classifier outputs 1, what is the probability that this is indeed true?

$$\text{Precision} = \frac{\text{TP}}{\text{TP} + \text{FP}}.$$

```
C = C.to_numpy()
C[1,1]/(C[1,1]+C[1,0]) # Precision
## 0.7250755287009063
```

Thus, in 73% cases, when a classifier labels a vino as bad, it is actually undrinkable.

- *Recall* (sensitivity, hit rate, or true positive rate) – If the true class is 1, what is the probability that the classifier will detect it?

$$\text{Recall} = \frac{\text{TP}}{\text{TP} + \text{FN}}.$$

```
C[1,1]/(C[1,1]+C[0,1]) # Recall
## 0.6648199445983379
```

Only 66% of the really bad wines will be filtered out by the classifier.

- *F-measure* (or  $F_1$ -measure), is the harmonic mean of precision and recall in the case where we had rather have them aggregated into a single number

$$F = \frac{1}{\frac{\frac{1}{\text{Precision}} + \frac{1}{\text{Recall}}}{2}} = \left( \frac{1}{2} \left( \text{Precision}^{-1} + \text{Recall}^{-1} \right) \right)^{-1} = \frac{\text{TP}}{\text{TP} + \frac{\text{FP} + \text{FN}}{2}}.$$

```
C[1,1]/(C[1,1]+0.5*C[0,1]+0.5*C[1,0]) # F
## 0.6936416184971098
```

Overall, we can conclude that our classifier is subpar.

**Exercise 12.16** Would you use precision or recall in each of the following settings?

- *Medical diagnosis*;
- *Medical screening*;
- *Suggestions of potential matches in a dating app*;
- *Plagiarism detection*;
- *Wine recommendation*.

### 12.3.3 Splitting into Training and Test Sets

The training set, that we have been provided with, was used as a source of knowledge about our problem domain.

**Important:** The  $k$ -nearest neighbour classifier is technically *model-free*, therefore in order to generate a new prediction, we need to be able to query all the points in the database – they must be at hand all the time.

Most statistical/machine learning algorithms, however, by construction, generalise the patterns discovered in the dataset in the form of mathematical functions (often-times, very complicated ones), that are fitted by minimising some error metric. Linear

regression analysis by means of the least squares approximation uses exactly this kind of approach.

Either way, we have used a separate *test set* to verify the quality of our classifier on so-far *unobserved* data, i.e., its *predictive* capabilities. After all, we do not want our model to overfit to training data and be completely useless when filling the gaps between the points we were exposed to. This is like being a student who can only repeat what the teacher says, and when faced with a slightly different real-world problem, they panic and say complete gibberish.

In the above example, the train and test sets were created by yours truly. Normally, however, it is the data scientist who splits a single data frame into two parts themselves. This way, they can *mimic* the situation where some *test* observations become available after the learning phase is complete.

Here is an example data frame:

```
XY = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    x=np.round(np.random.rand(10), 1),
    y=np.round(np.random.rand(10), 1)
)) # whatever
XY
##      x      y
## 0  0.7  0.3
## 1  0.3  0.7
## 2  0.2  0.4
## 3  0.6  0.1
## 4  0.7  0.4
## 5  0.4  0.7
## 6  1.0  0.2
## 7  0.7  0.2
## 8  0.5  0.5
## 9  0.4  0.5
```

Let us generate its 60/40% partition. To avoid bias, it is best to allocate the rows into the training and test sets at random. One way to do so is to create a vector of randomly rearranged row indices:

```
np.random.seed(123) # assure reproducibility
n = XY.shape[0]
idx = np.arange(n)
np.random.shuffle(idx) # modifies idx in place
idx
## array([4, 0, 7, 5, 8, 3, 1, 6, 9, 2])
```

and now the train set can be created by picking the rows at the first 60% of these indices:

```
XY_train = XY.iloc[idx[:int(0.6*n)], :]
XY_train
##      x      y
## 4  0.7  0.4
## 0  0.7  0.3
## 7  0.7  0.2
## 5  0.4  0.7
## 8  0.5  0.5
## 3  0.6  0.1
```

and the test set can utilise the remaining 40%:

```
XY_test = XY.iloc[idx[int(0.6*n):], :]
XY_test
##      x      y
## 1  0.3  0.7
## 6  1.0  0.2
## 9  0.4  0.5
## 2  0.2  0.4
```

It is easy to verify that the union of these two sets gives the original data frame and that they have no rows in common.

### 12.3.4 Validating Many Models (Parameter Selection)

When trying to come up with a good solution to a given task, there usually are many *hyperparameters* that should be tweaked, for example:

- which independent variables should be used for model building,
- how they should be preprocessed; e.g., which of them should be standardised,
- if an algorithm has some tunable parameters, what is the best combination thereof; for instance, which  $k$  should we use in for the  $k$ -nearest neighbours search.

At initial stages of data analysis, we usually tune them up by trial and error. Later, but this is already beyond the scope of this introductory course, we are used to exploring all the possible combinations thereof (exhaustive grid search) or making use of some local search-based heuristics (e.g., greedy optimisers such as hill climbing).

These always involve verifying the performance of *many* different classifiers, for example, 1-, 3-, 9, and 15-nearest neighbours-based ones. For each of them, we need to compute separate quality metrics, e.g.,  $F$ -measures. Then, the classifier which yields the highest score is picked as the best. Unfortunately, if we do it recklessly, this can lead to *overfitting* to the test set – the obtained metrics might be too optimistic and can poorly reflect the real performance of the solution on future data.

Assuming that our dataset carries a decent number of observations, in order to overcome this problem, we can perform a random *train-validation-test split*:

- *training sample* (e.g., 60% of randomly chosen rows) – for model construction,
- *validation sample* (e.g., 20%) – used to tune the hyperparameters of many classifiers and to choose the best one,
- *test sample* (e.g., the remaining 20%) – used to assess the goodness of fit of the best classifier.

---

**Important:** Test sample must neither be used in the training nor in the validation phase (no cheating). After all, we would like to obtain a good estimate of a classifier's performance on previously unobserved data.

---

Of course, in the same way we can validate different regression models – this common-sense approach is not limited to classification.

**Exercise 12.17** Determine the best parameter setting for the k-nearest neighbour classification of the *color* variable based on standardised versions of some physicochemical features (chosen columns) of wines in the *wine\_quality\_all*<sup>6</sup> dataset. Create a 60/20/20% dataset split. For each  $k = 1, 3, 5, 7, 9$ , compute the corresponding F-measure on the validation test. Evaluate the quality of best classifier on the test set.

---

**Note:** (\*) We can use various *cross-validation* techniques instead of a train-validate-test split, especially on smaller datasets. For instance, in a *5-fold cross-validation*, we split the original train set randomly into 5 disjoint parts:  $A, B, C, D, E$  (more or less of the same size). We use each combination of 4 chunks as training sets and the remaining part as the validation set, for which we generate the predictions and then compute, say, the F-measure:

| train set                | validation set | F-measure |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| $B \cup C \cup D \cup E$ | $A$            | $F_A$     |
| $A \cup C \cup D \cup E$ | $B$            | $F_B$     |
| $A \cup B \cup D \cup E$ | $C$            | $F_C$     |
| $A \cup B \cup C \cup E$ | $D$            | $F_D$     |
| $A \cup B \cup C \cup D$ | $E$            | $F_E$     |

At the end we can compute the average F-measure,  $(F_A + F_B + F_C + F_D + F_E)/5$ , as a basis for assessing different classifiers' quality.

---

**Exercise 12.18** (\*\*) Redo the above exercise (assessing the wine colour classifiers), but this time maximising the F-measure obtained by a 5-fold cross-validation.

---

<sup>6</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/other/wine\\_quality\\_all.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/other/wine_quality_all.csv)

## 12.4 Clustering Tasks

So far we have been implicitly assuming that either each dataset comes from a single homogeneous distribution or we have a categorical variable that naturally defines the groups that we can split the dataset into. However, it might be the case that we are given a sample coming from a distribution mixture, where some subsets behave differently, but a grouping variable has not been provided at all (e.g., we have height and weight data but no information about the subjects' sexes).

Clustering (also known as segmentation, or quantisation) methods can be used to partition a dataset into groups based only on the spatial structure of the points' relative densities. In the  $k$ -means method, which we discuss below, the cluster structure is determined based on the proximity to  $k$  carefully chosen group centroids (compare Section 8.4.2).

### 12.4.1 K-Means Method

Fix  $k \geq 2$ . In the  $k$ -means method<sup>7</sup>, we seek  $k$  pivot points,  $\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2, \dots, \mathbf{c}_k \in \mathbb{R}^m$  whose total squared distance thereto is minimised

$$\text{minimise } \sum_{i=1}^n \min \{ \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}_1\|^2, \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}_2\|^2, \dots, \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}_k\|^2 \} \quad \text{w.r.t. } \mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2, \dots, \mathbf{c}_k,$$

however, for each point in the dataset this time we take into account only the closest pivot.

Let us introduce the *label vector*  $\ell$  such that

$$\ell_i = \arg \min_j \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}_j\|^2,$$

i.e., it is the index of the pivot closest to  $\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot}$ .

We will consider all the points  $\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot}$  with  $i$  such that  $\ell_i = j$  as belonging to the same,  $j$ th, *cluster* (point group). This way,  $\ell$  defines a *partition* of the original dataset into  $k$  nonempty, mutually disjoint subsets.

Now, the above optimisation task can be equivalently rewritten as:

$$\text{minimise } \sum_{i=1}^n \|\mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot} - \mathbf{c}_{\ell_i}\|^2 \quad \text{w.r.t. } \mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2, \dots, \mathbf{c}_k$$

And this is why we refer to the above objective function as the (total) *within-cluster sum*

---

<sup>7</sup> Of course we do not have to denote the number of clusters with  $k$ : we could be speaking about the 2-means, 3-means,  $c$ -means, or  $\varrho$ -means method too. Nevertheless, some mainstream practitioners consider *k-means* as a kind of a brand name, let us thus refrain from adding to their confusion.

*of squares* (WCSS). This problems looks easier, but let us not be tricked;  $\ell_i$ s depend on  $c_j$ s and thus they vary together. We have just made it less explicit.

It can be shown that given a fixed label vector  $\ell$  representing a partitioning,  $c_j$  must be the centroid ([Section 8.4.2](#)) of the points assigned thereto:

$$c_j = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i:\ell_i=j} \mathbf{x}_{i,\cdot}$$

where  $n_j = |\{i : \ell_i = j\}|$  gives the number of  $i$ s such that  $\ell_i = j$ , i.e., how many points are assigned to  $c_j$ .

Here is an example dataset (see below for a scatterplot):

```
X = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/blobs1.txt", delimiter=",")
```

We can call `scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2` to find  $k = 2$  clusters:

```
import scipy.cluster.vq
C, l = scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2(X, 2)
```

The discovered cluster centres are stored in a matrix with  $k$  rows and  $m$  columns, i.e., the  $j$ -th row gives  $c_j$ .

```
C
## array([[ 0.99622971,  1.052801  ],
##        [-0.90041365, -1.08411794]])
```

The label vector is

```
l
## array([1, 1, 1, ..., 0, 0, 0], dtype=int32)
```

As usual in Python, indexing starts at 0, therefore for  $k = 2$  we only obtain the labels 0 and 1.

[Figure 12.10](#) depicts the two clusters (painted in different colours) together with the cluster centroids (black crosses). We use `l` as a colour selector in `my_colours[l]` (this is a clever instance of the integer vector-based indexing). It looks like we have correctly discovered the very natural partitioning of this dataset into two clusters.

```
plt.scatter(X[:, 0], X[:, 1], c=np.array(["black", "red"])[l])
plt.plot(C[:, 0], C[:, 1], "yX")
plt.axis("equal")
plt.show()
```

Here are the cluster sizes:

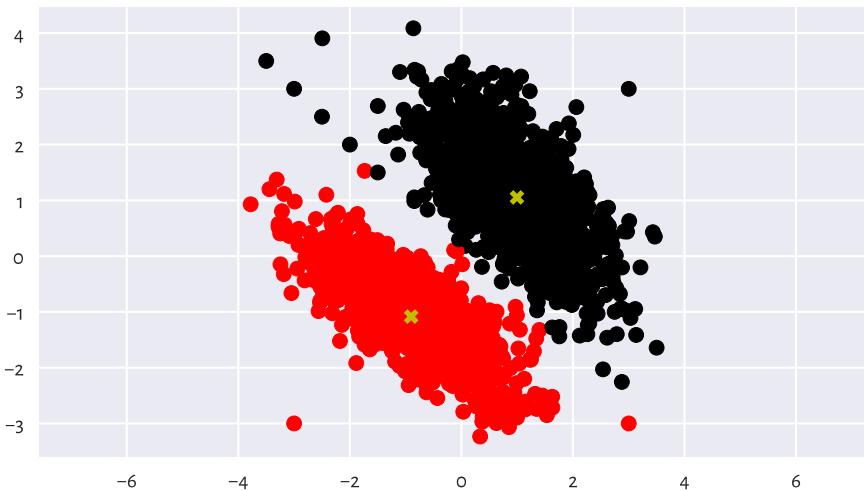


Figure 12.10: The two clusters discovered by the  $k$ -means method; cluster centroids are marked in black

```
np.bincount(l) # or, e.g., pd.Series(l).value_counts()
## array([1017, 1039])
```

The label vector  $l$  can be added as a new column in the dataset; here is a preview:

```
Xl = pd.DataFrame(dict(X1=X[:, 0], X2=X[:, 1], l=l))
Xl.sample(5, random_state=42) # some randomly chosen rows
##           X1      X2   l
## 184 -0.973736 -0.417269  1
## 1724  1.432034  1.392533  0
## 251 -2.407422 -0.302862  1
## 1121  2.158669 -0.000564  0
## 1486  2.060772  2.672565  0
```

We can now enjoy all the techniques for processing data in groups that we have discussed so far. In particular, computing the columnwise means gives nothing else than the above cluster centroids:

```
Xl.groupby("l").mean()
##           X1      X2
## l
## 0  0.996230  1.052801
## 1 -0.900414 -1.084118
```

The label vector  $\mathbf{l}$  can of course be recreated by referring to the distances of all the points to the centroids and picking the index of the closest pivot:

```
np.argmin(scipy.spatial.distance.cdist(X, C), axis=1)
## array([1, 1, 1, ..., 0, 0, 0])
```

**Important:** By construction (and its relation to Voronoi diagrams), the  $k$ -means method can only detect clusters of convex shapes (such as Gaussian blobs).

**Exercise 12.19** Perform the clustering of the `wut_isolation`<sup>8</sup> dataset and notice how non-sensical, geometrically speaking, the returned clusters are.

**Note:** Determine a clustering of the `wut_twosplashes`<sup>9</sup> dataset and display the results on a scatterplot. Compare the results to those obtained on the standardised version thereof. Recall what we have said about the Euclidean distance and its perception being disturbed when a plot's aspect ratio is not 1:1.

**Note:** (\*) An even simpler classifier than the  $k$ -nearest neighbours one described above builds upon the concept of the nearest centroids. Namely, it first determines the centroids (componentwise arithmetic means) of the points in each class. Then, a new point (from the test set) is assigned to the class whose centroid is the closest thereto. The implementation of such a classifier is left as a rather straightforward exercise to the reader. As an application, we recommend using it to extrapolate the results generated by the  $k$ -means method to previously unobserved data.

#### 12.4.2 Solving K-means is Hard

Unfortunately, the  $k$ -means method – the identification of label vectors/cluster centres that minimise the total within-cluster sum of squares – relies on solving a computationally hard combinatorial optimisation problem (e.g., [[Lee11]]). In other words, search for the *truly* (i.e., globally) optimal solution takes impractically long time for larger  $n$  and  $k$ .

Therefore, we must rely on some approximate algorithms which all have the same drawback: whatever they return can actually be a *suboptimal*, and hence possibly meaningless, solution.

The documentation of `scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2` is honest about it (after all, it is a package made by people with PhDs in STEM, not working for marketing divisions

<sup>8</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/clustering/wut\\_isolation.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/clustering/wut_isolation.csv)

<sup>9</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/clustering/wut\\_twosplashes.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/clustering/wut_twosplashes.csv)

of some greedy corporations), stating that the method *attempts to minimise the Euclidean distance between observations and centroids*. Further, `sklearn.cluster.KMeans`, implementing a similar algorithm, mentions that the procedure *is very fast [...], but it falls in local minima. That is why it can be useful to restart it several times.*

To understand what it all means, it will thus be very educational to study this issue in more detail, as certainly the discussed approach to clustering is not the only hard problem in data science (selecting an optimal set of independent variables with respect to AIC or BIC in linear regression being another example).

### 12.4.3 Lloyd's Algorithm

Technically, there is no such thing as *the k-means algorithm*. There many procedures, based on many different heuristics, which attempt to solve the *k*-means problem. Unfortunately, neither of them is of course perfect (because it is not possible).

Perhaps the most widely know (and easy to understand) method is based on fixed-point iteration and is traditionally attributed to Lloyd [[Llo2]]. For a given  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  and  $k \geq 2$ :

1. Pick initial cluster centres  $\mathbf{c}_1, \dots, \mathbf{c}_k$ , for example, randomly.
2. For each point in the dataset,  $\mathbf{x}_{i,:}$ , determine its closest centre  $\ell_i$ :

$$\ell_i = \arg \min_j \|\mathbf{x}_{i,:} - \mathbf{c}_j\|^2,$$

3. Compute the centroids of the clusters defined by the label vector  $\ell$ , i.e., for every  $j = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

$$\mathbf{c}_j = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i: \ell_i=j} \mathbf{x}_{i,:},$$

where  $n_j = |\{i : \ell_i = j\}|$  gives the size of the  $j$ -th cluster.

4. If the objective function (total within-cluster sum of squares) has not changed significantly (say, the absolute value of the difference is less than  $10^{-9}$ ) since the last iteration, stop and return the current  $\mathbf{c}_1, \dots, \mathbf{c}_k$  as the result. Otherwise, go to Step 2.

**Exercise 12.20** (\*) Implement the Lloyd's algorithm in the form of a function `kmeans(X, C)`, where  $X$  is the data matrix (n-by-m) and where the rows in  $C$ , being an k-by-m matrix, give the initial cluster centres.

### 12.4.4 Local Minima

By the way the above algorithm is constructed, we have, what follows.

**Important:** Lloyd's method guarantees that the centres  $\mathbf{c}_1, \dots, \mathbf{c}_k$  it returns cannot be

improved any further, at least not significantly. However, it does not necessarily mean that they yield the *globally* optimal (the best possible) WCSS. We might as well get stuck in a *local* minimum, where there is no better positioning thereof in the *neighbourhood* of the current cluster centres (compare Figure 12.11). Yet, had we looked beyond that, we could have found a superior solution.

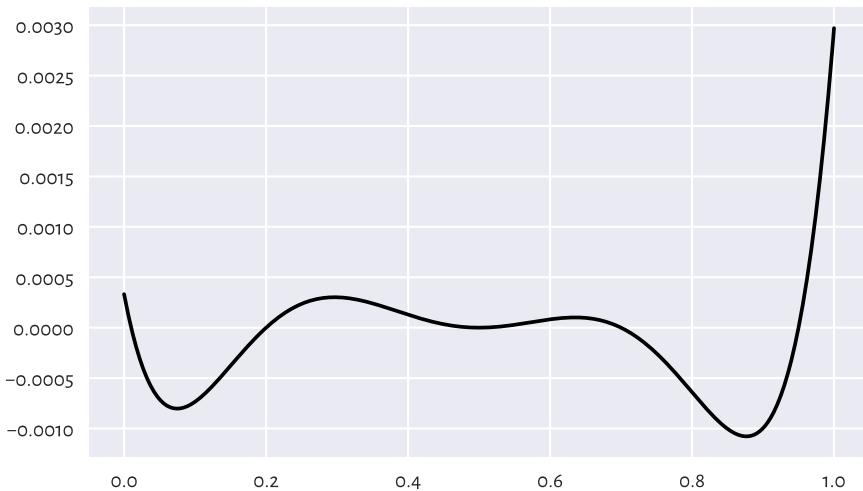


Figure 12.11: An example function (of only one variable; our problem is much higher-dimensional) with many local minima; how can we be sure there is no better minimum outside of the depicted interval?

A variant of the Lloyd's method is implemented in `scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2`, where the initial cluster centres are picked at random. Let us test its behaviour by analysing three chosen country-wise categories from the 2016 Sustainable Society Indices<sup>10</sup> dataset.

```
ssi = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/ssi_2016_categories.csv",
    comment="#")
X = ssi.set_index("Country").loc[:, [
    "PersonalDevelopmentAndHealth", "WellBalancedSociety", "Economy"]]
n = X.shape[0]
X.loc[["Australia", "Germany", "Poland", "United States"], :] # preview
##                                         PersonalDevelopmentAndHealth ... Economy
(continues on next page)
```

<sup>10</sup> <https://ssi.wi.th-koeln.de/>

(continued from previous page)

```

## Country           ...
## Australia        8.590927 ... 7.593052
## Germany         8.629024 ... 5.575906
## Poland          8.265950 ... 5.989513
## United States   8.357395 ... 3.756943
##
## [4 rows x 3 columns]

```

Thus, it is a three-dimensional dataset, where each point corresponds to a different country. Let us find a partition into  $k = 3$  clusters.

```

k = 3
np.random.seed(123) # reproducibility matters
C1, l1 = scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2(X, k)
C1
## array([[7.99945084, 6.50033648, 4.36537659],
##        [7.6370645 , 4.54396676, 6.89893746],
##        [6.24317074, 3.17968018, 3.60779268]])

```

The objective function (total within-cluster sum of squares) at the returned cluster centres is equal to:

```

import scipy.spatial.distance
def get_wcss(X, C):
    D = scipy.spatial.distance.cdist(X, C)**2
    return np.sum(np.min(D, axis=1))

get_wcss(X, C1)
## 446.5221283436733

```

Is it good or not necessarily? We are unable to tell. What we can do, however, is to run the algorithm again, this time from a different starting point:

```

np.random.seed(1234) # different seed - different initial centres
C2, l2 = scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2(X, k)
C2
## array([[7.80779013, 5.19409177, 6.97790733],
##        [6.31794579, 3.12048584, 3.84519706],
##        [7.92606993, 6.35691349, 3.91202972]])
get_wcss(X, C2)
## 437.51120966832775

```

It is a better solution (we are lucky; it might as well have been worse). But is it the best possible? Again, we cannot tell, alone in the dark.

Does a potential suboptimality affect the way the data points are grouped? It is indeed the case here. Let us take a look at the contingency table for the two label vectors:

```
pd.DataFrame(dict(l1=l1, l2=l2)).value_counts().unstack(fill_value=0)
## l2    0    1    2
## l1
## 0     8    0   43
## 1    39    6    0
## 2     0   57    1
```

**Important:** Clusters are actually unordered. The label vector  $(1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 3)$  represents the same clustering as the label vectors  $(3, 3, 2, 2, 3, 1)$  and  $(2, 2, 3, 3, 2, 1)$ .

By looking at the contingency table, we see that clusters 0, 1, and 2 in  $l_1$  correspond, respectively, to clusters 2, 0, and 1 in  $l_2$  (by a kind of majority voting). Therefore, we can relabel the elements in  $l_1$  to get a more readable result:

```
l1p = np.array([2, 0, 1])[l1]
pd.DataFrame(dict(l1p=l1p, l2=l2)).value_counts().unstack(fill_value=0)
## l2    0    1    2
## l1p
## 0     39    6    0
## 1      0   57    1
## 2      8    0   43
```

It turns out that  $8+6+1$  countries are categorised differently. We would definitely not want to initiate any diplomatic crisis because of our not knowing that the above algorithm might return suboptimal solutions.

**Exercise 12.21** (\*) Determine which countries are affected.

#### 12.4.5 Random Restarts

There will never be any guarantees, but we can increase the probability of generating a good solution by simply restarting the method many times from many randomly chosen points and picking the best<sup>11</sup> solution (the one with the smallest WCSS) identified as the result.

Let us make 1000 such *restarts*:

<sup>11</sup> If we have many different heuristics, each aiming to approximate a solution to the  $k$ -means problem, from the practical point of view it does not really matter which one returns the best solution – they are merely our tools to achieve a higher goal. Ideally, we should run all of them a few times and just get the result that corresponds to the smallest WCSS. What matters is that we have *did our best* to find the optimal set of cluster centres – and of course more approaches tested improve the chance of success.

```
wcss, Cs = [], []
for i in range(1000):
    C, l = scipy.cluster.vq.kmeans2(X, k, seed=i)
    Cs.append(C)
    wcss.append(get_wcss(X, C))
## /usr/local/lib/python3.9/dist-packages/scipy/cluster/vq.py:607: UserWarning: One o
##   warnings.warn("One of the clusters is empty. "
```

The best of the local minima (no guarantee that it is the global one, again) is:

```
np.min(wcss)
## 437.51120966832775
```

It corresponds to the cluster centres:

```
Cs[np.argmin(wcss)]
## array([[7.80779013, 5.19409177, 6.97790733],
##        [7.92606993, 6.35691349, 3.91202972],
##        [6.31794579, 3.12048584, 3.84519706]])
```

Actually, it is the same as `c2`, `l2` above (up to a permutation of labels). We were lucky, after all.

It is very educational to take a look at the distribution of the objective function at the identified local minima to see that, proportionally, in the case of this dataset it is not rare to end up in a quite bad solution; see [Figure 12.12](#).

```
plt.hist(wcss, bins=100)
plt.show()
```

Also, [Figure 12.13](#) depicts all the cluster centres that the algorithm converged to. We see that we should not be trusting the results generated by a single run of a heuristic solver to the  $k$ -means problem.

**Example 12.22** (\*) The `scikit-learn` package implements an algorithm that is similar to the Lloyd's one. The method is equipped with the `n_init` parameter (which defaults to 10) which automatically applies the aforementioned restarting. Still there are no guarantees:

```
import sklearn.cluster
np.random.seed(123)
km = sklearn.cluster.KMeans(k) # KMeans(k, n_init=10)
km.fit(X)
## KMeans(n_clusters=3)
km.inertia_ # WCSS
## 437.5467188958929
```

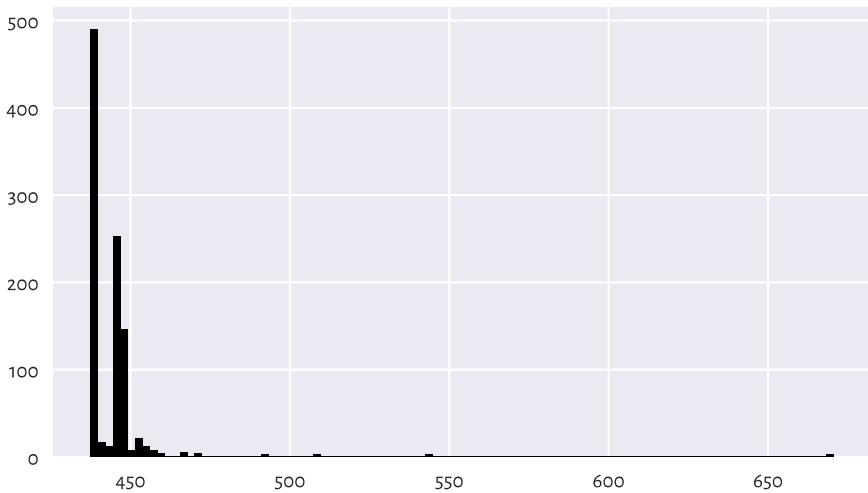


Figure 12.12: Within-cluster sum of squares at the results returned by different runs of the  $k$ -means algorithm; sometimes we might be very unlucky

*In this case, the solution is suboptimal too. As an exercise, we suggest the reader to pass `n_init=100`, `n_init=1000`, and `n_init=10000` and determine the best WCSS.*

---

**Note:** It is theoretically possible that a developer from the `scikit-learn` team, when they see the above result, will make a tweak in the algorithm so that after an update to the package, the returned minimum will be better. This cannot be deemed a bug fix, though, as there are no bugs here. Improving the behaviour of the method on this example will lead to its degradation on others. There is no free lunch in optimisation.

---

---

**Note:** Some datasets are more well-behaving than others. The  $k$ -means method is overall quite usable, but we should always be cautious.

---

**Exercise 12.23** Run the  $k$ -means method,  $k = 8$ , on the `sipu_unbalance`<sup>12</sup> dataset numerous times. Note the value of the total within-cluster sum of squares. Also, plot the cluster centres discovered. Do they make sense? Compare these to the case where you start the method from the

---

<sup>12</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/clustering/sipu\\_unbalance.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/clustering/sipu_unbalance.csv)

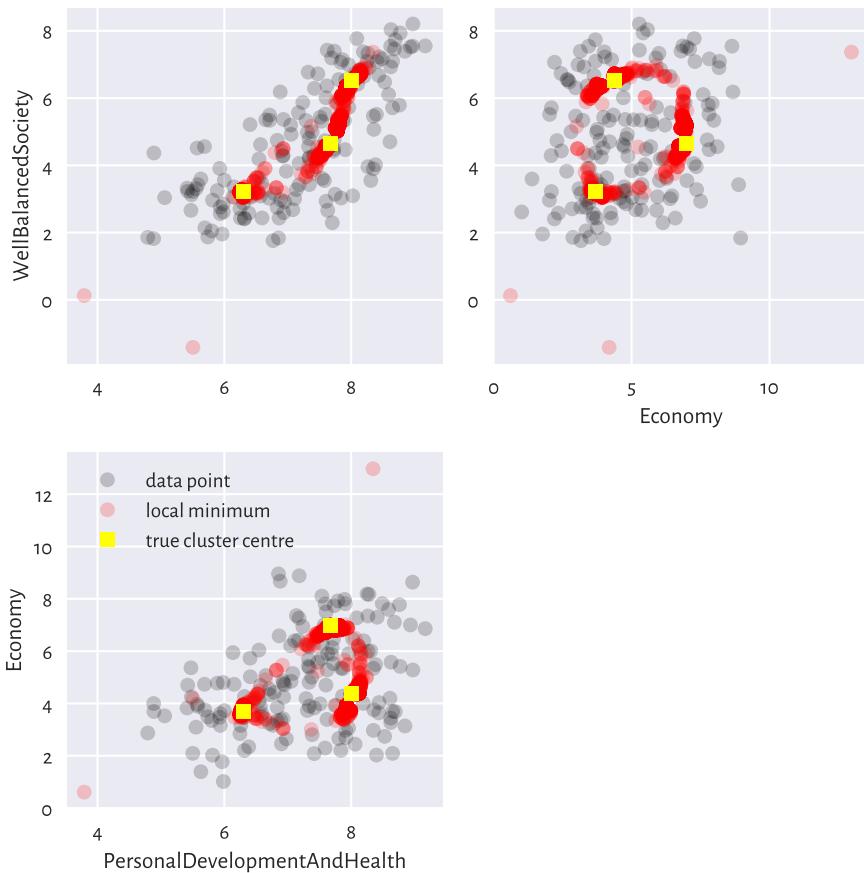


Figure 12.13: Different cluster centres our k-means algorithm converged to; some are definitely not optimal, and therefore the method must be restarted a few times in order to increase the likelihood of pinpointing the true solution

following cluster centres which are close to the global minimum.

$$\mathbf{C} = \begin{bmatrix} -15 & 5 \\ -12 & 10 \\ -10 & 5 \\ 15 & 0 \\ 15 & 10 \\ 20 & 5 \\ 25 & 0 \\ 25 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

## 12.5 Further Reading

An overall good introduction to classification is [[HTF17]] and [[Biso6]]. However, as we have said earlier, we recommend going through a solid course in matrix algebra and probability and statistics first, e.g., [[DFO20], [Gen17]] and [[DKLM05], [Gen09], [Gen20]].

For advanced theoretical (probabilistic, information-theoretic) results, see, e.g., [[BHK20], [DGL96]].

---

## 12.6 Exercises

**Exercise 12.24** Name the data type of an object that the `DataFrame.groupby` method returns.

**Exercise 12.25** What is the relationship between `GroupBy`, `DataFrameGroupBy`, and `SeriesGroupBy`?

**Exercise 12.26** What are relative z-scores and how can we compute them?

**Exercise 12.27** Why and when the accuracy score might not be the best way to quantify a classifier's performance?

**Exercise 12.28** What is the difference between recall and precision, both in terms of how they are defined and where they are the most useful?

**Exercise 12.29** Explain how a k-nearest neighbour classification algorithm works. Why do we say that is is model-free?

**Exercise 12.30** In the context of k-nearest neighbour classification, why it might be important to resolve the potential ties at random when computing the mode of the neighbours' labels?

**Exercise 12.31** What is the purpose of a train-test and train-validation-test set splits?

**Exercise 12.32** What is the difference between the fixed-radius and few-nearest-neighbours search?

**Exercise 12.33** Give the formula for the total within-cluster sum of squares.

**Exercise 12.34** Are there any cluster shapes that cannot be detected by the k-means method?

**Exercise 12.35** Why do we say that solving the k-means problem is hard?

**Exercise 12.36** Why restarting Lloyd's algorithm a few times is usually necessary?

---

# 13

---

## *Accessing Databases (An Interlude)*

---

**pandas** is convenient for working with data that fit into memory and which can be stored in individual CSV files. However, larger information banks, possibly in a shared environment, will often be made available to us via relational (structured) databases such as PostgreSQL or MariaDB, or a wide range of commercial products.

Most commonly, we will be using SQL (structured query language) to express the data chunks we need for analysis, fetching them from the database driver, and importing them to a **pandas** data frame to perform the already well-known operations.

Below we give a quick introduction to the basics of SQL using [SQLite](#)<sup>1</sup>, which is a lightweight, flat-file, and server-less database management system. Overall, SQLite is sensible for data of even hundreds or thousands of gigabytes in size that fit on a single computer's disk (making it a good choice for playing with our own data science projects or prototyping more complex solutions).

---

**Important:** The syntax of SQL is very readable – it is modelled after the natural (English) language. In this introduction, we merely assume that we wish to learn how to read the basic SQL queries, not to write our own. The latter should be covered by a separate course on databases.

---

---

### 13.1 Example Database

In the course of this section, we will be working with a simplified data dump of the Q&A site [Travel Stack Exchange](#)<sup>2</sup>, which we have [downloaded](#)<sup>3</sup> on 2017-10-31.

**Exercise 13.1** Before continuing, make yourself familiar with the [Travel Stack Exchange](#)<sup>4</sup> site.

For example, `Tags` gives, amongst others, topic categories (`TagName`) and how many questions mention them (`Count`):

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://sqlite.org>

<sup>2</sup> <http://travel.stackexchange.com>

<sup>3</sup> <https://archive.org/details/stackexchange>

<sup>4</sup> <http://travel.stackexchange.com>

```
Tags = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/travel_stackexchange_com_2017/Tags.csv.gz",
    comment="#")
Tags.head(3)
##   Count ExcerptPostId Id TagName WikiPostId
## 0    104      2138.0  1  cruising      2137.0
## 1     43       357.0  2 caribbean      356.0
## 2     43       319.0  4  vacations      318.0
```

`Users` provides information on the registered users. In particular, the `Id` column uniquely identifies each member.

```
Users = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/travel_stackexchange_com_2017/Users.csv.gz",
    comment="#")
Users.head(3)
##   AccountId Age           CreationDate ... Reputation UpVotes Views
## 0      -1.0  NaN  2011-06-21T15:16:44.253 ...        1.0  2472.0   0.0
## 1       2.0  40.0  2011-06-21T20:10:03.720 ...       101.0     1.0  31.0
## 2     7598.0  32.0  2011-06-21T20:11:02.490 ...       101.0     1.0  14.0
##
## [3 rows x 11 columns]
```

`Badges` recall all rewards given to the users (`UserId`) for their engaging in various praise-worthy activities:

```
Badges = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/travel_stackexchange_com_2017/Badges.csv.gz",
    comment="#")
Badges.head(3)
##   Class          Date  Id      Name TagBased UserId
## 0     3  2011-06-21T20:16:48.910  1 Autobiographer False     2
## 1     3  2011-06-21T20:16:48.910  2 Autobiographer False     3
## 2     3  2011-06-21T20:16:48.910  3 Autobiographer False     4
```

`Posts` (note again that `Id` is the unique identifier of each record in every data frame) lists all the questions and answers (the latter do not have `ParentId` set to `NaN`).

```
Posts = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/travel_stackexchange_com_2017/Posts.csv.gz",
    comment="#")
Posts.head(3)
##   AcceptedAnswerId ... ViewCount
## 0            393.0 ...      419.0
## 1             NaN ...     1399.0
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 2           NaN ...           NaN
##
## [3 rows x 17 columns]
```

`Votes` list all the up-votes (`VoteTypeId` equal to 2) and down-votes (`VoteTypeId` of 3) to all the posts. For privacy reasons, all `UserIds` are missing (which is encoded with a not-a-number, compare [Chapter 15](#)).

```
Votes = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/travel_stackexchange_com_2017/Votes.csv.gz",
    comment="#")
Votes.head(3)
##   BountyAmount      CreationDate  Id  PostId  UserId  VoteTypeId
## 0           NaN 2011-06-21T00:00:00.000  1      1     NaN         2
## 1           NaN 2011-06-21T00:00:00.000  2      1     NaN         2
## 2           NaN 2011-06-21T00:00:00.000  3      2     NaN         2
```

**Exercise 13.2** See the [README<sup>5</sup>](#) file for the detailed description of each column.

---

## 13.2 Exporting Data

Let us establish a connection with the to-be SQLite database. In our case, that will be an ordinary file stored on the computer's disk:

```
import tempfile, os.path
dbfile = os.path.join(tempfile.mkdtemp(), "travel.db")
print(dbfile)
## /tmp/tmpkv8_qvz8/travel.db
```

The above gives the file path (compare [Section 13.6.1](#)) where the database is going to be stored. We use a randomly generated filename inside the local filesystem's (we are on Linux) temporary directory, `/tmp`, because this is just a simple exercise and we will not be using this database afterwards.

And now:

```
import sqlite3
conn = sqlite3.connect(dbfile)
```

We are thus “connected”. The database might now be queried: new tables can be added, new records inserted, and information fetched.

---

<sup>5</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/travel\\_stackexchange\\_com/README.md](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/travel_stackexchange_com/README.md)

---

**Important:** At the end, we should not forget about the call to `conn.close()`.

---

We already have our data in the form of `pandas` data frames, therefore exporting them to the database is straightforward. All we have to do is to perform a bunch of calls to the `pandas.DataFrame.to_sql` method.

```
Tags.to_sql("Tags", conn, index=False)
Users.to_sql("Users", conn, index=False)
Badges.to_sql("Badges", conn, index=False)
Posts.to_sql("Posts", conn, index=False)
Votes.to_sql("Votes", conn, index=False)
```

---

**Note:** (\*) It is possible to export data that do not fit into memory by reading them in chunks of considerable, but not too large, sizes. In particular `pandas.read_csv` has the `nrows` argument that lets us read a number of rows from a file buffer; see `help("open")`. Then, `pandas.DataFrame.to_sql(..., if_exists="append")` can be used to append new rows to an existing table.

Exporting data can of course be done without `pandas` as well, e.g., when they are to be fetched from XML or JSON files (compare [Section 13.5](#)) and processed manually, row by row. Intermediate-level SQL users can call `conn.execute("CREATE TABLE t...")`, `conn.executemany("INSERT INTO t VALUES(?, ?, ?)", l)` followed by `conn.commit()` to create a new table (here: named `t`) populated by a list of records (e.g., in the form of tuples or `numpy` vectors). For more details, see the [manual](#)<sup>6</sup> of the `sqlite3` package.

---

### 13.3 Exercises on SQL vs pandas

We can use `pandas` to fetch the results generated by executing any SQL query, for example:

```
pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT * FROM Tags LIMIT 3
""", conn)
##   Count  ExcerptPostId  Id      TagName  WikiPostId
## 0    104          2138.0  1  cruising        2137.0
## 1     43          357.0   2  caribbean       356.0
## 2     43          319.0   4  vacations       318.0
```

---

<sup>6</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/library/sqlite3.html>

Fetches all columns (`SELECT *`) and the first 3 rows (`LIMIT 3`) from the `Tags` table.

**Exercise 13.3** For the above and all the following SQL queries, write the equivalent Python code using `pandas` functions and methods that generates exactly the same result. In each case, there might be more than one equally fine solution.

Let us emphasise again that the SQL syntax is very readable, hence no explanations should be necessary for the queries below. In case of any doubt, though, refer to the [manual](#)<sup>7</sup>.

Example solutions are provided at the end of this section.

**Example 13.4** For instance, here is the reference result:

```
res1a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT * FROM Tags LIMIT 3
""", conn)
```

Our example equivalent `pandas` implementation of the above operation might look like:

```
res1b = Tags.head(3)
```

To verify if the results are identical, we can call:

```
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res1a, res1b)
```

Sometimes, however the results generated by `pandas` will be the same up to the reordering of rows. In such a case, before calling `pandas.testing.assert_frame_equal`, it might thus be a good idea to call `DataFrame.sort_values` on both data frames to sort them with respect to 1 or 2 chosen columns. The good thing about the `assert_frame_equal` function is that it ignores small round-off errors introduced by some operations.

### 13.3.1 Filtering

**Exercise 13.5** Fetch all tag data for tags whose name contain "europe" as substring:

```
res2a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT * FROM Tags WHERE TagName LIKE '%europe%'
""", conn)
res2a
```

| ##   | Count | ExcerptPostId | Id   | TagName          | WikiPostId |
|------|-------|---------------|------|------------------|------------|
| ## 0 | 681   | 286.0         | 30   | europe           | 285.0      |
| ## 1 | 27    | 2384.0        | 174  | eastern-europe   | 2383.0     |
| ## 2 | 12    | 6403.0        | 512  | southeast-europe | 6402.0     |
| ## 3 | 20    | 4513.0        | 669  | central-europe   | 4512.0     |
| ## 4 | 36    | 16392.0       | 1950 | western-europe   | 16391.0    |

---

<sup>7</sup> <https://sqlite.org/lang.html>

*Hint: use `Tags.TagName.str.contains("europe")` to obtain the same result with `pandas`.*

**Exercise 13.6** From `Tags`, select two columns `TagName` and `Count` and rows for which `TagName` is equal to one of the three choices provided.

```
res3a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT TagName, Count
    FROM Tags
    WHERE TagName IN ('poland', 'australia', 'china')
""", conn)
res3a
##      TagName  Count
## 0      china    443
## 1  australia    411
## 2     poland    139
```

*Hint: use `pandas.Series.isin`.*

**Exercise 13.7** Select a number of columns from `Posts` whose rows fulfil given conditions:

```
res4a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT Title, Score, ViewCount, FavoriteCount
    FROM Posts
    WHERE PostTypeId=1 AND
        ViewCount>=10000 AND
        FavoriteCount BETWEEN 35 AND 100
""", conn)
res4a
##                                     Title  ...  FavoriteCount
## 0  When traveling to a country with a different c...  ...       35.0
## 1  How can I do a "broad" search for flights?  ...       49.0
## 2  Tactics to avoid getting harassed by corrupt p...  ...       42.0
## 3  Flight tickets: buy two weeks before even duri...  ...       36.0
## 4  OK we're all adults here, so really, how on ea...  ...       79.0
## 5  How to intentionally get denied entry to the U...  ...       53.0
## 6  How do you know if Americans genuinely/literal...  ...       79.0
## 7  OK, we are all adults here, so what is a bidet...  ...       38.0
## 8  How to cope with too slow Wi-Fi at hotel?  ...       41.0
##
## [9 rows x 4 columns]
```

### 13.3.2 Ordering

**Exercise 13.8** Select the `Title` and `Score` columns from `Posts` where `ParentId` is missing (i.e., the post is actually a question) and `Title` is well-defined; then, sort the result by the `Score`

*column, decreasingly (descending order); finally, return only first 5 rows (e.g., top 5 scoring questions):*

```
res5a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT Title, Score
    FROM Posts
    WHERE ParentId IS NULL AND Title IS NOT NULL
    ORDER BY Score DESC
    LIMIT 5
    """, conn)
res5a
##                                     Title  Score
## 0  OK we're all adults here, so really, how on ea...  306
## 1  How do you know if Americans genuinely/literal...  254
## 2  How to intentionally get denied entry to the U...  219
## 3  Why are airline passengers asked to lift up wi...  210
## 4  Why prohibit engine braking?                     178
```

*Hint: use `pandas.DataFrame.sort_values` and `numpy.isnan` or `pandas.isnull`.*

### 13.3.3 Removing Duplicates

**Exercise 13.9** Get all unique badge names for the user with  $Id=23$ .

```
res6a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT DISTINCT Name
    FROM Badges
    WHERE UserId=23
    """, conn)
res6a
##                      Name
## 0                  Supporter
## 1                  Student
## 2                  Teacher
## 3                  Scholar
## 4                  Beta
## 5      Nice Question
## 6                  Editor
## 7      Nice Answer
## 8                  Yearling
## 9  Popular Question
## 10     Taxonomist
## 11 Notable Question
```

*Hint: use `pandas.DataFrame.drop_duplicates`.*

**Exercise 13.10** For each badge given to the user with  $Id=23$ , get the year it was given and store it in a new column named `Year`. Then, select are unique pairs (`Name`, `Year`).

```
res7a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT DISTINCT
        Name,
        CAST(strftime('%Y', Date) AS FLOAT) AS Year
    FROM Badges
    WHERE UserId=23
    """, conn)
res7a
##          Name      Year
## 0      Supporter  2011.0
## 1       Student  2011.0
## 2      Teacher  2011.0
## 3     Scholar  2011.0
## 4       Beta  2011.0
## 5  Nice Question  2011.0
## 6       Editor  2012.0
## 7  Nice Answer  2012.0
## 8     Yearling  2012.0
## 9  Nice Question  2012.0
## 10  Nice Question  2013.0
## 11     Yearling  2013.0
## 12 Popular Question  2014.0
## 13     Yearling  2014.0
## 14 Taxonomist  2014.0
## 15 Notable Question  2015.0
## 16  Nice Question  2017.0
```

Hint: use `Badges.Date.astype("datetime64").dt.strftime("%Y").astype("float")`.

### 13.3.4 Grouping and Aggregating

**Exercise 13.11** Count how many badges of each type the user with  $Id=23$  has received. Also, for each badge type, return the minimal, average, and maximal receiving year. Return only the top 4 badges (with respect to the counts).

```
res8a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT
        Name,
        COUNT(*) AS Count,
        MIN(CAST(strftime('%Y', Date) AS FLOAT)) AS MinYear,
        AVG(CAST(strftime('%Y', Date) AS FLOAT)) AS MeanYear,
        MAX(CAST(strftime('%Y', Date) AS FLOAT)) AS MaxYear
    """, conn)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

FROM Badges
WHERE UserId=23
GROUP BY Name
ORDER BY Count DESC, MeanYear ASC
LIMIT 4
<"""", conn)

res8a
##           Name  Count  MinYear  MeanYear  MaxYear
## 0    Nice Question     4  2011.0   2013.25  2017.0
## 1    Yearling        3  2012.0   2013.00  2014.0
## 2 Popular Question     3  2014.0   2014.00  2014.0
## 3 Notable Question     2  2015.0   2015.00  2015.0

```

**Exercise 13.12** Similarly to the above, but now count how many unique combinations of pairs (*Name*, *Date*) are there; then, return only the rows having *Count* greater than 1 and order the results by *Count* decreasingly.

```

res9a = pd.read_sql_query("""
SELECT
    Name,
    CAST(strftime('%Y', Date) AS FLOAT) AS Year,
    COUNT(*) AS Count
    FROM Badges
    WHERE UserId=23
    GROUP BY Name, Year
    HAVING Count > 1
    ORDER BY Count DESC
<"""", conn)

res9a
##           Name  Year  Count
## 0  Popular Question  2014.0      3
## 1 Notable Question  2015.0      2

```

Note that *WHERE* is performed before *GROUP BY*, and *HAVING* is applied thereafter.

### 13.3.5 Joining

**Exercise 13.13** Join (merge) *Tags*, *Posts*, and *Users* for all posts with *OwnerUserId* not equal to -1 (i.e., the tags which were created by “alive” users). Return the top 6 records with respect to *Tags.Count*.

```

res10a = pd.read_sql_query("""
SELECT Tags.TagName, Tags.Count, Posts.OwnerUserId,

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    Users.Age, Users.Location, Users.DisplayName
  FROM Tags
  JOIN Posts ON Posts.Id=Tags.WikiPostId
  JOIN Users ON Users.AccountId=Posts.OwnerUserId
 WHERE OwnerUserId != -1
 ORDER BY Tags.Count DESC, Tags.TagName ASC
 LIMIT 6
""", conn)
res10a
##          TagName  Count ...      Location
## 0        canada   802 ... Mumbai, India
## 1       europe    681 ... Philadelphia, PA
## 2 visa-refusals   554 ... New York, NY B
## 3     australia   411 ... Mumbai, India
## 4           eu    204 ... Philadelphia, PA
## 5 new-york-city   204 ... Mumbai, India
##
## [6 rows x 6 columns]

```

**Exercise 13.14** First, create an auxiliary (temporary) table named *UpVotesTab*, where we store the information about the number of up-votes (*VoteTypeId*=2) that each post has received. Then, join (merge) this table with *Posts* and fetch some details about the 5 questions (*PostTypeId*=1) with the most up-votes:

```

res11a = pd.read_sql_query("""
    SELECT UpVotesTab.*, Posts.Title FROM
    (
        SELECT PostId, COUNT(*) AS UpVotes
        FROM Votes
        WHERE VoteTypeId=2
        GROUP BY PostId
    ) AS UpVotesTab
    JOIN Posts ON UpVotesTab.PostId=Posts.Id
    WHERE Posts.PostTypeId=1
    ORDER BY UpVotesTab.UpVotes DESC LIMIT 5
""", conn)
res11a
##   PostId  UpVotes          Title
## 0    3080      307  OK we're all adults here, so really, how on ea...
## 1    38177      254  How do you know if Americans genuinely/literal...
## 2    24540      221  How to intentionally get denied entry to the U...
## 3    20207      211  Why are airline passengers asked to lift up wi...
## 4    96447      178          Why prohibit engine braking?

```

### 13.3.6 Solutions to Exercises

Below are example solutions to the above exercises.

#### Example 13.15

```
Tags.
loc[Tags.TagName.str.contains("europe"), :].
reset_index(drop=True)

)
res2b
##   Count  ExcerptPostId    Id      TagName  WikiPostId
## 0     681        286.0    30      europe      285.0
## 1     27        2384.0   174  eastern-europe    2383.0
## 2     12        6403.0   512 southeast-europe    6402.0
## 3     20        4513.0   669 central-europe    4512.0
## 4     36       16392.0  1950 western-europe    16391.0
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res2a, res2b)
```

#### Example 13.16

```
Tags.
loc[
    Tags.TagName.isin(["poland", "australia", "china"]),
    ["TagName", "Count"]
].
reset_index(drop=True)

)
res3b
##      TagName  Count
## 0      china    443
## 1  australia    411
## 2      poland    139
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res3a, res3b)
```

#### Example 13.17

```
Posts.
loc[
    (Posts.PostTypeId == 1) & (Posts.ViewCount >= 10000) &
    (Posts.FavoriteCount >= 35) & (Posts.FavoriteCount <= 100),
    ["Title", "Score", "ViewCount", "FavoriteCount"]
].
reset_index(drop=True)

)
res4b
##                                     Title ... FavoriteCount
## 0 When traveling to a country with a different c... ...          35.0
(continues on next page)
```

(continued from previous page)

```

## 1      How can I do a "broad" search for flights? ...
## 2 Tactics to avoid getting harassed by corrupt p... ...
## 3 Flight tickets: buy two weeks before even duri... ...
## 4 OK we're all adults here, so really, how on ea... ...
## 5 How to intentionally get denied entry to the U...
## 6 How do you know if Americans genuinely/literal...
## 7 OK, we are all adults here, so what is a bidet...
## 8      How to cope with too slow Wi-Fi at hotel? ...
##
## [9 rows x 4 columns]
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res4a, res4b)

```

**Example 13.18**

```

Posts.
loc[
    Posts.ParentId.isna() & (~Posts.Title.isna()),
    ["Title", "Score"]
].
sort_values("Score", ascending=False).
head(5).
reset_index(drop=True)
)
res5b
##                                     Title  Score
## 0  OK we're all adults here, so really, how on ea...    306
## 1  How do you know if Americans genuinely/literal...    254
## 2  How to intentionally get denied entry to the U...    219
## 3  Why are airline passengers asked to lift up wi...    210
## 4      Why prohibit engine braking?                  178
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res5a, res5b)

```

**Example 13.19**

```

Badges.
loc[Badges.UserId == 23, ["Name"]].
drop_duplicates().
reset_index(drop=True)
)
res6b
##          Name
## 0      Supporter
## 1       Student
## 2      Teacher
## 3     Scholar

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 4           Beta
## 5      Nice Question
## 6          Editor
## 7      Nice Answer
## 8       Yearling
## 9 Popular Question
## 10     Taxonomist
## 11 Notable Question
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res6a, res6b)
```

**Example 13-2** `Badges.copy()`

```
Badges2.loc[:, "Year"] = (
    Badges2.Date.astype("datetime64").dt.strftime("%Y").astype("float")
)
res7b = (
    Badges2.
    loc[Badges2.UserId == 23, ["Name", "Year"]].
    drop_duplicates().
    reset_index(drop=True)
)
res7b
##          Name   Year
## 0      Supporter 2011.0
## 1      Student  2011.0
## 2      Teacher  2011.0
## 3      Scholar  2011.0
## 4          Beta 2011.0
## 5  Nice Question 2011.0
## 6          Editor 2012.0
## 7  Nice Answer  2012.0
## 8       Yearling 2012.0
## 9  Nice Question 2012.0
## 10  Nice Question 2013.0
## 11       Yearling 2013.0
## 12 Popular Question 2014.0
## 13       Yearling 2014.0
## 14     Taxonomist 2014.0
## 15 Notable Question 2015.0
## 16  Nice Question 2017.0
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res7a, res7b)
```

**Example 13-21** `Badges.copy()`

```
Badges2.loc[:, "Year"] = (
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

Badges2.Date.astype("datetime64").dt.strftime("%Y").astype("float")
)
res8b = (
    Badges2.
    loc[Badges2.UserId == 23, ["Name", "Year"]].
    groupby("Name")["Year"].
    aggregate([len, np.min, np.mean, np.max]).
    sort_values(["len", "mean"], ascending=[False, True])..
    head(4).
    reset_index()
)
res8b.columns = ["Name", "Count", "MinYear", "MeanYear", "MaxYear"]
res8b
##           Name  Count  MinYear  MeanYear  MaxYear
## 0      Nice Question     4  2011.0   2013.25  2017.0
## 1      Yearling        3  2012.0   2013.00  2014.0
## 2 Popular Question        3  2014.0   2014.00  2014.0
## 3 Notable Question        2  2015.0   2015.00  2015.0

```

*Had we not converted Year to float, we would obtain a meaningless average year, without any warning.*

```
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res8a, res8b)
```

### Example 13.22

```

Badges2.copy()
Badges2.loc[:, "Year"] = (
    Badges2.Date.astype("datetime64").dt.strftime("%Y").astype("float")
)
res9b = (
    Badges2.
    loc[ Badges2.UserId == 23, ["Name", "Year"] ].
    groupby(["Name", "Year"]).
    size().
    rename("Count").
    reset_index()
)
res9b = (
    res9b.
    loc[ res9b.Count > 1, : ].
    sort_values("Count", ascending=False).
    reset_index(drop=True)
)
res9b

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
##           Name    Year  Count
## 0 Popular Question 2014.0      3
## 1 Notable Question 2015.0      2
```

The HAVING part is performed after WHERE and GROUP BY.

```
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res9a, res9b)
```

**Example 13.23**

```
merge(Posts, Tags, left_on="Id", right_on="WikiPostId")
res10b = pd.merge(Users, res10b, left_on="AccountId", right_on="OwnerUserId")
res10b = (
    res10b.
    loc[
        (res10b.OwnerUserId != -1) & (~res10b.OwnerUserId.isna()),
        ["TagName", "Count", "OwnerUserId", "Age", "Location", "DisplayName"]
    ].
    sort_values(["Count", "TagName"], ascending=[False, True]).
    head(6).
    reset_index(drop=True)
)
res10b
##           TagName  Count    ...          Location      DisplayName
## 0         canada   802    ...    Mumbai, India        hitec
## 1         europe   681    ... Philadelphia, PA    Adam Tuttle
## 2 visa-refusals   554    ...    New York, NY Benjamin Pollack
## 3     australia   411    ...    Mumbai, India        hitec
## 4            eu   204    ... Philadelphia, PA    Adam Tuttle
## 5 new-york-city   204    ...    Mumbai, India        hitec
##
## [6 rows x 6 columns]
```

In SQL, “not equals to -1” implies that “IS NOT NULL”.

```
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res10a, res10b)
```

**Example 13.24** To obtain *res11b*, we first create an auxiliary data frame that corresponds to the subquery.

```
UpVotesTab = (
    Votes.
    loc[Votes.VoteTypeId==2, :].
    groupby("PostId").
    size().
    rename("UpVotes").
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    reset_index()
)
```

And now:

```
res11b = pd.merge(UpVotesTab, Posts, left_on="PostId", right_on="Id")
res11b = (
    res11b.
    loc[res11b.PostTypeId==1, ["PostId", "UpVotes", "Title"]].
    sort_values("UpVotes", ascending=False).
    head(5).
    reset_index(drop=True)
)
res11b
##   PostId  UpVotes          Title
## 0    3080     307  OK we're all adults here, so really, how on ea...
## 1   38177     254  How do you know if Americans genuinely/literal...
## 2   24540     221  How to intentionally get denied entry to the U...
## 3   20207     211  Why are airline passengers asked to lift up wi...
## 4   96447     178                      Why prohibit engine braking?
pd.testing.assert_frame_equal(res11a, res11b)
```

---

## 13.4 Closing the Database Connection

We have said we should not forget about:

```
conn.close()
```

This gives some sense of closure. Such a relief.

---

## 13.5 Common Data Serialisation Formats for the Web

CSV files are an all-round way to exchange *tabular* data between different programming and data analysis environments.

For unstructured or non-tabularly-structured data, XML as well as JSON (and its superset, YAML) are the common formats of choice, especially for communicating with different Web APIs.

---

**Important:** It is recommended that we solve some of the following exercises to make sure we can fetch data in these formats. Warning: often, this will quite tedious labour, neither art nor science; see also [[vdLdJ18]] and [[DJ03]]. Good luck.

---

**Exercise 13.25** Consider the Web API for [accessing<sup>8</sup>](#) the on-street parking bay sensor data in Melbourne, VIC, Australia. Using, for example, the `json` package, convert the [data<sup>9</sup>](#) in the JSON format to a `pandas` data frame.

**Exercise 13.26** Australian Radiation Protection and Nuclear Safety Agency publishes<sup>10</sup> UV data for different Aussie cities. Using, for example, the `xml` package, convert [this XML dataset<sup>11</sup>](#) to a `pandas` data frame.

**Exercise 13.27** (\*) Check out the English Wikipedia article featuring a [list of 20th-century classical composers<sup>12</sup>](#). Using `pandas.read_html`, convert the Climate Data table included therein to a data frame.

**Exercise 13.28** (\*) Using, for example, the `lxml` package, write a function that converts each bullet list featured in a given Wikipedia article (e.g., [this one<sup>13</sup>](#)), to a list of strings.

**Exercise 13.29** (\*\*) Import an archived version of a [Stack Exchange<sup>14</sup>](#) site that you find interesting and store it in an SQLite database. You can find the relevant data dumps [here<sup>15</sup>](#).

**Exercise 13.30** (\*\*) Download<sup>16</sup> and then import an archived version of one of the wikis hosted by the [Wikimedia Foundation<sup>17</sup>](#) (e.g., the whole English Wikipedia) so that it can be stored in an SQLite database.

---

## 13.6 Working with Many Files

For the mass-processing of many files, it is worth knowing of the most basic functions for dealing with file paths, searching for files, etc. Usually we will be looking up ways to complete specific tasks at hand, e.g., how to read data from a ZIP archive, on the internet.

---

<sup>8</sup> <https://data.melbourne.vic.gov.au/Transport/On-street-Parking-Bay-Sensors/vh2v-4nfs>

<sup>9</sup> <https://data.melbourne.vic.gov.au/resource/vh2v-4nfs.json>

<sup>10</sup> <https://www.arpansa.gov.au/our-services/monitoring/ultraviolet-radiation-monitoring/ultraviolet-radiation-data-information>

<sup>11</sup> <https://uvdata.arpansa.gov.au/xml/uvvalues.xml>

<sup>12</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_20th-century\\_classical\\_composers](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_20th-century_classical_composers)

<sup>13</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Fr%C3%A9d%C3%A9ric\\_Chopin](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Fr%C3%A9d%C3%A9ric_Chopin)

<sup>14</sup> <https://stackexchange.com/>

<sup>15</sup> <https://archive.org/details/stackexchange>

<sup>16</sup> <https://meta.wikimedia.org/wiki/Data.dumps>

<sup>17</sup> <https://wikimediafoundation.org/>

### 13.6.1 File Paths

UNIX-like operating systems, including GNU/Linux and macOS, use slashes, ` `/ , as path separators, e.g., "/home/marek/file.csv". Windows, however, uses backslashes, ` \ ` , which have a special meaning in character strings (escape sequences, see Section 2.1.3), therefore they should be input as, e.g., "c:\\users\\marek\\file.csv" or r"c:\\users\\marek\\file.csv" (note the r prefix).

When constructing file paths programmatically, it is thus best to rely on `os.path.join`, which takes care of the system-specific nuances.

```
import os.path
os.path.join("~/", "Desktop", "file.csv") # we are on GNU/Linux
## '~/Desktop/file.csv'
```

The tilde, ` ~ ` , denotes the current user's home directory.

**Note:** For storing auxiliary data, we will often be using the system's temporary directory. See the `tempfile` module for functions that generate appropriate file paths therein.

For instance, a subdirectory inside the temporary directory can be created via a call to `tempfile.mkdtemp`.

**Important:** We will frequently be referring to file paths relative to the working directory of the currently executed Python session (e.g., from which IPython/Jupyter notebook server was started). The latter can be read by calling `os.getcwd`.

And thus, all non-absolute file names (ones that do not start with ` ~ ` , ` / ` , ` c:\\ ` , and the like), for example, "filename.csv" or `os.path.join("subdir", "filename.csv")` are always relative to the current working directory.

For instance, if the working directory is "/home/marek/projects/python", then "filename.csv" refers to "/home/marek/projects/python/filename.csv".

Also, ` .. ` denotes the current working directory's parent directory. Thus, " .. / filename2.csv" resolves to "/home/marek/projects/filename2.csv".

**Exercise 13.31** Print the result output by `os.getcwd`. Next, download the file `air_quality_2018_param.csv` and save it in the current Python session's working directory (e.g., in your web browser, right-click on the web page's canvas and select Save Page As...). Load it as a `pandas` data frame by passing simply "`air_quality_2018_param.csv`" as the input path.

<sup>18</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/air\\_quality\\_2018\\_param.csv](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/air_quality_2018_param.csv)

**Exercise 13.32** (\*) Download the aforementioned file programmatically (if you have not done so) using the `requests` module.

### 13.6.2 File Search

`glob.glob` and `os.listdir` can generate a list of files in a given directory (and possibly all its subdirectories).

`os.path.isdir` and `os.path.isfile` can be used to determine the type of a given object in the file system.

**Exercise 13.33** Write a function that computes the total size of all the files in a given directory and all its subdirectories.

---

## 13.7 Exercises

**Exercise 13.34** Find an example of an XML and JSON file. Which one is more human-readable? Do they differ in terms of capabilities?

**Exercise 13.35** What is wrong with constructing file paths like "`~`" + "`\|`" + "`filename.csv`"?

**Exercise 13.36** What are the benefits of using a SQL-supporting relational database management system in data science activities?

**Exercise 13.37** (\*\*) How to populate a database with gigabytes of data read from many CSV files?



## **Part V**

# **Other Data Types**



# 14

---

## Text Data

---

In [[Gag22]] it is noted that *effective processing of character strings is required at various stages of data analysis pipelines: from data cleansing and preparation, through information extraction, to report generation. Pattern searching, string collation and sorting, normalisation, transliteration, and formatting are ubiquitous in text mining, natural language processing, and bioinformatics.* Means for the handling of string data should be included in each statistician's or data scientist's repertoire to complement their numerical computing and data wrangling skills.

Diverse data cleansing and preparation operations (compare, e.g., [[vdLdJ18]] and [[DJ03]]) need to be applied before an analyst can begin to enjoy an orderly and meaningful data frame, matrix, or spreadsheet being finally at their disposal. Activities related to information retrieval, computer vision, bioinformatics, natural language processing, or even musicology can also benefit from including them in data processing pipelines.

In this part we discuss the most basic string operations in base Python, together with their vectorised versions in **numpy** and **pandas**.

---

### 14.1 Basic String Operations

Recall that the `str` class represents individual character strings:

```
x = "spam"  
type(x)  
## <class 'str'>
```

There are a few binary operators overloaded for strings, e.g., `+` stands for string concatenation:

```
x + " and eggs"  
## 'spam and eggs'
```

`\*` duplicates a given string:

```
x * 3  
## 'spamspamspam'
```

Further, `str` is a sequential type, therefore we can extract individual code points and create substrings using the index operator:

```
x[-1] # last letter
## 'm'
```

Recall that strings are immutable. However, parts of strings can always be reused in conjunction with the concatenation operator:

```
x[:2] + "cial"
## 'specia'
```

### 14.1.1 Unicode as the Universal Encoding

It is worth knowing that all strings in Python (from version 3.0) use Unicode(<https://www.unicode.org>) which is a universal encoding capable of representing ca. 150,000 characters covering letters and numbers in contemporary and historic alphabets/scripts, mathematical, political, phonetic, and other symbols, emojis, etc. It is thus a very powerful representation.

---

**Note:** Despite the wide support for Unicode, sometimes our own or other readers' display (e.g., web browsers when viewing a HTML version of the output report) might not be able to *render* all code points properly (e.g., due to missing fonts). However, we should rest assured that they are still there, and are processed correctly if string functions are applied thereon.

---

**Note:** (\*\*) More precisely, Python strings are `UTF-8`<sup>1</sup>-encoded. Most web pages and API data are nowadays served in UTF-8. However, occasionally we can encounter files encoded in ISO-8859-1 (Western Europe), Windows-1250 (Eastern Europe), Windows-1251 (Cyrillic), GB18030 and Big5 (Chinese), EUC-KR (Korean), Shift-JIS and EUC-JP (Japanese), amongst others; they can be converted using the `str.decode` method.

---

### 14.1.2 Normalising Strings

Dirty text data are a pain, especially if similar (semantically) tokens are encoded in many different ways. For the sake of string matching, we might want, e.g., the German "groß", "GROSS", and " gross " to compare all equal.

`str.strip` removes whitespaces (spaces, tabs, newline characters) at both ends of strings (see also `str.lstrip` and `str.rstrip` for their nonsymmetric versions).

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3629.txt>

`str.lower` and `str.upper` change letter case. For caseless comparison/matching, `str.casifold` might be a slightly better option as it unfolds many more code point sequences:

```
"Groß".lower(), "Groß".upper(), "Groß".casifold()
## ('groß', 'GROSS', 'gross')
```

**Important:** (\*\*\*) More advanced string transliteration can be performed by means of the `ICU`<sup>2</sup> library, which the `PyICU` package provides wrappers for.

For instance, converting all code points to ASCII (English) might be necessary when identifiers are expected to miss some diacritics that would normally be included (as in "Gągolewski" vs "Gagolewski"):

```
import icu # PyICU package
icu.Transliterator.createInstance("Lower; Any-Latin; Latin-ASCII").transliterate(
    "Xaípετε! Groß gżegżółka – © La Niña - köszönőm - Gągolewski"
)
## 'chairete! gross gzegzolka - (C) la nina - koszonom - gagolewski'
```

Converting between different `Unicode Normalisation Forms`<sup>3</sup> (also available in the `unicodedata` package and via `pandas.Series.str.normalize`) might be used for the removal of some formatting nuances:

```
icu.Transliterator.createInstance("NFKD; NFC").transliterate("%qər2 ⓘ")
## '%qr2{'
```

### 14.1.3 Substring Searching and Replacing

Determining if a string features a particular fixed substring can be done in a number of different ways.

For instance:

```
food = "bacon, spam, spam, eggs, and spam"
"spam" in food
## True
```

verifies whether a particular substring exists,

```
food.count("spam")
## 3
```

<sup>2</sup> <https://icu.unicode.org/>

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/faq/normalization.html>

counts the number of occurrences of a substring,

```
food.find("spam")
## 7
```

locates the first pattern occurrence (see also `str.rfind` as well as `str.index` and `str.rindex`),

```
food.replace("spam", "veggies")
## 'bacon, veggies, veggies, eggs, and veggies'
```

replaces matching substrings with another string.

**Exercise 14.1** Read the manual of the following methods: `str.startswith`, `str.endswith`, `str.removeprefix`, `str.removesuffix`.

The splitting of long strings at specific fixed delimiter strings can be done via:

```
food.split(",")
## ['bacon', 'spam', 'spam', 'eggs', 'and spam']
```

see also `str.partition`. The `str.join` method implements the inverse operation:

```
", ".join(["spam", "bacon", "eggs", "spam"])
## 'spam, bacon, eggs, spam'
```

**Important:** In Section 14.4, we will discuss pattern matching with regular expressions, which can be useful in, amongst others, extracting more abstract data chunks (numbers, URLs, email addresses, IDs) from within strings.

#### 14.1.4 Locale-Aware Services in ICU (\*)

Recall that relational operators such as `<` and `>= perform lexicographic comparing of strings:

```
"spam" > "egg"
## True
```

We have: "a" < "aa" < "aaaaaaaaaaaa" < "ab" < "aba" < "abb" < "b" < "ba" < "baaaaaaa" < "bb" < "Spanish inquisition".

Lexicographic ordering (character-by-character, from left to right) is, however, not necessarily appropriate for strings featuring numerals:

```
"a9" < "a123"
## False
```

Also, it only takes into account the numeric codes<sup>4</sup> corresponding to each Unicode character, therefore does not work well with non-English alphabets:

```
"MIELONECZKA" < "MIELONECZKI"
## False
```

In Polish, *A with ogonek* (A) should sort after *A* and before *B*, let alone *I*. However, their corresponding numeric codes in the Unicode table are: 260 (A), 65 (A), 66 (B), and 73 (I), therefore the resulting ordering is incorrect, natural language processing-wisely.

It is best to perform string collation using the services provided by **ICU**. Here is an example of German phone book-like collation where "ö" is treated the same as "oe":

```
c = icu.Collator.createInstance(icu.Locale("de_DE@collation=phonebook"))
c.setStrength(0)
c.compare("Löwe", "loewe")
## 0
```

A result of 0 means that the strings are deemed equal.

In some languages, contractions occur, e.g., in Slovak and Czech, two code points "ch" are treated as a single entity and are sorted after "h":

```
icu.Collator.createInstance(icu.Locale("sk_SK")).compare("chladný", "hladný")
## 1
```

i.e., we have "chladný" > "hladný" (the 1st argument is greater than the 2nd one). Compare the above to something similar in Polish:

```
icu.Collator.createInstance(icu.Locale("pl_PL")).compare("chłodny", "hardy")
## -1
```

i.e., "chłodny" < "hardy" (the first argument is less than the 2nd one).

Also, with **ICU**, numeric collation is possible:

```
c = icu.Collator.createInstance()
c.setAttribute(icu.UCollAttribute.NUMERIC_COLLATION, icu.UCollAttributeValue.ON)
c.compare("a9", "a123")
## -1
```

Which is the correct result: "a9" is less than "a123" (compare the above to the example which was using using `<`).

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/charts/>

### 14.1.5 String Operations in pandas

String sequences in Series are by default<sup>5</sup> using the broadest possible object data type:

```
pd.Series(["spam", "bacon", "spam"])
## 0      spam
## 1    bacon
## 2      spam
## dtype: object
```

which basically means that we deal with a sequence of Python objects of arbitrary type (here, are all of class str). This allows for the encoding of missing values by means of the None object.

Vectorised versions of base string operations are available<sup>6</sup> via the `pandas.Series.str` accessor, which we usually refer to by calling `x.str.method_name()`, for instance:

```
x = pd.Series(["spam", "bacon", None, "buckwheat", "spam"])
x.str.upper()
## 0      SPAM
## 1    BACON
## 2      None
## 3  BUCKWHEAT
## 4      SPAM
## dtype: object
```

We thus have `pandas.Series.str.strip`, `pandas.Series.str.split`, `pandas.Series.str.find`, and so forth.

But there is more. For example, a function to compute the length of each string:

```
x.str.len()
## 0    4.0
## 1    5.0
## 2    NaN
## 3    9.0
## 4    4.0
## dtype: float64
```

Concatenating all items into a single string:

```
x.str.cat(sep=";")
## 'spam; bacon; buckwheat; spam'
```

Vectorised string concatenation:

---

<sup>5</sup> [https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/user\\_guide/text.html](https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/user_guide/text.html)

<sup>6</sup> <https://numpy.org/doc/stable/reference/routines.char.html>

```
x + " and spam"
## 0      spam and spam
## 1      bacon and spam
## 2      NaN
## 3      buckwheat and spam
## 4      spam and spam
## dtype: object
```

Conversion to numeric:

```
pd.Series(["1.3", "-7", None, "3523"]).astype(float)
## 0      1.3
## 1     -7.0
## 2      NaN
## 3    3523.0
## dtype: float64
```

Selecting substrings:

```
x.str.slice(2, -1) # like x.iloc[i][2:-1] for all i
## 0      a
## 1      co
## 2      None
## 3      ckwhea
## 4      a
## dtype: object
```

Replacing substrings:

```
x.str.slice_replace(0, 2, "tofu") # like x.iloc[i][2:-1] = "tofu"
## 0      tofuam
## 1      tofucon
## 2      None
## 3      tofuckwheat
## 4      tofuam
## dtype: object
```

**Exercise 14.2** Consider the `nasaweather_glaciers`<sup>7</sup> data frame. All glaciers are assigned 11/12-character unique identifiers. The ID number is assigned to the glacier as defined by the WGMS convention that forms the glacier ID number by combining the following five elements. Extract all of them and store them as independent columns in the data frame.

1. 2-character political unit,
2. 1-digit continent code,

---

<sup>7</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/other/nasaweather\\_glaciers.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/other/nasaweather_glaciers.csv)

3. 4-character drainage code,
4. 2-digit free position code,
5. 2- or 3-digit local glacier code.

#### 14.1.6 String Operations in numpy (\*)

There is a huge overlap between the **numpy** and **pandas** capabilities for string handling, with the latter being more powerful. Still, some readers will find the following useful.

As mentioned in our introduction to **numpy** vectors, objects of type `ndarray` can store not only numeric and logical data, but also character strings. For example:

```
x = np.array(["spam", "bacon", "egg"])
x
## array(['spam', 'bacon', 'egg'], dtype='<U5')
```

Here, the data type "<U5" (compare also `x.dtype`) means that we deal with Unicode strings of length no greater than 5. Thus, unfortunately, replacing elements with too long a content will result in truncated strings:

```
x[2] = "buckwheat"
x
## array(['spam', 'bacon', 'buckw'], dtype='<U5')
```

In order to remedy this, we first need to recast the vector manually:

```
x = x.astype("<U10")
x[2] = "buckwheat"
x
## array(['spam', 'bacon', 'buckwheat'], dtype='<U10')
```

Conversion from/to numeric is also possible:

```
np.array(["1.3", "-7", "3523"]).astype(float)
## array([ 1.300e+00, -7.000e+00,  3.523e+03])
np.array([1, 3.14, -5153]).astype(str)
## array(['1.0', '3.14', '-5153.0'], dtype='<U32')
```

The **numpy.char**<sup>8</sup> module includes a number of vectorised versions of string routines, most of which we have discussed above. For example:

```
x = np.array([
    "spam", "spam, bacon, and spam",
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>8</sup> <https://numpy.org/doc/stable/reference/routines.char.html>

(continued from previous page)

```
"spam, eggs, bacon, spam, spam, and spam"
])
np.char.split(x, ", ")
## array([list(['spam']), list(['spam', 'bacon', 'and spam']),
##        list(['spam', 'eggs', 'bacon', 'spam', 'spam', 'and spam'])],
##       dtype=object)
np.char.count(x, "spam")
## array([1, 2, 4])
```

Operations that we would normally perform via the use of binary operators (i.e., `+`, `\*`, `<`, etc.) are available through standalone functions:

```
np.char.add(["spam", "bacon"], " and spam")
## array(['spam and spam', 'bacon and spam'], dtype='<U14')
np.char.equal(["spam", "bacon", "spam"], "spam")
## array([ True, False,  True])
```

Also the function that returns the length of each string is noteworthy:

```
np.char.str_len(x)
## array([ 4, 21, 39])
```

---

## 14.2 Working with String Lists

Series can also consist of lists of strings of varying lengths. They can not only be input manually (via the `pandas.Series` constructor), but also through string splitting. For instance:

```
x = pd.Series([
    "spam",
    "spam, bacon, spam",
    None,
    "spam, eggs, bacon, spam, spam"
])
xs = x.str.split(", ", regex=False)
xs
## 0                  [spam]
## 1          [spam, bacon, spam]
## 2                  None
## 3      [spam, eggs, bacon, spam, spam]
## dtype: object
```

and now, e.g., looking at the last element:

```
xs.iloc[-1]
## ['spam', 'eggs', 'bacon', 'spam', 'spam']
```

reveals that it is indeed a list of strings.

There are a few vectorised operations that enable us to work with such variable length lists, such as concatenating all strings:

```
xs.str.join("; ")
## 0                      spam
## 1          spam; bacon; spam
## 2                  None
## 3  spam; eggs; bacon; spam; spam
## dtype: object
```

selecting, say, the first string in each list:

```
xs.str.get(0)
## 0      spam
## 1      spam
## 2      None
## 3      spam
## dtype: object
```

or slicing:

```
xs.str.slice(0, -1) # like xs.iloc[i][0:-1] for all i
## 0                  []
## 1          [spam, bacon]
## 2                  None
## 3  [spam, eggs, bacon, spam]
## dtype: object
```

**Exercise 14.3** (\*) Using `pandas.merge`, join the following datasets: `countries`<sup>9</sup>, `world_factbook_2020`<sup>10</sup>, and `ssi_2016_dimensions`<sup>11</sup> based on the country names. Note that some manual data cleansing will be necessary.

**Exercise 14.4** (\*\*) Given a `Series` object featuring lists of strings:

1. determine the list of all unique strings (e.g., for `xs` above we have: `["spam", "bacon", "eggs"]`), call it `xu`;

---

<sup>9</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/other/countries.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/other/countries.csv)

<sup>10</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/world\\_factbook\\_2020.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/world_factbook_2020.csv)

<sup>11</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/ssi\\_2016\\_dimensions.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/ssi_2016_dimensions.csv)

2. create a data frame `x` with `xs.shape[0]` rows and `len(xu)` columns such that `x.i loc[i, j]` is equal to 1 if `xu[j]` is amongst `xs.loc[i]` and equal to 0 otherwise;
  3. given `x` (and only `x`: neither `xs` nor `xu`), perform the inverse operation.
- 

## 14.3 Formatted Outputs for Reproducible Report Generation

When preparing reports from data analysis (e.g., using Jupyter Notebooks or writing directly to Markdown files which we later compile to PDF or HTML using `pandoc`<sup>12</sup>) it is important to be able to output nicely formatted content programmatically.

### 14.3.1 Formatting Strings

Recall that string formatting for inclusion of data stored in existing objects can easily be done using f-strings (formatted string literals) of the type `f"..."{expression}..."`. For instance:

```
pi = 3.14159265358979323846
f"π = {pi:.2f}"
## 'π = 3.14'
```

creates a string including the variable `pi` formatted as a float rounded to two places after the decimal separator.

---

**Note:** (\*\*\*) Similar functionality can be achieved using the `str.format` method as well as the `%`` operator overloaded for strings, which uses `sprintf`-like value placeholders known to some readers from other programming languages (such as C):

```
"π = {:.2f}".format(pi), "π = %.2f" % pi
## ('π = 3.14', 'π = 3.14')
```

---

### 14.3.2 str and repr

The `str` and `repr` functions can create string representations of a number of objects, with the former being more human-readable and latter slightly more technical.

```
x = np.array([1, 2, 3])
str(x), repr(x)
## ('[1 2 3]', 'array([1, 2, 3])')
```

---

<sup>12</sup> <https://pandoc.org/>

Note that `repr` often returns an output that can be interpreted as executable Python code literally (with no or few adjustments, however, `pandas` objects are one of the many exceptions).

### 14.3.3 Justifying Strings

`str.center`, `str.ljust`, `str.rjust` can be used to centre, left-, or-right justify a string so that it is of at least given width, which might make the display thereof more aesthetic. Very long strings, possibly containing whole text paragraphs can be dealt with using the `wrap` and `shorten` functions from the `textwrap` package.

### 14.3.4 Direct Markdown Output in Jupyter

Further, with IPython/Jupyter, we can output strings that will be directly interpreted as Markdown-formatted:

```
import IPython.display
x = 2+2
out = f"*Result*: $2^2=2+2={x}$."
IPython.display.Markdown(out)
```

*Result:  $2^2 = 2 + 2 = 4$ .*

Recall that `Markdown`<sup>13</sup> is a very flexible markup language, allowing us to insert itemised and numbered lists, mathematical formulae, tables, images, etc.

### 14.3.5 Manual Markdown File Output

We can also generate Markdown code programmatically in the form of standalone `.md` files:

```
f = open("/tmp/test-report.md", "w") # open for writing (overwrite if exists)
f.write("**Yummy Foods** include, but are not limited to:\n\n")
x = ["spam", "bacon", "eggs", "spam"]
for e in x:
    f.write(f"* {e}\n")
f.write("\nAnd now for something completely different:\n\n")
f.write("Rank | Food\n")
f.write("----|----\n")
for i in range(len(x)):
    f.write(f"{i+1}:4 | {x[i][::-1]:10}\n")
f.close()
## 50
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>13</sup> <https://daringfireball.net/projects/markdown/syntax>

(continued from previous page)

```
## 7
## 8
## 7
## 7
## 46
## 12
## 12
## 18
## 18
## 18
## 18
## 18
```

Here is the resulting raw Markdown source file:

```
with open("/tmp/test-report.md", "r") as f:
    out = f.read()
print(out)
## **Yummy Foods** include, but are not limited to:
##
## * spam
## * bacon
## * eggs
## * spam
##
## And now for something completely different:
##
## Rank | Food
## -----|-----
##     1 | maps
##     2 | nocab
##     3 | sgge
##     4 | maps
```

We can run it through the `pandoc`<sup>14</sup> tool to convert it to a number of formats, including HTML, PDF, EPUB, and ODT. We may also render it directly into our report:

```
IPython.display.Markdown(out)
```

**Yummy Foods** include, but are not limited to:

- spam
- bacon

---

<sup>14</sup> <https://pandoc.org/>

- eggs
- spam

And now for something completely different:

| Rank | Food  |
|------|-------|
| 1    | maps  |
| 2    | nocab |
| 3    | sgge  |
| 4    | maps  |

**Note:** Figures created in `matplotlib` can be exported to PNG, SVG, or PDF files using the `matplotlib.pyplot.savefig` function.

**Note:** Data frames can be nicely prepared for display in a report using `pandas.DataFrame.to_markdown`.

**Note:** (\*) Markdown is amongst many markup languages. Other learn-worthy ones include HTML (for the Web) and LaTeX (especially for beautiful typesetting of maths, print-ready articles and books, e.g., PDF; see [[O+21]] for a good introduction).

Jupyter Notebooks can be converted to different formats using the `jupyter-nbconvert`<sup>15</sup> command line tool.

More generally, `pandoc`<sup>16</sup> is a generic converter between different formats, e.g., the highly universal (although primitive) Markdown and the said LaTeX and HTML. Also, it can be used for preparing presentations (slides).

## 14.4 Regular Expressions (\*)

This section contains large excerpts from yours truly's other work [[Gag22]].

*Regular expressions (regexes) provide us with a concise grammar for defining systematic patterns which can be sought in character strings. Examples of such patterns include: specific fixed*

<sup>15</sup> <https://pypi.org/project/nbconvert/>

<sup>16</sup> <https://pandoc.org/>

substrings, emojis of any kind, stand-alone sequences of lower-case Latin letters (“words”), substrings that can be interpreted as real numbers (with or without fractional parts, also in scientific notation), telephone numbers, email addresses, or URLs.

Theoretically, the concept of regular pattern matching dates back to the so-called regular languages and finite state automata [[Kle51]], see also [[RS59]] and [[HU79]]. Regexes in the form as we know today have already been present in one of the pre-Unix implementations of the command-line text editor **qed** [[RT70]] (the predecessor of the well-known **sed**).

#### 14.4.1 Regex Matching with **re**

In Python, the **re** module implements a regular expression matching engine that accepts patterns following a similar syntax to the ones available in the Perl language.

Before we proceed with a detailed discussion on how to read and write regexes, let us first review the methods for identifying the matching substrings. Below we use the `r"\bni+\b"` regex as an example, which catches "n" followed by at least one "i" that begins and ends at a word boundary, i.e., which may be considered standalone words.

In particular, **re.findall** extracts all non-overlapping matches to a given regex:

```
import re
x = "We're the knights who say ni! niiiii! ni! niiiiiiii!"
re.findall(r"\bni+\b", x)
## ['ni', 'niiiii', 'ni', 'niiiiiiii']
```

The order of arguments is *look for what, where*, not the other way around.

---

**Important:** We used the `r"..."` prefix when entering a string so that `\b` is not treated as a escape sequence denoting the backspace character. Otherwise, the above would have to be input as "`\\\bni+\\b`".

---

If we had not insisted on matching at the word boundaries (i.e., if we used "ni+" instead), we would also match the "ni" in "knights".

The **re.search** function returns an object of class **re.Match** that enables us to get some more information about the first match:

```
r = re.search(r"\bni+\b", x)
r.start(), r.end(), r.group()
## (26, 28, 'ni')
```

The above includes the start and end position (index) and the match itself. If the regex contains *capture groups* (see below for more details), we can also pinpoint the matches thereto.

Moreover, `re.finditer` returns an iterable object that includes the same details, but now about all the matches:

```
rs = re.finditer(r"\bni+\b", x)
for r in rs:
    print((r.start(), r.end(), r.group()))
## (26, 28, 'ni')
## (30, 36, 'niiiii')
## (38, 40, 'ni')
## (42, 52, 'niiiiiiii')
```

`re.split` divides a string into chunks separated by matches to a given regex:

```
re.split(r"!\s+", x)
## ["We're the knights who say ni", 'niiiii', 'ni', 'niiiiiiii!']
```

The `r"!\s+"` regex matches the exclamation mark followed by one or more whitespace characters.

`re.sub` replaces each match with a given string:

```
re.sub(r"\bni+\b", "nu", x)
## "We're the knights who say nu! nu! nu! nu!"
```

**Note:** (\*\*\*) More flexible replacement strings can be generated by passing a custom function as the second argument:

```
re.sub(r"\bni+\b", lambda m: "\n" + "u"*(m.end()-m.start()-1), x)
## "We're the knights who say nu! nuuuuu! nu! nuuuuuuuu!"
```

#### 14.4.2 Regex Matching with pandas

The `pandas.Series.str` accessor also defines a number of vectorised functions that utilise the `re` package's matcher.

Example `Series` object:

```
x = pd.Series(["ni!", "niiii, ni, nii!", None, "spam, bacon", "nii, ni!"])
x
## 0                 ni!
## 1      niiii, ni, nii!
## 2                 None
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 3      spam, bacon
## 4      nii, ni!
## dtype: object
```

Here are the most notable functions; their names are self-explanatory, so let us just generate the (textual) picture instead of the words' abundance.

```
x.str.contains(r"\bni+\b")
## 0      True
## 1      True
## 2      None
## 3      False
## 4      True
## dtype: object
x.str.count(r"\bni+\b")
## 0      1.0
## 1      3.0
## 2      NaN
## 3      0.0
## 4      2.0
## dtype: float64
x.str.replace(r"\bni+\b", "nu", regex=True)
## 0      nu!
## 1      nu, nu, nu!
## 2      None
## 3      spam, bacon
## 4      nu, nu!
## dtype: object
x.str.findall(r"\bni+\b")
## 0      [ni]
## 1      [niiii, ni, nii]
## 2      None
## 3      []
## 4      [nii, ni]
## dtype: object
x.str.split(r",\s+") # a comma, one or more whitespaces
## 0      [ni!]
## 1      [niiii, ni, nii!]
## 2      None
## 3      [spam, bacon]
## 4      [nii, ni!]
## dtype: object
```

In the two last cases, we get lists of strings in result.

Also, later we will mention `pandas.Series.str.extract` and `pandas.Series.str.extractall` which work with regexes that include capture groups.

**Note:** (\*) If we intend to seek matches to the same pattern in different strings without the use of `pandas`, it might be a good to pre-compile a regex first and then use the `re.Pattern.findall` method instead or `re.findall`:

```
p = re.compile(r"\bni+\b") # returns an object of class `re.Pattern`
p.findall("We're the knights who say ni! ni! niiii! nininiiiiiiii!")
## ['ni', 'ni', 'niiii']
```

#### 14.4.3 Matching Individual Characters

Most programming languages and text editors (including `Kate`<sup>17</sup>, `Eclipse`<sup>18</sup>, and `VSCode`<sup>19</sup>) support finding or replacing patterns with regexes. Therefore, they should be amongst the instruments at every data scientist's disposal. One general introduction to regexes is [[Fri06]]. The `re` module flavour is summarised in the official `manual`<sup>20</sup>, see also [[Kuc22]]. In the following sections we review the most important elements of the regex syntax as we did in [[Gag22]].

We begin by discussing different ways to define character sets. In this part, determining the length of all matching substrings will be quite straightforward.

**Important:** The following characters have special meaning to the regex engine:

. \ | ( ) [ ] > { } ^ \$ \* + ?

Any regular expression that contains none of the above behaves like a fixed pattern:

```
re.findall("spam", "spam, eggs, spam, bacon, sausage, and spam")
## ['spam', 'spam', 'spam']
```

<sup>17</sup> <https://kate-editor.org/>

<sup>18</sup> <https://www.eclipse.org/ide/>

<sup>19</sup> <https://code.visualstudio.com/>

<sup>20</sup> <https://docs.python.org/3/library/re.html>

There are hence 3 occurrences of a pattern that is comprised of 4 code points, “s” followed by “p”, then by “a”, and ending with “m”.

If we wish to include a special character as part of a regular expression – so that it is treated literally – we will need to escape it with a backslash, “\”.

```
re.findall(r"\.", "spam...")  
## ['.', '.', '.']
```

## Matching Any Character

The (unesaped) dot, “.”, matches any code point except the newline.

```
x = "Spam, ham,\njam, SPAM, eggs, and spam"  
re.findall("..am", x, re.IGNORECASE)  
## ['Spam', ' ham', 'SPAM', 'spam']
```

The above matches non-overlapping length-4 substrings that end with “am”, case insensitively.

The dot’s insensitivity to the newline character is motivated by the need to maintain the compatibility with tools such as **grep** (when searching within text files in a line-by-line manner). This behaviour can be altered by setting the **DOTALL** flag.

```
re.findall(..am", x, re.DOTALL|re.IGNORECASE)  
## ['Spam', ' ham', '\njam', 'SPAM', 'spam']
```

## Defining Character Sets

Sets of characters can be introduced by enumerating their members within a pair of square brackets. For instance, “[abc]” denotes the set {a, b, c} – such a regular expression matches one (and only one) symbol from this set. Moreover, in:

```
re.findall("[hj]am", x)  
## ['ham', 'jam']
```

the “[hj]am” regex matches: “h” or “j”, followed by “a”, followed by “m”. In other words, “ham” and “jam” are the only two strings that are matched by this pattern (unless matching is done case-insensitively).

**Important:** The following characters, if used within square brackets, may be treated non-literally:

\ [ ] ^ - & ~ |

Therefore, to include them as-is in a character set, the backslash-escape must be used. For example, “[\\[]\\]” matches a backslash or a square bracket.

## Complementing Sets

Including “`^`” (the caret) after the opening square bracket denotes the set complement. Hence, “[`^abc`]” matches any code point except “`a`”, “`b`”, and “`c`”. Here is an example where we seek any substring that consists of 3 non-spaces.

```
x = "Nobody expects the Spanish Inquisition!"  
re.findall("[^ ][^ ][^ ]", x)  
## ['Nob', 'ody', 'exp', 'ect', 'the', 'Spa', 'nis', 'Inq', 'uis', 'iti', 'on!']
```

## Defining Code Point Ranges

Each Unicode code point can be referenced by its unique numeric identifier for more details. For instance, “a” is assigned code U+0061 and “z” is mapped to U+007A. In the pre-Unicode era (mostly with regard to the ASCII codes,  $\leq$  U+007F, representing English letters, decimal digits, some punctuation characters, and a few control characters), we were used to relying on specific code ranges; e.g., “[a-z]” denotes the set comprised of all characters with codes between U+0061 and U+007A, i.e., lowercase letters of the English (Latin) alphabet.

```
re.findall("[0-9A-Za-z]", "Gągolewski")
## ['G', 'ą', 'g', 'o', 'ł', 'e', 'w', 's', 'k', 'i']
```

The above pattern denotes a union of 3 code ranges: digits and ASCII upper- and lower-case letters.

Nowadays, in the processing of text in natural languages, this notation should rather be avoided. Note the missing “a” (Polish “a” with ogonek) in the result.

## Using Predefined Character Sets

Some other noteworthy Unicode-aware code point classes include the “word characters”:

decimal digits:

```
re.findall(r"\d", x)
## ['1', '2', '3', '4', '5']
```

and whitespaces:

```
re.findall(r"\s", x)
## [' ', '|t', '|n']
```

Moreover, e.g., “\W” is equivalent to “[^\w]”, i.e., denotes its complement.

#### 14.4.4 Alternating and Grouping Subexpressions

##### Alternation Operator

The alternation operator, “|” (the pipe or bar), matches either its left or its right branch, for instance:

```
x = "spam, egg, ham, jam, algae, and an amalgam of spam, all al dente"
re.findall("spam|ham", x)
## ['spam', 'ham', 'spam']
```

##### Grouping Subexpressions

“|” has a very low precedence. Therefore, if we wish to introduce an alternative of subexpressions, we need to group them using the “(?:...)” syntax. For instance, “(?:sp|h)am” matches either “spam” or “ham”.

Notice that the bare use of the round brackets, “(...)” (i.e., without the “?:”) part, has the side-effect of creating new capturing groups, see below for more details.

Also, matching is always done left-to-right, on a first-come, first-served basis. Hence, if the left branch is a subset of the right one, the latter will never be matched. In particular, “(?:al|alga|algae)” can only match “al”. To fix this, we can write “(?:alga|alga|al)”.

##### Non-grouping Parentheses

Some parenthesised subexpressions – those in which the opening bracket is followed by the question mark – have a distinct meaning. In particular, “(?#...)” denotes a free-format comment that is ignored by the regex parser:

```
re.findall(
  "(?# match 'sp' or 'h')(?:sp|h)(?# and 'am')am|(?# or match 'egg')egg",
  x
)
## ['spam', 'egg', 'ham', 'spam']
```

This is just horrible. Luckily, constructing more sophisticated regexes by concatenating subfragments thereof is more readable:

```
re.findall(
    "(?:sp|h)" +   # match either 'sp' or 'h'
    "am" +          # followed by 'am'
    "|" +           # ... or ...
    "egg",          # just match 'egg'
    x
)
## ['spam', 'egg', 'ham', 'spam']
```

What is more, e.g., “(?i)” enables the case-insensitive mode.

```
re.findall("(?i)spam", "Spam spam SPAMITY spAm")
## ['Spam', 'spam', 'SPAM', 'spAm']
```

#### 14.4.5 Quantifiers

More often than not, a variable number of instances of the same subexpression needs to be captured or its presence should be made optional. This can be achieved by means of the following quantifiers:

- “?” matches 0 or 1 times;
- “\*” matches 0 or more times;
- “+” matches 1 or more times;
- “{n,m}” matches between n and m times;
- “{n,}” matches at least n times;
- “[n]” matches exactly n times.

These operators are applied onto the directly preceding atoms. For example, “ni+” captures “ni”, “nii”, “niii”, etc., but neither “n” alone nor “ninini” altogether.

By default, the quantifiers are greedy – they match the repeated subexpression as many times as possible. The “?” suffix (hence, quantifiers such as “??”, “\*?”, “+?”, and so forth) tries with as few occurrences as possible (to obtain a match still).

Greedy:

```
x = "sp(AM)(maps)(SP)am"
re.findall(r"\(.+\)", x)
## ['(AM)(maps)(SP)']
```

Lazy:

```
re.findall(r"\(.+?\)", x)
## ['(AM)', '(maps)', '(SP)']
```

Greedy (but clever):

```
re.findall(r"\([^\)]+\)", x)
## ['(AM)', '(maps)', '(SP)']
```

The first regex is greedy: it matches an opening bracket, then as many characters as possible (including “)” that are followed by a closing bracket. The two other patterns terminate as soon as the first closing bracket is found.

More examples:

```
x = "spamamamnomnomnomnomammammamm"
re.findall("sp(?:am|nom)+", x)
## ['spamamamnomnomnomnomam']
re.findall("sp(?:am|nom)+?", x)
## ['spam']
```

And:

```
re.findall("sp(?:am|nom)+?m*", x)
## ['spam']
re.findall("sp(?:am|nom)+?m+", x)
## ['spamamamnomnomnomnomammammamm']
```

Let us stress that the quantifier is applied to the subexpression that stands directly before it. Grouping parentheses can be used in case they are needed.

```
x = "12, 34.5, 678.901234, 37...629, ..."
re.findall(r"\d+\.\d+", x)
## ['34.5', '678.901234']
```

matches digits, a dot, and another series of digits.

```
re.findall(r"\d+(?:\.\d+)?", x)
## ['12', '34.5', '678.901234', '37', '629']
```

finds digits which are possibly (but not necessarily) followed by a dot and a digit sequence.

**Exercise 14.5** Write a regex that extracts all #hashtags from a string #omg #SoEasy.

#### 14.4.6 Capture Groups and References Thereto

Round-bracketed subexpressions (without the "?:" prefix) form the so-called *capture groups* that can be extracted separately or be referred to in other parts of the same regex.

#### Extracting Capture Group Matches

The above is evident when we use `re.findall`:

```
x = "name='Sir Launcelot', quest='Seek the Grail', favecolour='blue'"
re.findall(r"(\w+)=('(?:')'", x)
## [('name', 'Sir Launcelot'), ('quest', 'Seek the Grail'), ('favecolour', 'blue')]
```

Simply returned the matches to the capture groups, not the whole matching substring.

`re.find` and `re.finditer` can pinpoint each component:

```
r = re.search(r"(\w+)=('(?:')'", x)
print("all (0):", (r.start(), r.end(), r.group()))
print("    1 :", (r.start(1), r.end(1), r.group(1)))
print("    2 :", (r.start(2), r.end(2), r.group(2)))
## all (0): (0, 20, "name='Sir Launcelot'")
##      1 : (0, 4, 'name')
##      2 : (6, 19, 'Sir Launcelot')
```

Here is a vectorised version of the above from `pandas`, returning the first match:

```
y = pd.Series([
    "name='Sir Launcelot'",
    "quest='Seek the Grail'",
    "favecolour='blue', favecolour='yel.. Aaargh!'"
])
y.str.extract(r"(\w+)=('(?:')')")
##          0           1
## 0      name  Sir Launcelot
## 1      quest  Seek the Grail
## 2  favecolour     blue
```

We see that the findings are presented in a data frame form. The first column gives the matches to the first capture group, and so forth.

All matches are available too:

```
y.str.extractall(r"(\w+)=('(?:')')")
##          0           1
##  match
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 0 0           name   Sir Launcelot
## 1 0           quest  Seek the Grail
## 2 0     favecolour      blue
## 1     favecolour  yel.. Aaarg!
```

Recall that if we just need the grouping part of “(... )”, i.e., without the capturing feature, “(?:...)” can be applied.

Also, named capture groups defined like “(?P<name>...)” are supported.

```
y.str.extract("(?:\\w+)='(?P<value>.+?)' ")
##               value
## 0   Sir Launcelot
## 1   Seek the Grail
## 2           blue
```

## Replacing with Capture Group Matches

Matches to particular capture groups can be recalled in replacement strings when using `re.sub` and `pandas.Series.str.replace`. Here, the match in its entirety is denoted with “\g<0>”, then “\g<1>” stores whatever was caught by the first capture group, “\g<2>” is the match to the second capture group, etc.

```
re.sub(r"(\\w+)='(.*?)'", r"\g<2> is a \g<1>", x)
## 'Sir Launcelot is a name, Seek the Grail is a quest, blue is a favecolour'
```

Named capture groups can be referred to too:

```
re.sub(r"(?P<key>\\w+)='(?P<value>.+?)' ",
      r"\g<value> is a \g<key>", x)
## 'Sir Launcelot is a name, Seek the Grail is a quest, blue is a favecolour'
```

## Back-Referencing

Matches to capture groups can also be part of the regexes themselves. For example, “\1” denotes whatever has been consumed by the first capture group.

Even though, in general, parsing HTML code with regexes is not recommended, let us consider the following examples:

```
x = "<strong><em>spam</em></strong><code>eggs</code>"
re.findall(r"<[a-z]+>.*?</[a-z]+>", x)
## ['<strong><em>spam</em>', '<code>eggs</code>']
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
re.findall(r"(<([a-z]+)>.*?</\2>)", x)
## [('<strong><em>spam</em></strong>', 'strong'), ('<code>eggs</code>', 'code')]
```

The second regex guarantees that the match will include all characters between the opening `<tag>` and the corresponding (not: any) closing `</tag>`. Named capture groups can be referenced using the `(?P=name)` syntax (the angle brackets are part of the token):

```
re.findall(r"(<(?!<strong>)[a-z]+>.*?</?strong>)", x)
## [('<strong><em>spam</em></strong>', 'strong'), ('<code>eggs</code>', 'code')]
```

#### 14.4.7 Anchoring

Lastly, let us mention the ways to match a pattern at a given abstract position within a string.

##### Matching at the Beginning or End of a String

“`^`” and “`$`” match, respectively, start and end of the string (or each line within a string, if the `re.MULTILINE` flag is set).

```
x = pd.Series(["spam egg", "bacon spam", "spam", "egg spam bacon", "sausage"])
rs = ["spam", "^spam", "spam$", "spam$|^spam", "^spam$"]
pd.concat([x.str.contains(r) for r in rs], axis=1, keys=rs)
##      spam  ^spam  spam$  spam$|^spam  ^spam$
## 0    True   True  False     True  False
## 1    True  False   True     True  False
## 2    True   True   True     True   True
## 3    True  False  False    False  False
## 4   False  False  False    False  False
```

The 5 regular expressions match “`spam`”, respectively, anywhere within the string, at the beginning, at the end, at the beginning or end, and in strings that are equal to the pattern itself.

**Exercise 14.6** Write a regex that does the same job as `str.strip`.

##### Matching at Word Boundaries

Furthermore, “`\b`” matches at a “word boundary”, e.g., near spaces, punctuation marks, or at the start/end of a string (i.e., wherever there is a transition between a word, “`\w`”, and a non-word character, “`\W`”, or vice versa).

In the following example, we match all stand-alone numbers (this regular expression is provided for didactic purposes only):

```
re.findall(r"[-+]?[b\d+(?:\.\d+)?]b", "+12, 34.5, -5.3243")
## ['+12', '34.5', '-5.3243']
```

## Looking Behind and Ahead

There are also ways to guarantee that a pattern occurrence begins or ends with a match to some subexpression: “(?<=...)...” is the so-called look-behind, whereas “...(?=...)” denotes the look-ahead. Moreover, “(?<!...)...” and “...(?!=...)” are their negated (“negative look-behind/ahead”) versions.

```
x = "I like spam, spam, eggs, and spam."
re.findall(r"\b\w+\b(?:=[,.])", x)
## ['spam', 'spam', 'eggs', 'spam']
re.findall(r"\b\w+\b(?![,.])", x)
## ['I', 'like', 'and']
```

The first regex captures words that end with “,” or “.”. The second one matches words that end neither with “,” nor “.”.

**Exercise 14.7** Write a regex that extracts all standalone numbers accepted by Python, including 12.123, -53, +1e-9, -1.2423e10, 4. and .2.

**Exercise 14.8** Write a regex that matches all email addresses.

**Exercise 14.9** Write a regex that matches all URLs starting with `http://` or `https://`.

**Exercise 14.10** Cleanse the `warsaw_weather`<sup>21</sup> dataset so that it contains analysable numeric data.

## 14.5 Exercises

**Exercise 14.11** List some ways to normalise character strings.

**Exercise 14.12** (\*\*\*) What are the challenges of processing non-English text?

**Exercise 14.13** What are the problems with the “[A-Za-z]” and “[A-z]” character sets?

**Exercise 14.14** Name the two ways to turn on case-insensitive regex matching.

**Exercise 14.15** What is a word boundary?

**Exercise 14.16** What is the difference between the “^” and “\$” anchors?

**Exercise 14.17** When we would prefer using “[0-9]” instead of “\d”?

---

<sup>21</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/warsaw\\_weather.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/warsaw_weather.csv)

**Exercise 14.18** What is the difference between the "?", "??", "\*", "\*?", "+", and "+?" quantifiers?

**Exercise 14.19** Does ". " match all the characters?

**Exercise 14.20** What are named capture groups and how to refer to the matches thereto in `re.sub`?

# *Missing, Censored, and Questionable Data*

---

So far we have been assuming that observations are of “decent quality”, i.e., trustworthy. It would be nice if in reality that was always the case, but it is not.

In this section we briefly address the most basic methods for dealing with “suspicious” observations: outliers, missing, censored, and incorrect data.

---

## 15.1 Missing Data

Consider the `nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020` dataset being another excerpt from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey by the US Centres for Disease Control and Prevention:

```
nhanes = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/nhances_p_demo_bmx_2020.csv",
    comment="#")
nhanes.head(3)
##      SEQN BMDSTATS BMXWT ... SDMVPSU SDMVSTRA INDFMPIR
## 0  109263        4   NaN ...       3      156     4.66
## 1  109264        1  42.2 ...       1      155     0.83
## 2  109265        1  12.0 ...       1      157     3.06
##
## [3 rows x 50 columns]
```

Some of the columns feature `NaN` (not-a-number) values, which are used here to encode *missing data*.

The reasons behind why some items are missing might be numerous, for instance:

- a participant does not know the answer to a given question;
- a patient refused to answer a given question;
- a participant does not take part in the study anymore (attrition, death, etc.);
- an item is not applicable (e.g., number of minutes spent cycling weekly when someone answered they do not like bikes at all);

- a piece of information was not collected, e.g., due to the lack of funding or equipment failure.

### 15.1.1 Representing and Detecting Missing Values

Sometimes missing values will be specially encoded, especially in CSV files, e.g., with `-1`, `0`, `9999`, `numpy.inf`, `-numpy.inf`, or `None`, strings such as "NA", "N/A", "Not Applicable", "---" – we should always inspect our datasets carefully.

Generally, we will be converting them to `NaN` (as in: `numpy.nan`) in numeric (floating-point) columns or to Python's `None` otherwise, to assure consistent representation.

Vectorised functions such as `numpy.isnan` (or, more generally, `numpy.isfinite`) and `pandas.isnull` as well as `isna` methods for the `DataFrame` and `Series` classes can be used to verify whether an item is missing or not.

For instance, here are the counts and proportions of missing values in each column (we will display only the top 5 columns to save space):

```
nhanes_na_stats = nhanes.isna().apply([np.sum, np.mean]).T
nhanes_na_stats.nlargest(5, "sum")
##           sum      mean
## BMIHEAD   14300.0  1.000000
## BMIRECUM  14257.0  0.996993
## BMIHT    14129.0  0.988042
## BMXHEAD   13990.0  0.978322
## BMIHIP    13924.0  0.973706
```

Looking at the column `descriptions`<sup>1</sup>, `BMIHEAD` stands for "Head Circumference Com-  
ment", whereas `BMXHEAD` is "Head Circumference (cm)", but it is only applicable for infants.

**Exercise 15.1** Read the column descriptions (refer to the comments in the CSV file for the relevant URLs) to identify the possible reasons for some of the NHANES data being missing.

**Exercise 15.2** Study the `pandas` manual to learn about the difference between the `DataFrameGroupBy.size` and `DataFrameGroupBy.count` methods.

### 15.1.2 Computing with Missing Values

Our use of `NaN` to denote a missing piece of information is actually an ugly (but still functioning) hack. The original use case for not-a-number is to represent the results of incorrect operations, e.g., logarithms of negative numbers or subtracting two infinite entities. Therefore, we need extra care when handling them. On a side note, e.g., the R environment has a built-in, seamless support for missing values.

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P\\_BMX.htm](https://www.cdc.gov/Nchs/Nhanes/2017-2018/P_BMX.htm)

Generally, arithmetic operations on missing values yield a result that is undefined as well:

```
np.nan + 2 # "don't know" + 2 == "don't know"
## nan
np.mean([1, np.nan, 2, 3])
## nan
```

There are versions of certain aggregation functions that ignore missing values whatsoever: `numpy.nanmean`, `numpy.nanmin`, `numpy.nanmax`, `numpy.nanpercentile`, `numpy.std`, etc.

```
np.nanmean([1, np.nan, 2, 3])
## 2.0
```

However, running aggregation functions directly on `Series` objects ignores missing entities by default. Compare an application of `numpy.mean` on a `Series` instance vs on a vector:

```
x = nhanes.loc[:6, "BMXHT"] # some example Series, whatever
np.mean(x), np.mean(x.to_numpy())
## (148.5, nan)
```

This is quite an unfortunate behaviour, because this way we might miss (sic!) the presence of missing values. This is why it is very important always to pre-inspect a dataset carefully.

Also, due to NaN's being of floating-point type, it cannot be present in, amongst others, logical vectors. By convention, comparisons against missing values yield `False` (instead of the more semantically valid missing value):

```
x # preview
## 0      NaN
## 1    154.7
## 2    89.3
## 3   160.2
## 4      NaN
## 5   156.0
## 6   182.3
## Name: BMXHT, dtype: float64
y = (x > 40)
y
## 0    False
## 1     True
## 2     True
## 3     True
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
## 4     False
## 5      True
## 6      True
## Name: BMXHT, dtype: bool
```

**Note:** (\*) If we want to retain the missingness information (we do not know if a missing value is greater than 40), we need to do it manually:

```
y = y.astype("object") # required for numpy vectors, not for pandas Series
y[np.isnan(x)] = None
y
## 0    None
## 1    True
## 2    True
## 3    True
## 4    None
## 5    True
## 6    True
## Name: BMXHT, dtype: object
```

**Exercise 15.3** Read the [pandas manual](#)<sup>2</sup> for more technical details on missing value handling.

### 15.1.3 Missing at Random or Not?

At a general level (from the mathematical modelling perspective), we may distinguish between different missingness patterns (as per Rubin's [[Rub76]]):

- *missing completely at random*: reasons are unrelated to data and probabilities of cases being missing are all the same;
- *missing at random*: there are different probabilities of being missing within different groups (e.g., males might systematically refuse to answer specific questions);
- *missing not at random*: due to reasons unknown to us (e.g., data was collected at different times, there might be systematic differences but within the groups that we cannot easily identify, e.g., amongst participants with data science background where we did not ask about education or occupation).

It is important to try to determine the reason for missingness, because this will usually imply the kinds of techniques that are more or less suitable in specific cases.

<sup>2</sup> [https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/user\\_guide/missing\\_data.html](https://pandas.pydata.org/pandas-docs/stable/user_guide/missing_data.html)

### 15.1.4 Discarding Missing Values

We may try removing (discarding) the rows or columns that feature at least one, some, or too many missing values.

However, for this we need to be “rich enough” – such a scheme will obviously not work for small datasets, where each observation is precious (but on the other hand, if we want to infer from too small datasets, we should ask ourselves whether this is a good idea at all... it might be better to simply refrain from any data analysis than to come up with conclusions that are likely to be unjustified).

Also, we should not exercise data removal in situations where missingness is conditional (e.g., data only available for infants) or otherwise group-dependent (not-completely at random; e.g., it might result in an imbalanced dataset).

**Exercise 15.4** With the `nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020`<sup>3</sup> dataset:

1. remove all columns that are comprised of missing values only,
2. remove all columns that are made of more than 20% missing values,
3. remove all rows that only consist of missing values,
4. remove all rows that feature at least one missing value,
5. remove all columns that feature at least one missing value.

Hint: `pandas.DataFrame.dropna` might be useful in the simplest cases, and `numpy.isnan` or `pandas.DataFrame.isna` with `loc[...]` or `iloc[...]` otherwise.

### 15.1.5 Mean Imputation

When we cannot afford or it is inappropriate/inconvenient to proceed with the removal of missing observations or columns, we might try applying some missing value *imputation* techniques. Although, let us be clear – this is merely a replacement thereof by some hopefully useful guesstimates.

---

**Important:** Whatever we decide to do with the missing values, we need to be explicit about the way we have handled them in all the reports from data analysis, as sometimes they might strongly affect the results.

---

Let us consider an example vector with missing values, comprised of heights of the adult participants of the NHANES study.

```
x = nhanes.loc[nhanes.loc[:, "RIDAGEYR"] >= 18, "BMXHT"]
```

The simplest approach is to replace each missing value with the corresponding

---

<sup>3</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes\\_p\\_demo\\_bmx\\_2020.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020.csv)

column's mean (for each column separately). This does not change the overall average (but decreases the variance).

```
xi = x.copy()
xi[np.isnan(xi)] = np.nanmean(xi)
```

Similarly, we could have considered replacing missing values with the median, or – in case of categorical data – the mode.

Our height data are definitely not missing completely at random – in particular, we expect heights to differ, on average, between sexes. Therefore, another basic imputation option is to replace the missing values with the corresponding within-group averages:

```
xg = x.copy()
g = nhanes.loc[nhanes.loc[:, "RIDAGEYR"] >= 18, "RIAGENDR"]
xg[np.isnan(xg) & (g == 1)] = np.nanmean(xg[g == 1]) # male
xg[np.isnan(xg) & (g == 2)] = np.nanmean(xg[g == 2]) # female
```

Unfortunately, whichever imputation method we choose, it will artificially distort the data distribution (and hence introduce some kind of bias), see [Figure 15.1](#).

```
plt.subplot(1, 3, 1)
sns.histplot(x, binwidth=1, binrange=[130, 200], color="lightgray")
plt.ylim(0, 500)
plt.title("Original")
plt.subplot(1, 3, 2)
sns.histplot(xi, binwidth=1, binrange=[130, 200], color="lightgray")
plt.ylim(0, 500)
plt.title("Replace by mean")
plt.subplot(1, 3, 3)
sns.histplot(xg, binwidth=1, binrange=[130, 200], color="lightgray")
plt.ylim(0, 500)
plt.title("Replace by group mean")
plt.show()
```

These effects might not be visible if we increase the bin widths, but they are still there. After all, we have added to the sample many identical values.

**Exercise 15.5** With the `nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020`<sup>4</sup> dataset:

1. for each numerical column, replace all missing values with the column averages,
2. for each categorical column, replace all missing values with the column modes,

---

<sup>4</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes\\_p\\_demo\\_bmx\\_2020.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020.csv)

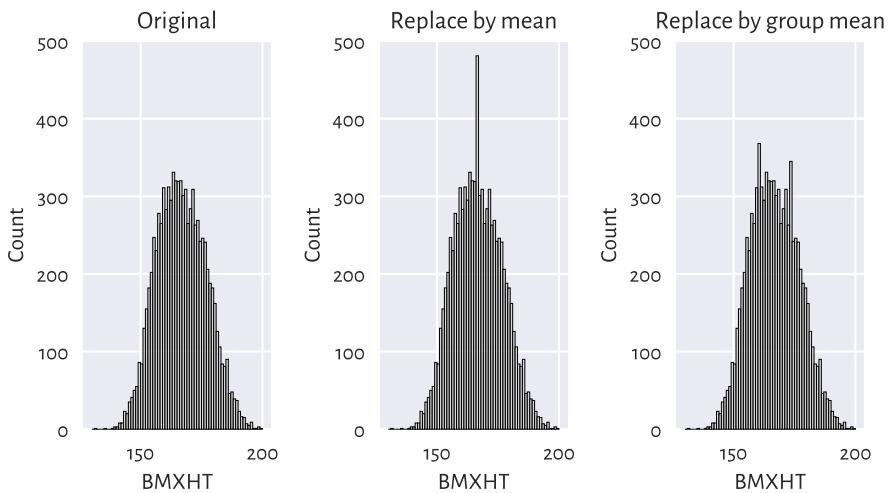


Figure 15.1: Mean imputation distorts the data distribution

3. for each numerical column, replace all missing values with the averages corresponding to a patient's sex (as given by the RIAGENDR column).

**Note:** (\*) We can easily implement a missing value imputer based on averaging data from an observation's non-missing nearest neighbours, compare `{numref}sec:knn``. This is an extension of the simple idea of finding the most “similar” observation (with respect to chosen criteria) to a given one and “borrowing” missing measurements from it. More generally, different regression or classification models can be built on non-missing data and then the missing observations can be replaced by the values predicted by those models.

**Note:** (\*\*) Rubin (e.g., [[LR02]]) suggests the use of a procedure called *multiple imputation* (see also [[vB18]]), where copies of the original datasets are created, missing values are imputed by sampling from some estimated distributions, inference is made, and then the results are aggregated. An example implementation of such an algorithm is available in `sklearn.impute.IterativeImputer`.

## 15.2 Censored and Interval Data (\*)

Censored data frequently appear in the context of reliability, risk analysis, and biostatistics, where the observed objects might “fail” (e.g., break down, die, withdraw), compare, e.g., [[MKK16]]. Our introductory course cannot obviously cover everything, but a beginner analyst should at least be aware of such data being a thing, in particular:

- right-censored data: we only know that the actual value is above the recorded one (e.g., we stopped the experiment on the reliability of light bulbs after 1000 hours, so those which still work will not have a time-of-failure precisely known);
- left-censored data: the actual observation is below the recorded one, e.g., we observe a component’s failure, but we do not know for how long it has been in operation before the study has started.

Hence, in such cases, the recorded datum of, say, 1000, can actually mean  $[1000, \infty)$ ,  $[0, 1000]$ , or  $(-\infty, 1000]$ .

There might also be instances where we know that a value is in some interval  $[a, b]$ . There are numerical libraries that deal with *interval computations*, and some data analysis methods exist in such a case.

---

## 15.3 Incorrect Data

*Missing data* might already be present in a given sample but also we might be willing to mark some existing values as missing, e.g., when they are simply incorrect.

For example:

- for text data, misspelled words;
- for spatial data, GPS coordinates of places out of this world, non-existing zip codes, or invalid addresses;
- for date-time data, misformatted date-time strings, incorrect dates such as “29 February 2011”, an event’s start date being after the end date;
- for physical measurements, observations that do not meet specific constraints, e.g., negative ages, or heights of people over 300 centimetres;
- IDs of entities that simply do not exist (e.g., unregistered or deleted clients’ accounts);

and so forth.

In order to be able to identify and handle incorrect data, we need specific know-

ledge valid for a particular domain. Optimally, basic data validation techniques should already be employed on the data collection stage, for instance when a user submits an online form.

There can be many tools that can assist us with identifying erroneous observations, e.g., spell checkers such as `hunspell`<sup>5</sup>.

For smaller datasets, observations can also be manually inspected. However, sometimes we will have to develop our own algorithms for detecting “bugs” in data.

**Exercise 15.6** *Given some data frame with numeric columns only, perform what follows.*

1. *Check if all numeric values in each column are between 0 and 1000.*
2. *Check if all values in each column are unique.*
3. *Verify that all the rowwise sums add up to 1.0 (up to a small numeric error).*
4. *Check if the data frame consists of 0s and 1s only. If that is the case, verify that for each row, if there is a 1 in the first column, then all the remaining columns are filled with 1s too.*

Many data validation methods can be reduced to operations on strings. They may be as simple as writing a single regular expression or checking if a label is in a dictionary of possible values and as difficult as writing your own parser for a custom context-sensitive grammar.

### 15.3.1 Exercises on Validating Data

Once we have imported the data fetched from different sources, it will usually be the case that relevant information will have to be extracted from raw text, e.g., strings like "1" should be converted to floating-point numbers. Below we suggest a number of tasks that aid in developing data validation skills involving some operations on textual information.

**Exercise 15.7** *Given an example data frame with text columns (manually invented, be creative), perform what follows.*

1. *Remove trailing and leading whitespaces from each string.*
2. *Check if all strings can be interpreted as numbers, e.g., "23.43".*
3. *Verify if a date string in YYYY-MM-DD format is correct.*
4. *Determine if a date-time string in YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss format is correct.*
5. *Check if all strings are of the form (+NN) NNN-NNN-NNN or (+NN) NNNN-NNN-NNN, where N denotes any digit (valid telephone numbers).*
6. *Inspect whether all strings are valid country names.*

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://hunspell.github.io/>

7. Given a person's date of birth, sex, and their Polish ID number PESEL<sup>6</sup>, check if that PESEL is correct.
  8. Determine if a string represents a correct International Bank Account Number (IBAN<sup>7</sup>) (note that IBANs feature two check digits).
  9. Transliterate text to ASCII, e.g., "Ł żółty ♂" to "-> zolty (C)".
  10. Using an external spell checker, determine if every string is a valid English word.
  11. Using an external spell checker, ascertain that every string is a valid English noun in singular form.
  12. Resolve all abbreviations by means of a custom dictionary, e.g., "Kat." → "Katherine", "Gr." → "Grzegorz".
- 

## 15.4 Outliers

Another group of inspectionworthy observations consists of *outliers*, which we may define as the samples that reside at areas of substantially lower density than their neighbours.

Outliers might be present due to an error, or their being otherwise anomalous, but they may also simply be interesting, original, or novel. After all, statistics does not give any meaning to data items; humans do.

What we do with outliers is a separate decision. We can get rid of them, correct them, replace them with a missing value (and then possibly impute), etc.

### 15.4.1 The 3/2 IQR Rule for Normally-Distributed Data

For unidimensional data (or individual columns in matrices and data frames), usually the first few smallest and largest observations should be inspected manually. It might be, for instance, the case that someone accidentally entered a patient's height in metres instead of centimetres – such cases are easily detectable. A data scientist is like a detective.

Recall that in the section on box-and-whisker plots (Section 5.1.4), one heuristic definition of an outlier that is particularly suited for data that are expected to come from a normal distribution, was to consider everything that does not fall into the interval  $[Q_1 - 1.5\text{IQR}, Q_3 + 1.5\text{IQR}]$ .

This is merely a rule of thumb. It is based on quartiles, and thus should not be affected by potential outliers (they are robust aggregates). Plus, the magic constant 1.5,

<sup>6</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PESEL>

<sup>7</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International\\_Bank\\_Account\\_Number](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Bank_Account_Number)

is nicely round and thus easy to memorise (good for some practitioners). It is not too small and not too large; for the normal distribution  $N(\mu, \sigma)$ , the above interval corresponds to roughly  $[\mu - 2.698\sigma, \mu + 2.698\sigma]$  and thus the probability of obtaining a value outside of it is ca. 0.7%. In other words, for a sample size 1000 that is *truly* normally distributed (and thus not contaminated by anything), only 7 observations will be marked as suspicious; thus, it is not a problem to inspect them by hand.

---

**Note:** (\*) We can of course choose a different threshold. For instance, for the normal distribution  $N(10, 1)$ , the probability of observing a value  $\geq 15$  is theoretically non-zero, hence whether we consider 15 an outlier is a matter of taste. Nevertheless, this probability is smaller than 0.000029%, and thus it is sensible to treat this observation as suspicious. On the other hand, we do not want to mark too many observations as outliers because inspecting them manually will be too labour-intense.

---

**Exercise 15.8** For each column in `nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020`<sup>8</sup>, inspect a few smallest and largest observations and see if they make sense.

**Exercise 15.9** Perform the above separately for data in each group as defined by the `RIAGENDR` column.

### 15.4.2 Unidimensional Density Estimation (\*)

For skewed distributions such as the ones representing incomes, there might be nothing wrong, at least statistically speaking, with very large isolated observations.

For well-separated multimodal distributions on the real line, outliers may sometimes also fall in-between the areas of high density.

**Example 15.10** That neither box plots themselves, nor the 1.5IQR rule might not be ideal tools for multimodal data is exemplified in Figure 15.2, where we have a mixture of  $N(10, 1)$  and  $N(25, 1)$  samples and 4 potential outliers at 0, 15, 45, and 50.

```
x = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/blobs2.txt")
plt.subplot(1, 2, 1)
sns.boxplot(data=x, orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.subplot(1, 2, 2)
sns.histplot(x, binwidth=1, color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```

Fixed-radius search techniques that we have discussed in Section 8.4 can be used for estimating the underlying probability density function. Given a data sample  $x =$

---

<sup>8</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes\\_p\\_demo\\_bmx\\_2020.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/nhanes_p_demo_bmx_2020.csv)

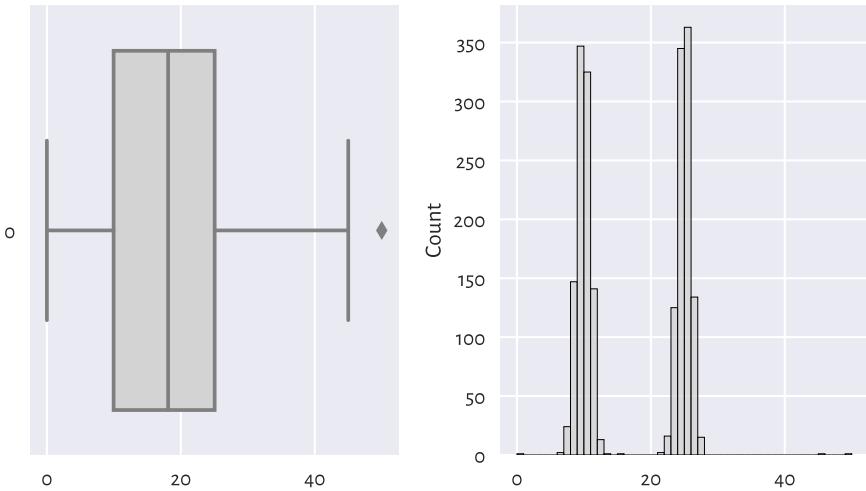


Figure 15.2: With box plots, we may fail to detect some outliers

$(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , let us consider<sup>9</sup>

$$\hat{f}_r(z) = \frac{1}{2rn} \sum_{i=1}^n |B_r(z)|,$$

where  $|B_r(z)|$  denotes the number of observations from  $x$  whose distance to  $z$  is not greater than  $r$ , i.e., fall into the interval  $[z - r, z + r]$ .

```
n = len(x)
r = 1 # radius - feel free to play with different values
import scipy.spatial
t = scipy.spatial.KDTree(x.reshape(-1, 1))
dx = pd.Series(t.query_ball_point(x.reshape(-1, 1), r)).str.len() / (2*r*n)
dx[:6] # preview
## 0    0.000250
## 1    0.116267
## 2    0.116766
## 3    0.166667
## 4    0.076098
## 5    0.156188
## dtype: float64
```

Then, points in the sample lying in low-density regions (i.e., all  $x_i$  such that  $\hat{f}_r(x_i)$  is small) can be marked for further inspection as potential outliers:

---

<sup>9</sup> This is an instance of a kernel density estimator, with the simplest kernel – a rectangular one.

```
x[dx < 0.001]
## array([ 0.          , 13.57157922, 15.          , 45.          , 50.          ])
```

See Figure 15.3 for an illustration of  $\hat{f}_r$ . Of course,  $r$  should be chosen with care – just like the number of bins in a histogram.

```
sns.histplot(x, binwidth=1, stat="density", color="lightgray")
z = np.linspace(np.min(x)-5, np.max(x)+5, 1001)
dz = pd.Series(t.query_ball_point(z.reshape(-1, 1), r)).str.len() / (2*r*n)
plt.plot(z, dz, label=f"density estimator ($r={r}$)")
plt.show()
```

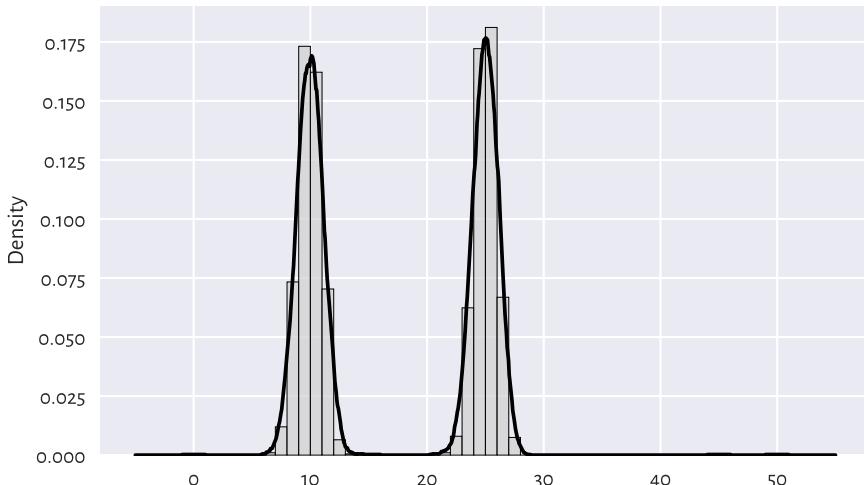


Figure 15.3: Density estimation based on fixed-radius search

### 15.4.3 Multidimensional Density Estimation (\*)

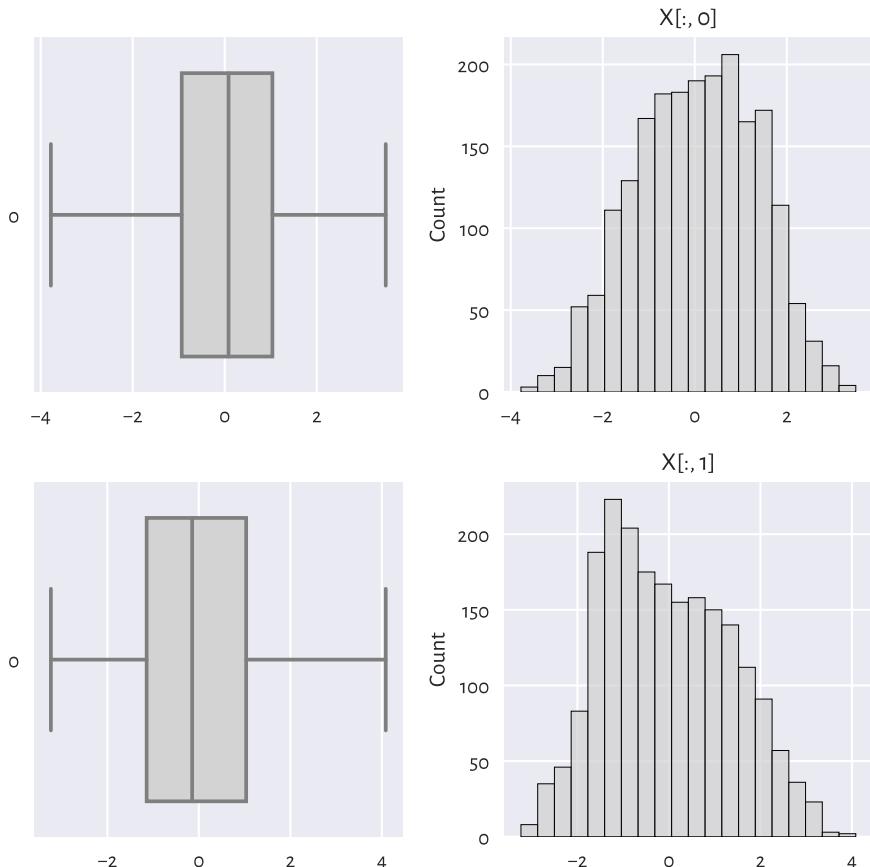
By far we should have got used to the fact that unidimensional data projections might lead to our losing too much information: some values might seem perfectly fine when they are considered in isolation, but already plotting them in 2D reveals the truth.

Consider the following example dataset and the depiction of the distributions of its two natural projections in Figure 15.4.

```
X = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/blobs1.txt", delimiter=",")
plt.figure(figsize=(plt.rcParams["figure.figsize"])[0], )*2) # width=height
(continues on next page)
```

(continued from previous page)

```
plt.subplot(2, 2, 1)
sns.boxplot(data=X[:, 0], orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.subplot(2, 2, 2)
sns.histplot(X[:, 0], bins=20, color="lightgray")
plt.title("X[:, 0]")
plt.subplot(2, 2, 3)
sns.boxplot(data=X[:, 1], orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.subplot(2, 2, 4)
sns.histplot(X[:, 1], bins=20, color="lightgray")
plt.title("X[:, 1]")
plt.show()
```

Figure 15.4: One-dimensional projections of the `blobs1` dataset

There is nothing suspicious here. Or is there?

The scatterplot in Figure 15.5 already reveals that the data consist of two quite well-separable blobs:

```
plt.plot(X[:, 0], X[:, 1], "o")
plt.axis("equal")
plt.show()
```

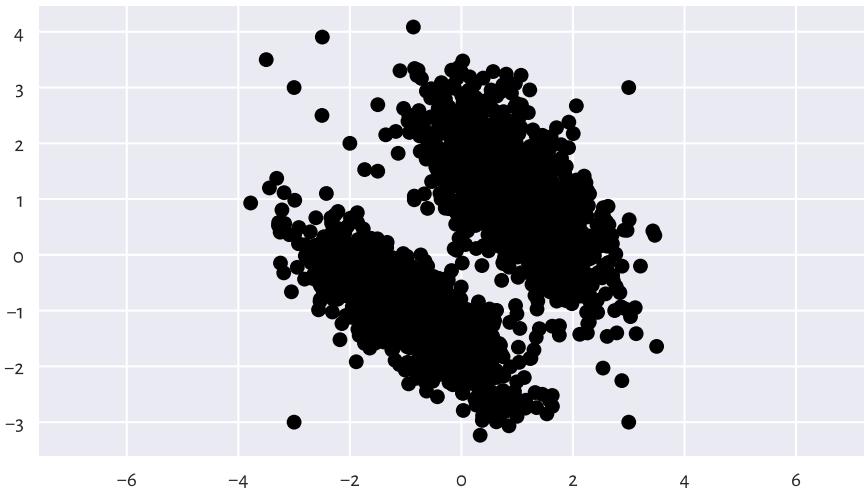


Figure 15.5: Scatterplot of the `blobs1` dataset

Also, there are a few observations that we might consider outliers. Yours truly included 8 junk points at the very end of the dataset:

```
X[-8:, :]
## array([[-3. ,  3. ],
##        [ 3. ,  3. ],
##        [ 3. , -3. ],
##        [-3. , -3. ],
##        [-3.5,  3.5],
##        [-2.5,  2.5],
##        [-2. ,  2. ],
##        [-1.5,  1.5]])
```

Thus, handling multidimensional data requires slightly more sophisticated methods. A quite straightforward approach is to check if there are any points within an observation's radius of some assumed size  $r > 0$ . If that is not the case, we may consider it

an outlier. This is a variation on the aforementioned 1-dimensional density estimation approach.

**Example 15.11** Consider the following code chunk:

```
t = scipy.spatial.KDTree(X)
n = t.query_ball_point(X, 0.2) # r=0.2 (radius)
c = pd.Series(n).str.len().to_numpy()
c[[0, 1, -2, -1]] # preview
## array([42, 30, 1, 1])
```

$c[i]$  gives the number of points within  $X[i, :]$ 's  $r$ -radius (with respect to the Euclidean distance), including the point itself. Therefore,  $c[i]==1$  denotes a potential outlier, see Figure 15.6 for an illustration.

```
plt.plot(X[c > 1, 0], X[c > 1, 1], "o", label="normal point")
plt.plot(X[c == 1, 0], X[c == 1, 1], "v", label="outlier")
plt.axis("equal")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

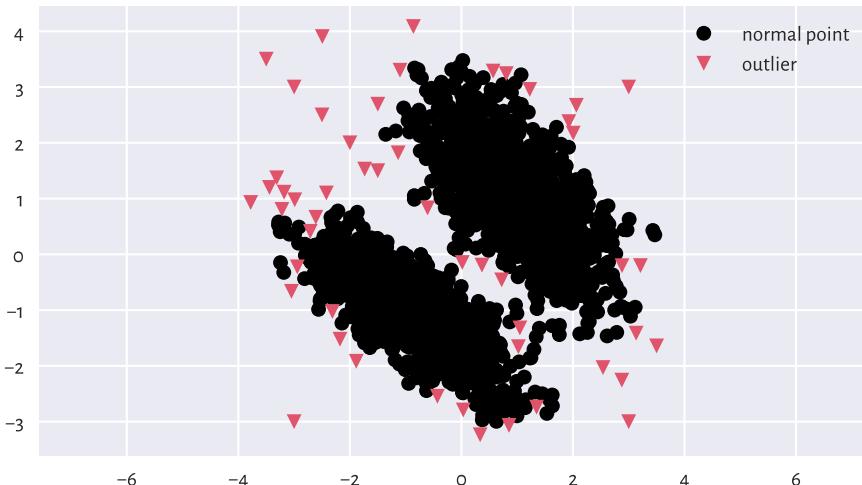


Figure 15.6: Outlier detection based on a fixed-radius search for the blobs1 dataset

## 15.5 Exercises

**Exercise 15.12** How can missing values be represented in `numpy` and `pandas`?

**Exercise 15.13** Explain some basic strategies for dealing with missing values in numeric vectors.

**Exercise 15.14** Why we should be very explicit about the way we have handled missing and other suspicious data? Is it a good idea to mark as missing or remove completely the observations that we dislike or otherwise deem inappropriate, controversial, dangerous, incompatible with our political views, etc.?

**Exercise 15.15** Is replacing missing values with the sample arithmetic mean for income data (as in, e.g., `uk_income_simulated_2020.txt`) a sensible strategy?

**Exercise 15.16** What is the differences between data missing completely at random, missing at random, and missing not at random (according to Rubin's [[Rub76]] classification)?

**Exercise 15.17** List some basic strategies for dealing with data that might contain outliers.

---



# 16

---

## Time Series

---

So far we have been using **numpy** and **pandas** mostly for storing:

- *independent* measurements, e.g., where each element is a height record of a different subject; we often consider these a sample of a representative subset of one or more populations, each recorded at a particular point in time;
- frequency distributions, i.e., count data and the corresponding categories or labels,
- data to report (as in: tables, figures, heatmaps, etc.).

In this part we will explore the most basic concepts related to the wrangling of *time series* data – signals indexed by discrete time. Usually a time series is a sequence of measurements sampled at equally spaced moments, e.g., a patient’s heart rate probed every second, daily opening stock market prices, or average monthly temperatures recorded in some location.

---

### 16.1 Temporal Ordering and Line Charts

Consider the midrange daily temperatures in degrees Celsius at Spokane International Airport (Spokane, WA, US) between 1889-08-01 (first observation) and 2021-12-31 (last observation). Note that midrange, being the mean of the lowest and highest observed temperature on a given day, is not a particularly good estimate of the average daily reading, however, we must work with the data we have.

```
temps = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/spokane_temperature.txt")
```

Let us preview the December 2021 data:

```
temps[-31:] # last 31 days
## array([-11.9, -5.8, -0.6, -0.8, -1.9, -4.4, -1.9, 1.4, -1.9,
##         -1.4, -3.9, -1.9, -1.9, -0.8, -2.5, -3.6, -10. , -1.1,
##         -1.7, -5.3, -5.3, -0.3, 1.9, -0.6, -1.4, -5. , -9.4,
##        -12.8, -12.2, -11.4, -11.4])
```

Here are some data aggregates – the popular quantiles:

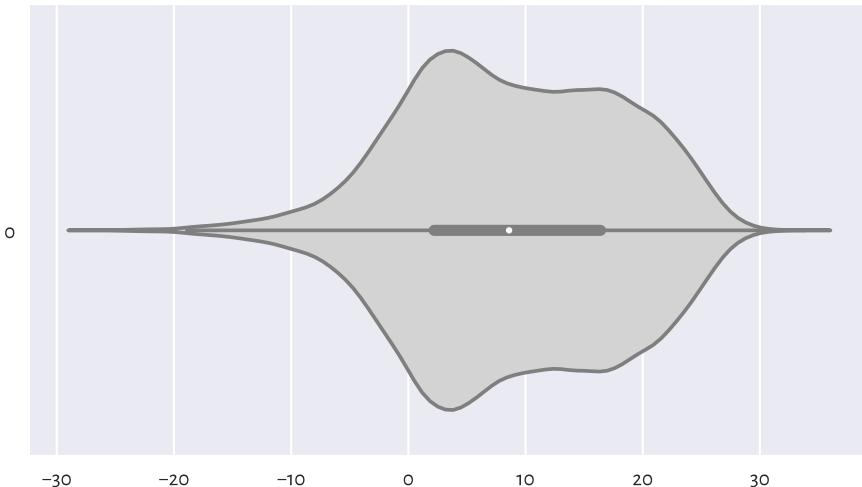
```
np.quantile(temp, [0, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1])
## array([-26.9, 2.2, 8.6, 16.4, 33.9])
```

as well as the arithmetic mean and standard deviation:

```
np.mean(temp), np.std(temp)
## (8.990273958441023, 9.16204388619955)
```

and a graphical summary of the data distribution in [Figure 16.1](#):

```
sns.violinplot(data=temp, orient="h", color="lightgray")
plt.show()
```



[Figure 16.1](#): Distribution of the midrange daily temperatures in Spokane in the period 1889–2021; observations are treated as a bag of unrelated items (temperature on a “randomly chosen day” in a version of planet Earth where there is no climate change)

When computing data aggregates or plotting histograms, the order of elements does not matter. Contrary to the *independent measurements* case, vectors representing time series do not have to be treated simply as mixed bags of unrelated items.

---

**Important:** In time series, for any given item  $x_i$ , its neighbouring elements  $x_{i-1}$  and  $x_{i+1}$  denote the recordings occurring directly before and after it. We can use this *temporal ordering* to model how consecutive measurements *depend* on each other, describe

how they change over time, forecast future values, detect long-time trends, and so forth.

Here are the data for 2021, plotted as a function of time:

```
plt.plot(temp[-365:])
plt.xticks([0, 181, 364], ["2021-01-01", "2021-07-01", "2021-12-31"])
plt.show()
```

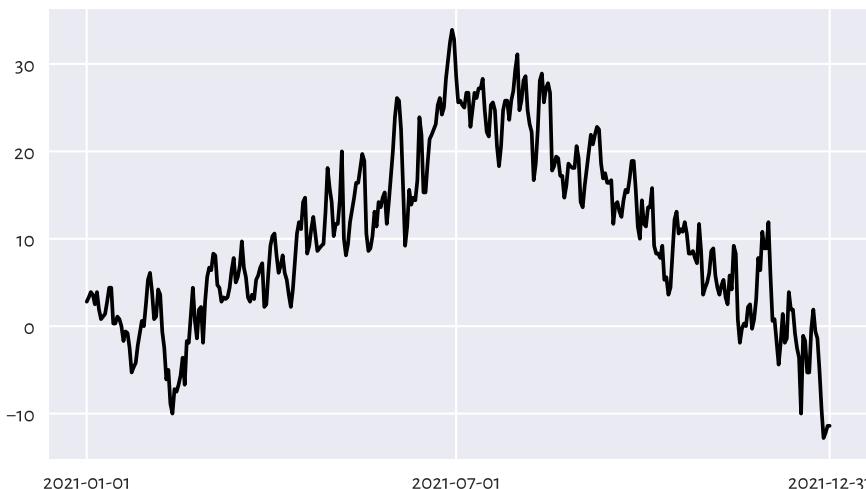


Figure 16.2: Line chart of midrange daily temperatures in Spokane for 2021; plotting data as a function of the time variable reveals some seasonal pattern

What we see in Figure 16.2 is often referred to as a *line chart* – data points are connected by straight line segments. There are some visible seasonal variations, such as that, well, obviously, winter is colder than summer.

---

## 16.2 Working with Datetimes and Timedeltas

### 16.2.1 Representation: The UNIX Epoch

`numpy.datetime64`<sup>1</sup> is a type to represent datetimes. Usually, we will be creating dates from strings, for instance:

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://numpy.org/doc/stable/reference/arrays.datetime.html>

```
d = np.array([
    "1889-08-01", "1970-01-01", "2021-12-31", "today"
], dtype="datetime64")
d
## array(['1889-08-01', '1970-01-01', '2021-12-31', '2022-06-23'],
##       dtype='datetime64[D]')
```

Similarly with datetimes:

```
dt = np.array(["1970-01-01T02:01:05", "now"], dtype="datetime64")
dt
## array(['1970-01-01T02:01:05', '2022-06-23T05:58:15'],
##       dtype='datetime64[s]')
```

**Important:** Internally, the above are represented as the number of days or seconds since the so-called *Unix Epoch*, 1970-01-01T00:00:00 in the UTC time zone.

Let us verify that:

```
d.astype(float)
## array([-29372.,      0.,  18992.,  19166.])
dt.astype(float)
## array([7.2650000e+03, 1.6559639e+09])
```

Which, when we think about it for a while, is exactly what we expected.

**Exercise 16.1** Write a regular expression that extract all dates in the YYYY-MM-DD format from a (possibly long) string and converts them to datetime64.

### 16.2.2 Time Differences

Computing datetime differences is possible thanks to the `numpy.timedelta64` objects:

```
d - np.timedelta64(1, "D") # minus 1 Day
## array(['1889-07-31', '1969-12-31', '2021-12-30', '2022-06-22'],
##       dtype='datetime64[D]')
dt + np.timedelta64(12, "h") # plus 12 hours
## array(['1970-01-01T14:01:05', '2022-06-23T17:58:15'],
##       dtype='datetime64[s]')
```

Also, `numpy.arange` (and `pandas.date_range`) can be used to generate sequences of equidistant datetimes:

```

dates = np.arange("1889-08-01", "2022-01-01", dtype="datetime64[D]")
dates[:3] # preview
dates[-3:] # preview
## array(['1889-08-01', '1889-08-02', '1889-08-03'], dtype='datetime64[D]')
## array(['2021-12-29', '2021-12-30', '2021-12-31'], dtype='datetime64[D]')

```

### 16.2.3 Datetimes in Data Frames

Dates and datetimes can of course be emplaced in **pandas** data frames:

```

spokane = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    date=np.arange("1889-08-01", "2022-01-01", dtype="datetime64[D"]),
    temp=temps
))
spokane.head()
##      date  temp
## 0 1889-08-01  21.1
## 1 1889-08-02  20.8
## 2 1889-08-03  22.2
## 3 1889-08-04  21.7
## 4 1889-08-05  18.3

```

Interestingly, if we ask the date column to become the data frame's `.index` (i.e., row labels), we will be able select date ranges quite easily with `loc[...]` and string slices (refer to the manual of `pandas.DateTimeIndex` for more details).

```

spokane.set_index("date").loc["2021-12-25":, :].reset_index()
##      date  temp
## 0 2021-12-25 -1.4
## 1 2021-12-26 -5.0
## 2 2021-12-27 -9.4
## 3 2021-12-28 -12.8
## 4 2021-12-29 -12.2
## 5 2021-12-30 -11.4
## 6 2021-12-31 -11.4

```

**Example 16.2** Based on the above, we can plot the data for the last 5 years quite easily, see Figure 16.3.

```

x = spokane.set_index("date").loc["2017-01-01":, "temp"]
plt.plot(x)
plt.show()

```

The x-axis labels have now been generated automatically.

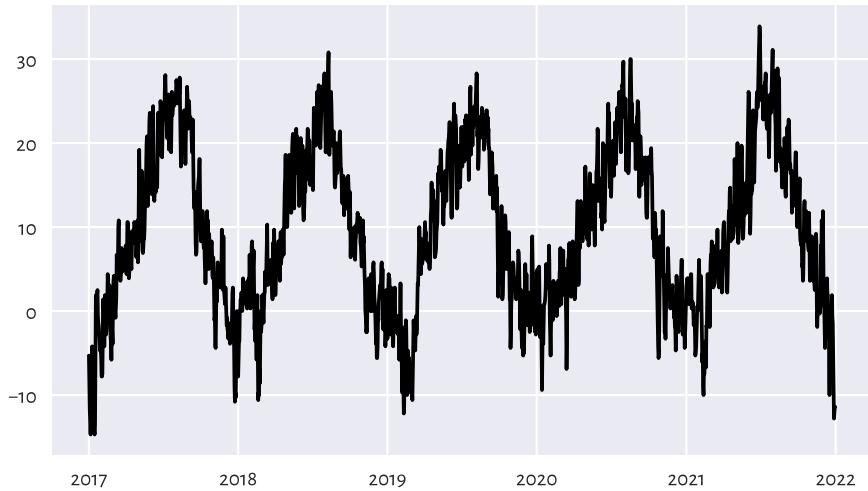


Figure 16.3: Line chart of midrange daily temperatures in Spokane for 2017–2021

Note that `pandas.to_datetime` can be used to convert strings to datetime objects:

```
dates = ["1991-04-05", "2021-09-12", "2042-12-31"]
dates = pd.Series(pd.to_datetime(dates))
dates
## 0    1991-04-05
## 1    2021-09-12
## 2    2042-12-31
## dtype: datetime64[ns]
```

**Exercise 16.3** From the `birth_dates`<sup>2</sup> dataset, select all people less than 18 years old (as of the current day). The `pandas.to_datetime` function can also convert arbitrarily formatted date strings, e.g., "MM/DD/YYYY" or DD.MM.YYYY to Series of `datetime64`s.

A number of datetime functions and related properties can be referred to via the `pandas.Series.dt` accessor (similarly to `pandas.Series.str` discussed in Chapter 14). In particular, they are a convenient means for extracting different date or time fields, such as:

```
dates_ymd = pd.DataFrame(dict(
    year = dates.dt.year,
    month = dates.dt.month,
    day = dates.dt.day
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>2</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/birth\\_dates.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/birth_dates.csv)

(continued from previous page)

```
)
dates_ymd
##   year month day
## 0 1991     4    5
## 1 2021     9   12
## 2 2042    12   31
```

Interestingly, `pandas.to_datetime` can also convert data frames with columns named `year`, `month`, `day`, etc. back to datetime objects directly:

```
pd.to_datetime(dates_ymd)
## 0 1991-04-05
## 1 2021-09-12
## 2 2042-12-31
## dtype: datetime64[ns]
```

**Example 16.4** For instance, we can extract the month and year parts of dates to compute the average monthly temperatures it the last 50-ish years:

```
x = spokane.set_index("date").loc["1970":, ].reset_index()
mean_monthly_temps = x.groupby([
    x.date.dt.year.rename("year"),
    x.date.dt.month.rename("month")
]).temp.mean().unstack()
mean_monthly_temps.head().round(1)
## month  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 11 12
## year
## 1970 -3.4 2.3 2.8 5.3 12.7 19.0 22.5 21.2 12.3 7.2 2.2 -2.4
## 1971 -0.1 0.8 1.7 7.4 13.5 14.6 21.0 23.4 12.9 6.8 1.9 -3.5
## 1972 -5.2 -0.7 5.2 5.6 13.8 16.6 20.0 21.7 13.0 8.4 3.5 -3.7
## 1973 -2.8 1.6 5.0 7.8 13.6 16.7 21.8 20.6 15.4 8.4 0.9 0.7
## 1974 -4.4 1.8 3.6 8.0 10.1 18.9 19.9 20.1 15.8 8.9 2.4 -0.8
```

Figure 16.4 depicts these data on a heatmap:

```
sns.heatmap(mean_monthly_temps)
plt.show()
```

Again we discover the ultimate truth that winters are cold, whereas in the summertime the living is easy, what a wonderful world.

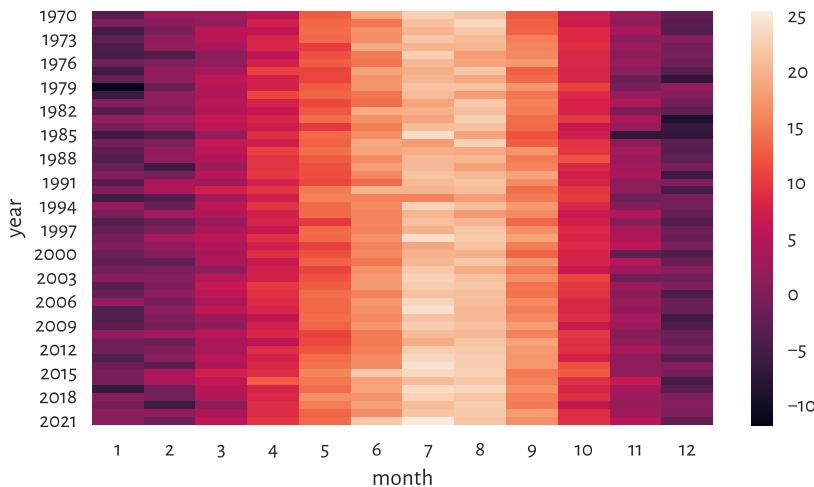


Figure 16.4: Average monthly temperatures

#### 16.2.4 Modelling Event Times with Exponential Distributions (\*)

The exponential distribution family is frequently used for modelling times between different events (i.e., deltas) under the assumption that a system generates on average a constant number of events and that they occur independently of each other.

This may be the case for the times between requests to a cloud service during peak hours, wait times for the next pedestrian to appear at a crossing near the Southern Cross Station in Melbourne, or the amount of time it takes a bank teller to interact with a customer (there is a whole branch of applied mathematics – or should we refer to it more fashionably: data science – called queuing theory that deals with this type of modelling).

An exponential family is identified by the scale parameter  $s > 0$ , being at the same time its expected value. The probability density function of  $\text{Exp}(s)$  is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{s} e^{-x/s}$$

for  $x \geq 0$  and  $f(x) = 0$  otherwise. We should be careful: some textbooks choose the parametrisation by  $\lambda = 1/s$  instead of  $s$ ; also **scipy** uses this convention.

Here is a pseudorandom sample where there are 5 events per minute on average:

```
np.random.seed(123)
λ = 60/5 # 5 events per 60 seconds on average
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
d = scipy.stats.expon.rvs(size=1200, scale=λ)
np.round(d[:8], 3) # preview
## array([14.307, 4.045, 3.087, 9.617, 15.253, 6.601, 47.412, 13.856])
```

This gave us the wait times between the events (deltas), in seconds.

A natural sample estimator of the scale parameter is of course:

```
np.mean(d)
## 11.839894504211724
```

Which is close to what we *expect*, i.e., 12 seconds between the events.

We can convert the above to datetime (starting at a fixed calendar date), e.g., as follows:

```
t0 = np.array("2022-01-01T00:00:00", dtype="datetime64[ms]")
d_ms = np.round(d*1000).astype(int) # in milliseconds
t = t0 + np.array(np.cumsum(d_ms), dtype="timedelta64[ms]")
t[:8], t[-2:] # preview
## (array(['2022-01-01T00:00:14.307', '2022-01-01T00:00:18.352',
##        '2022-01-01T00:00:21.439', '2022-01-01T00:00:31.056',
##        '2022-01-01T00:00:46.309', '2022-01-01T00:00:52.910',
##        '2022-01-01T00:01:40.322', '2022-01-01T00:01:54.178'],
##       dtype='datetime64[ms]'), array(['2022-01-01T03:56:45.312', '2022-01-01T03:56:45.312',
##       dtype='datetime64[ms]'))
```

We converted the deltas to milliseconds so that we did not lose precision; `datetime64` is based on integers, not floating-point numbers.

As an exercise, let us apply binning and count how many events occur in each hour:

```
b = np.arange(
    "2022-01-01T00:00:00", "2022-01-01T05:00:00",
    1000*60*60, # number of milliseconds in 1 hour
    dtype="datetime64[ms]"
)
np.histogram(t, bins=b)
## (array([305, 300, 274, 321]), array(['2022-01-01T00:00:00.000', '2022-01-01T01:00:00.000',
##        '2022-01-01T02:00:00.000', '2022-01-01T03:00:00.000',
##        '2022-01-01T04:00:00.000'], dtype='datetime64[ms]'))
```

We expect 5 events per second, hence, 300 of them per hour. On a side note, from a course in statistics we know that for exponential inter-event times, the number of events per unit of time follows a Poisson distribution.

**Exercise 16.5** (\*\*\*) Consider the `wait_times`<sup>3</sup> dataset that gives the times between consecutive events, in seconds. Estimate the event rate per hour. Draw a histogram representing the number of events per hour.

---

## 16.3 Basic Operations

### 16.3.1 Iterative Differences and Cumulative Sums Revisited

Recall the `numpy.diff` function and its almost-inverse, `numpy.cumsum`. The former can turn a time series into a vector of *relative changes* (also called *deltas*,  $\Delta_i = x_{i+1} - x_i$ ).

```
x = temps[-7:] # last 7 days
x
## array([-1.4, -5. , -9.4, -12.8, -12.2, -11.4, -11.4])
```

The iterative differences (deltas) are:

```
d = np.diff(x)
d
## array([-3.6, -4.4, -3.4,  0.6,  0.8,  0. ])
```

For instance, between the second and the first day of the last week, the midrange temperature dropped by  $-3.6^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

The other way around, here the cumulative sums of the deltas:

```
np.cumsum(d)
## array([-3.6, -8. , -11.4, -10.8, -10. , -10. ])
```

This turned deltas back to a shifted version of the original series. However, we will need the first (root) observation therefrom to restore the dataset in full.

```
x[0] + np.append(0, np.cumsum(d))
## array([-1.4, -5. , -9.4, -12.8, -12.2, -11.4, -11.4])
```

**Exercise 16.6** Consider the `euraud-20200101-20200630-no-na`<sup>4</sup> dataset which lists daily EUR/AUD exchange rates in the first half of 2020 (remember COVID-19?), with missing observations removed. Using `numpy.diff`, compute the minimal, median, average, and maximal daily price changes. Also, draw a box and whisker plot for these deltas.

---

<sup>3</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/wait\\_times.txt](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/wait_times.txt)

<sup>4</sup> [https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/master/marek/euraud-20200101-20200630-no-na.txt](https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/teaching_data/master/marek/euraud-20200101-20200630-no-na.txt)

**Exercise 16.7** (\*) Consider the `btcusd_ohlcv_2021_dates`<sup>5</sup> dataset which gives the daily BTC/USD exchange rates in 2021:

```
btc = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/btcusd_ohlcv_2021_dates.csv",
    comment="#").loc[:, ["Date", "Close"]]
btc["Date"] = btc["Date"].astype("datetime64[D]")
btc.head(12)
##           Date      Close
## 0 2021-01-01  29374.152
## 1 2021-01-02  32127.268
## 2 2021-01-03  32782.023
## 3 2021-01-04  31971.914
## 4 2021-01-05  33992.430
## 5 2021-01-06  36824.363
## 6 2021-01-07  39371.043
## 7 2021-01-08  40797.609
## 8 2021-01-09  40254.547
## 9 2021-01-10  38356.441
## 10 2021-01-11  35566.656
## 11 2021-01-12  33922.961
```

Convert it to a “lagged” representation, being a convenient form for some machine learning algorithms:

1. Add the `Change` column giving by how much the price changed since the previous day.
2. Add the `Dir` column indicating if the change was positive or negative.
3. Add the `Lag1`, ..., `Lag5` columns which give the `Changes` in the 5 preceding days.

The first few rows of the resulting data frame should look like this (assuming we do not want any missing values):

```
##       Date Close  Change Dir     Lag1     Lag2     Lag3     Lag4     Lag5
## 2021-01-07 39371  2546.68 inc  2831.93  2020.52 -810.11  654.76 2753.12
## 2021-01-08 40798  1426.57 inc  2546.68  2831.93  2020.52 -810.11  654.76
## 2021-01-09 40255 -543.06 dec  1426.57  2546.68 2831.93  2020.52 -810.11
## 2021-01-10 38356 -1898.11 dec -543.06  1426.57 2546.68 2831.93  2020.52
## 2021-01-11 35567 -2789.78 dec -1898.11 -543.06 1426.57 2546.68 2831.93
## 2021-01-12 33923 -1643.69 dec -2789.78 -1898.11 -543.06 1426.57 2546.68
```

In the 6th row (representing 2021-01-12), `Lag1` corresponds to `Change` on 2021-01-11, `Lag2` gives the `Change` on 2021-01-10, and so forth.

To spice things up, make sure your code can generate any number, say `k` of lagged variables.

---

<sup>5</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/btcusd\\_ohlcv\\_2021\\_dates.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/btcusd_ohlcv_2021_dates.csv)

### 16.3.2 Smoothing with Moving Averages

With time series it makes sense to consider batches of consecutive points as there is a time dependence between them. In particular, we can consider computing different aggregates inside *rolling windows* of a particular size.

For example, given sequence  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and some  $k \leq n$ , the  $k$ -moving average is a vector  $(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{n-k+1})$  such that

$$y_i = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{j=1}^k x_{i+j-1},$$

i.e., the arithmetic mean of  $k$  consecutive observations starting at  $x_i$ .

For example, here are the temperatures in the last 7 days of December 2011:

```
x = spokane.set_index("date").iloc[-7:, :]
x
##           temp
## date
## 2021-12-25 -1.4
## 2021-12-26 -5.0
## 2021-12-27 -9.4
## 2021-12-28 -12.8
## 2021-12-29 -12.2
## 2021-12-30 -11.4
## 2021-12-31 -11.4
```

The 3-moving average:

```
x.rolling(3, center=True).mean().round(2)
##           temp
## date
## 2021-12-25    NaN
## 2021-12-26 -5.27
## 2021-12-27 -9.07
## 2021-12-28 -11.47
## 2021-12-29 -12.13
## 2021-12-30 -11.67
## 2021-12-31    NaN
```

We get, in this order: the mean of the first 3 observations; the mean of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th items; then the mean of the 3rd, 4th, and 5th; and so forth. Notice that we have centred the observations in such a way that we have the same number of missing values at the start and end of the series. This way, we treat the first 3-day moving average (the average of the temperatures on the first 3 days) as representative for the 2nd day.

And now for something completely different; the 5-moving average:

```
x.rolling(5, center=True).mean().round(2)
##                  temp
## date
## 2021-12-25      NaN
## 2021-12-26      NaN
## 2021-12-27 -8.16
## 2021-12-28 -10.16
## 2021-12-29 -11.44
## 2021-12-30      NaN
## 2021-12-31      NaN
```

Applying the moving average has the nice effect of *smoothing* out all kinds of broadly-conceived noise. To illustrate this, compare the temperature data for the last 5 years in Figure 16.3 and in Figure 16.5.

```
x = spokane.set_index("date").loc["2017-01-01":, "temp"]
x30 = x.rolling(30, center=True).mean()
x100 = x.rolling(100, center=True).mean()
plt.plot(x30, label="30-day moving average")
plt.plot(x100, "r--", label="100-day moving average")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

**Exercise 16.8** (\*) Other aggregation functions can be applied in rolling windows too. Draw, in the same figure, the plots of the 1-year moving minimums, medians, and maximums.

### 16.3.3 Detecting Trends and Seasonal Patterns

Thanks to windowed aggregation, we can also detect general trends (when using longish windows). For instance, below we compute (but plot later) 10-year moving averages for the last 50-odd years worth of data:

```
x = spokane.set_index("date").loc["1970-01-01":, "temp"]
x10y = x.rolling(3653, center=True).mean()
```

Based on this, we can compute detrended series:

```
xd = x - x10y
```

Seasonal patterns can be revealed by smoothening out the detrended version of the data, e.g., using a 1-year moving average:

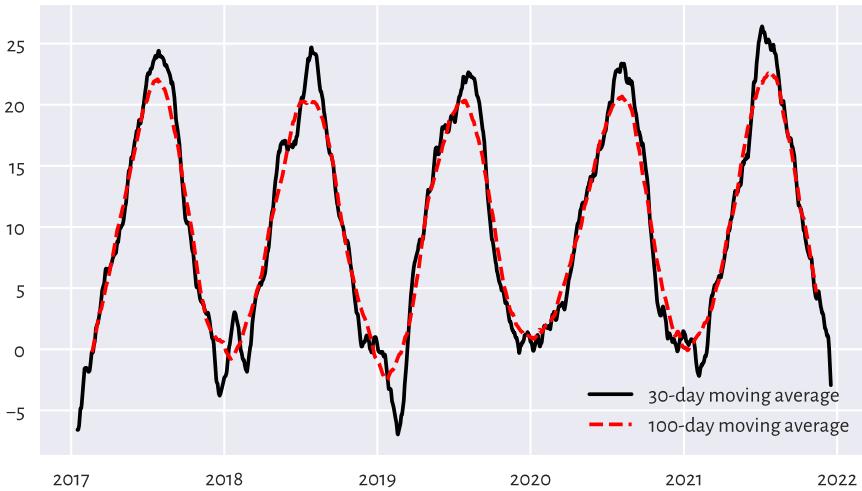


Figure 16.5: Line chart of 30- and 100-moving averages of the midrange daily temperatures in Spokane for 2017-2021

```
xd1y = xd.rolling(365, center=True).mean()
```

See [Figure 16.6](#) for an illustration:

```
plt.plot(x10y, label="trend")
plt.plot(xd1y, "r--", label="seasonal pattern")
plt.legend()
plt.show()
```

Also, if we know the length of the seasonal pattern (in our case, 365-ish days), we can draw a seasonal plot, where we have a separate curve for each season (here: year) and all series share the same x-axis (here: day of year), see [Figure 16.7](#).

```
from matplotlib import cm
cmap=cm.get_cmap("coolwarm")
x = spokane.set_index("date").loc["1970-01-01":, :].reset_index()
for year in range(1970, 2022, 5):
    y = x.loc[x.date.dt.year == year, :]
    plt.plot(y.date.dt.day_of_year, y.temp,
              c=cmap((year-1970)/(2021-1970)), alpha=0.3,
              label=year if year % 10 == 0 else None)
avex = x.temp.groupby(x.date.dt.day_of_year).mean()
plt.plot(avex.index, avex, "g-", label="Average")
```

(continues on next page)

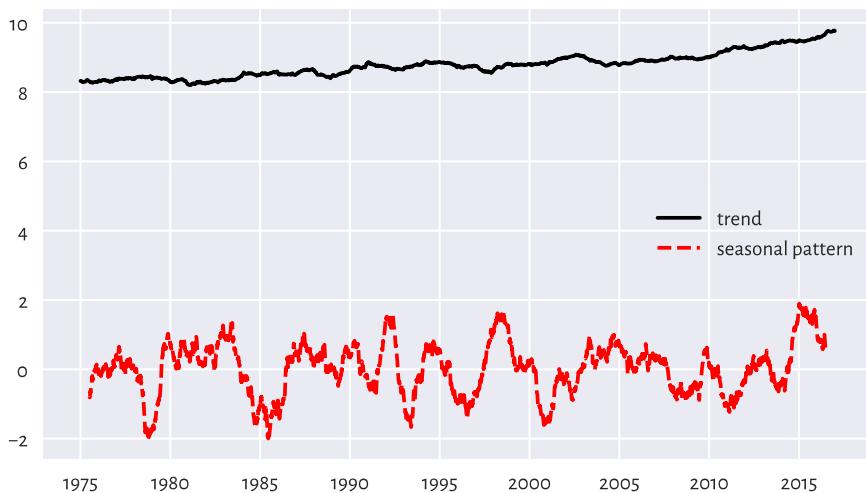


Figure 16.6: Trend and seasonal pattern for the Spokane temperatures in recent years

(continued from previous page)

```
plt.legend()
plt.xlabel("Day of year")
plt.ylabel("Temperature")
plt.show()
```

### 16.3.4 Imputing Missing Values

Missing values in time series can use the information from the neighbouring non-missing observations. After all, it is usually the case that, e.g., today's weather is “similar” to yesterday's and tomorrow's.

The most straightforward ways for dealing with missing values in time series are:

- *forward-fill* – propagate the last non-missing observation,
- *backward-fill* – get the next non-missing value,
- *linearly interpolate between two adjacent non-missing values* – in particular, a single missing value will be replaced by the average of its neighbours.

**Example 16.9** The classic `air_quality_1973`<sup>6</sup> dataset gives some daily air quality measurements in New York, between May and September 1973. As an example, let us impute a first few observations in the solar radiation column:

---

<sup>6</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/r/air\\_quality\\_1973.csv](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/r/air_quality_1973.csv)

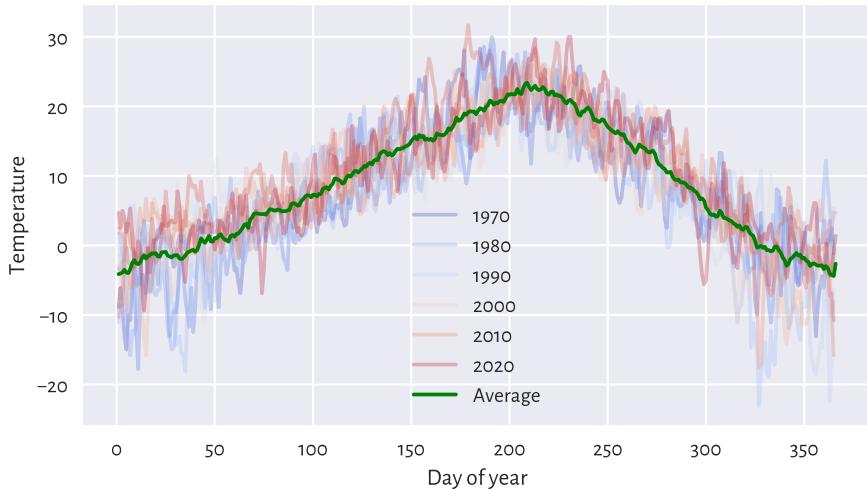


Figure 16.7: An example seasonal plot: Spokane temperatures vs day of year between 1970 and 2021

```

air = pd.read_csv("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/r/air_quality_1973.csv",
    comment="#")
x = air.loc[:, "Solar.R"].iloc[:12]
pd.DataFrame(dict(
    original=x,
    ffilled=x.fillna(method="ffill"),
    bfilled=x.fillna(method="bfill"),
    interpolated=x.interpolate(method="linear"))
)
##      original   ffilled   bfilled interpolated
## 0      190.0     190.0     190.0    190.000000
## 1      118.0     118.0     118.0    118.000000
## 2      149.0     149.0     149.0    149.000000
## 3      313.0     313.0     313.0    313.000000
## 4       NaN      313.0     299.0    308.333333
## 5       NaN      313.0     299.0    303.666667
## 6      299.0     299.0     299.0    299.000000
## 7      99.0      99.0      99.0     99.000000
## 8      19.0      19.0      19.0     19.000000
## 9      194.0     194.0     194.0    194.000000
## 10     NaN      194.0     256.0    225.000000
## 11     256.0     256.0     256.0    256.000000

```

**Exercise 16.10** (\*) With the `air_quality_2018`<sup>7</sup> dataset:

1. Based on the hourly observations, compute the daily mean PM2.5s for Melbourne CBD and Morwell South.

For Melbourne CBD, if some hourly measurement is missing, linearly interpolate between the preceding and following non-missing data, e.g., a PM2.5 sequence of `[..., 10, NaN, NaN, 40, ...]` (you need to manually add the `NaN`s to the dataset) should be transformed to `[..., 10, 20, 30, 40, ...]`.

For Morwell South, impute the reading as an average of the records in the nearest air quality stations, located in Morwell East, Moe, Churchill, or Traralgon.

2. Present the daily mean PM2.5 measurements for Melbourne CBD and Morwell South on a single plot. The x-axis labels should be human-readable and intuitive.
3. For the Melbourne data, count on how many days the average PM2.5 was greater than in the preceding day.
4. Find 5 most air-polluted days for Melbourne.

### 16.3.5 Plotting Multidimensional Time Series

Multidimensional time series stored in the form of an  $n$ -by- $m$  matrix are best viewed as  $m$  time series – possibly but not necessarily somewhat related to each other – all sampled at the same  $n$  points in time (e.g.,  $m$  different stocks on  $n$  consecutive days).

Consider the currency exchange rates for the first half of 2020:

```
eurxxx = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/eurxxx-20200101-20200630-no-na.csv",
    delimiter=",")
eurxxx[::6, :] # preview
## array([[1.6006 , 7.7946 , 0.84828, 4.2544 ],
##        [1.6031 , 7.7712 , 0.85115, 4.2493 ],
##        [1.6119 , 7.8049 , 0.85215, 4.2415 ],
##        [1.6251 , 7.7562 , 0.85183, 4.2457 ],
##        [1.6195 , 7.7184 , 0.84868, 4.2429 ],
##        [1.6193 , 7.7011 , 0.85285, 4.2422 ]])
```

This gives EUR/AUD (how many Australian Dollars we pay for 1 Euro), EUR/CNY (Chinese Yuans), EUR/GBP (British Pounds), and EUR/PLN (Polish Złotys), in this order. Let us draw the four time series, see Figure 16.8.

```
dates = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/euraud-20200101-20200630-dates.txt",
    (continues on next page)
```

---

<sup>7</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/teaching\\_data/blob/master/marek/air\\_quality\\_2018.csv.gz](https://github.com/gagolews/teaching_data/blob/master/marek/air_quality_2018.csv.gz)

(continued from previous page)

```

    dtype="datetime64")
labels = ["AUD", "CNY", "GBP", "PLN"]
styles = ["solid", "dotted", "dashed", "dashdot"]
for i in range(eurxxx.shape[1]):
    plt.plot(dates, eurxxx[:, i], ls=styles[i], label=labels[i])
plt.legend()
plt.show()

```

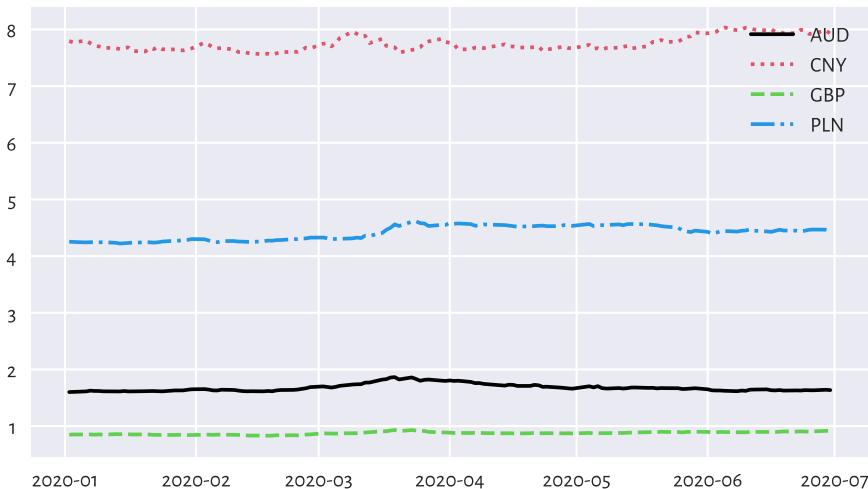


Figure 16.8: EUR/AUD, EUR/CNY, EUR/GBP, and EUR/PLN exchange rates in the first half of 2020

Unfortunately, they are all on different scales, hence the plot is not necessarily readable. It would be better to draw these time series on 4 separate plots (compare the trellis plots in [Section 12.2.5](#)).

Another idea is to depict the currency exchange rates *relative* to the prices on some day, say, the first one; see [Figure 16.9](#).

```

for i in range(eurxxx.shape[1]):
    plt.plot(dates, eurxxx[:, i]/eurxxx[0, i],
              ls=styles[i], label=labels[i])
plt.legend()
plt.show()

```

This way, e.g., relative EUR/AUD rate of ca. 1.15 in mid-March denotes means that if an Australian bought some Euros on the first day and then sold them three-ish months

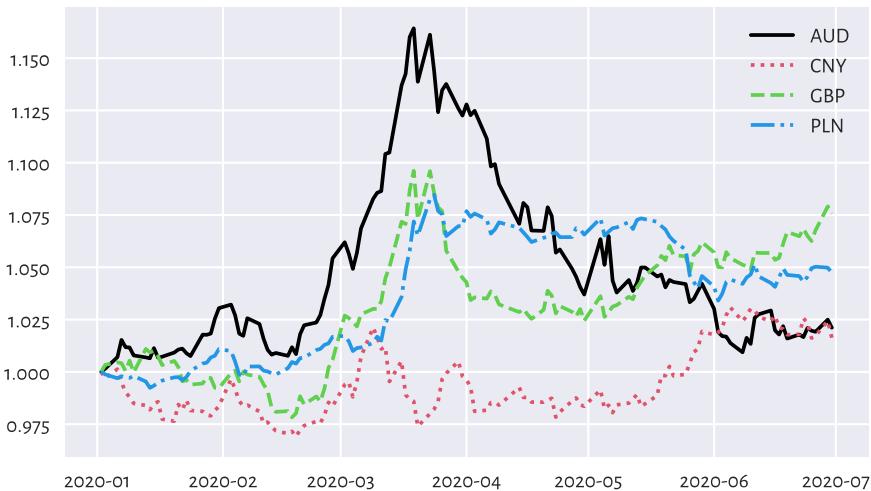


Figure 16.9: EUR/AUD, EUR/CNY, EUR/GBP, and EUR/PLN exchange rates relative to the prices on the first day

later, they would have 15% more currency (the Euro become 15% stronger relative to AUD).

**Exercise 16.11** Based on EUR/AUD and EUR/PLN rates, compute and plot the AUD/PLN as well as PLN/AUD ones.

**Exercise 16.12** (\*) Draw the EUR/AUD and EUR/GBP rates on a single plot, but with each series having its own<sup>8</sup> y axis.

**Exercise 16.13** (\*) Draw the EUR/xxx rates for your favourite currencies over a larger period of time. Use [data<sup>9</sup>](#) downloaded from the European Central Bank. Add a few moving averages. For each year, identify the lowest and the highest rate.

### 16.3.6 Candlestick Plots (\*)

Consider the BTC/USD data for 2021:

```
btcusd = np.loadtxt("https://raw.githubusercontent.com/gagolews/" +
    "teaching_data/master/marek/btcusd_ohlcv_2021.csv",
    delimiter=",")
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>8</sup> [https://matplotlib.org/stable/gallery/subplots\\_axes\\_and\\_figures/secondary\\_axis.html](https://matplotlib.org/stable/gallery/subplots_axes_and_figures/secondary_axis.html)

<sup>9</sup> [https://www.ecb.europa.eu/stats/policy\\_and\\_exchange\\_rates/euro\\_reference\\_exchange\\_rates/html/index.en.html](https://www.ecb.europa.eu/stats/policy_and_exchange_rates/euro_reference_exchange_rates/html/index.en.html)

(continued from previous page)

```
btcusd[:6, :4] # preview
## array([[28994.01 , 29600.627, 28803.586, 29374.152],
##        [29376.455, 33155.117, 29091.182, 32127.268],
##        [32129.408, 34608.559, 32052.316, 32782.023],
##        [32810.949, 33440.219, 28722.756, 31971.914],
##        [31977.041, 34437.59 , 30221.188, 33992.43 ],
##        [34013.613, 36879.699, 33514.035, 36824.363]])
```

This gives the open, high, low, close prices on the 365 consecutive days (we skipped the marked volume column for readability), which is a common way to summarise daily rates.

The `mplfinance`<sup>10</sup> package (`matplotlib-finance`) features a few functions related to the plotting of financial data. Here, let us briefly mention the candlestick plot.

```
import mplfinance as mpf
dates = np.arange("2021-01-01", "2022-01-01", dtype="datetime64[D]")
mpf.plot(pd.DataFrame(
    btcusd,
    columns=["Open", "High", "Low", "Close", "Volume"]
).set_index(dates).iloc[:31, :], type="candle", style="charles")
# plt.show() # not needed...
```

Figure 16.10 depicts the January 2021 data. Let us stress that this is not a box and whisker plot. The candlestick body denotes the difference in the market opening and the closing price. The wicks (shadows) give the range (high to low).

Green candlesticks represent bullish days – where the closing rate is greater than the opening one (uptrend). Red candles are bearish (decline)

**Exercise 16.14** Draw the BTC/USD rates for the whole year and add the 10-day moving averages.

**Exercise 16.15** (\*) Draw a candlestick plot manually, without using the `mplfinance` package. `matplotlib.pyplot.fill` might be helpful.

**Exercise 16.16** (\*) Using `matplotlib.pyplot.fill_between` add a semi-transparent polygon that fills the area bounded between the Low and High prices on all the days.

---

<sup>10</sup> <https://github.com/matplotlib/mplfinance>



Figure 16.10: Candlestick plot for the BTC/USD exchange rates in January 2021

## 16.4 Notes on Signal Processing (Audio, Image, Video) (\*)

Data science classically deals with information that is or can be represented in tabular form and where particular observations (which can be multidimensional) are usually independent from but still to some extent similar to each other. We often treat them as samples from different larger populations which we would like to describe or compare at some level of generality (think: health data on patients being subject to two treatment plans that we wish to evaluate).

From this perspective, time series which we have briefly touched upon above are already quite distinct, because there is some dependence observed in the time domain: a price of a stock that we observe today is influenced by what was happening yesterday. There might also be some seasonal patterns or trends under the hood. Still, for data of this kind, employing statistical modelling techniques (*stochastic processes*) still can make sense.

*Signals* such as audio, images, and video, are slightly different, because *structured randomness* does not play dominant role there (unless it is noise that we would like to filter out). Instead, what is happening in the frequency (think: perceiving pitches when

listening to music) or spatial (seeing green grass and sky on a photo) domain will play key role there.

Signal processing thus requires a quite distinct set of tools, e.g., Fourier analysis and finite impulse response (discrete convolution) filters. This course obviously cannot be about everything (also because it requires some more advanced calculus skills that we did not assume the reader to have at this time). Therefore, see, e.g., [[Smio2], [Ste96]].

Nevertheless, we should keep in mind that these are not completely independent domains. For example, we can extract various features of audio signals (e.g., overall loudness, timbre, and danceability of each recording in a large song database) and then treat them as tabular data to be analysed using the techniques described in this course. Moreover, machine learning (e.g., deep convolutional neural networks) algorithms may also be used for tasks such as object detection on images or optical character recognition.

---

**Note:** Some Python packages for signal processing worth inspecting include:

- `scipy.signal` and `scipy.ndimage`,
  - `pillow`<sup>11</sup> (`PIL`) ,
  - `scikit-image`<sup>12</sup>,
  - `OpenCV`<sup>13</sup> (a C++ library for image and video processing with Python bindings).
- 

## 16.5 Further Reading

Due to limited spacetime, we merely touched upon the most basic methods for dealing with time series. The reader is encouraged to take a look at the broad literature concerning statistical analysis of time series (e.g., issues in forecasting, [[HA21], [OFK17]]) as well as on signal processing (e.g., [[Smio2], [Ste96]]); their toolkits somewhat overlap.

For probabilistic modelling, see textbooks on stochastic processes, e.g., [[Tij03]].

---

<sup>11</sup> <https://pillow.readthedocs.io>

<sup>12</sup> <https://scikit-image.org/>

<sup>13</sup> <https://www.opencv.org>

## 16.6 Exercises

**Exercise 16.17** Assume we have a time series with  $n$  observations. What is a 1- and an  $n$ -moving average? Which one is smoother, an  $(0.01n)$ - or a  $(0.1n)$ - one?

**Exercise 16.18** What is the Unix Epoch?

**Exercise 16.19** How can we recreate the original series when we are given its `numpy.diff`-transformed version?

**Exercise 16.20** (\*) In your own words, describe the key elements of a candlestick plot.



**Part VI**

**Appendix**



# A

---

## *Changelog*

---

**Important:** Any bug/typos reports/fixes<sup>1</sup> are appreciated.

---

Below is the list of the most noteworthy changes.

- **2022-XX-XX (vX.X.X):**
  - Preface complete.
  - (ONGOING....) Final proof-reading. Chapters 1-8 are already complete. The remaining chapters will be finalised soon.
  - (ONGOING....) Minor extensions, and material reordering: aggregation functions, ...
  - Handling tied observations.
- **2022-06-13 (v0.5.1):**
  - The Kolmogorov-Smirnov Test (one and two sample).
  - The Pearson Chi-Squared Test (one and two sample and for independence).
  - Dealing with round-off and measurement errors.
  - Adding white noise (jitter).
  - Lambda expressions.
  - Matrices are iterable.
- **2022-05-31 (v0.4.1):**
  - The Rules.
  - Matrix multiplication, dot products.
  - Euclidean distance, few-nearest-neighbour and fixed-radius search.
  - Aggregation of multidimensional data.
  - Regression with  $k$ -nearest neighbours.

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://github.com/gagolews/datawranglingpy/blob/master/CODE\\_OF\\_CONDUCT.md](https://github.com/gagolews/datawranglingpy/blob/master/CODE_OF_CONDUCT.md)

- Least squares fitting of linear regression models.
  - Geometric transforms; orthonormal matrices.
  - SVD and dimensionality reduction/PCA.
  - Classification with  $k$ -nearest neighbours.
  - Clustering with  $k$ -means.
  - Text Processing and Regular Expression chapters were merged.
  - Unidimensional Data Aggregation and Transformation chapters were merged.
  - `pandas.GroupBy` objects are iterable.
  - Semitransparent histograms.
  - Contour plots.
  - Argument unpacking and variadic arguments (`*args, **kwargs`).
- 2022-05-23 (v0.3.1):
    - More lightweight mathematical notation.
    - Some equalities related to the mathematical functions we rely on (the natural logarithm, cosine, etc.).
    - A way to compute the most correlated pair of variables.
    - A note on modifying elements in an array and on adding new rows and columns.
    - An example seasonal plot in the time series chapter.
    - Solutions to the SQL exercises added; using `pandas.testing.assert_frame_equal` instead of `pandas.DataFrame.equals` to ignore small round-off errors.
    - More details on file paths.
  - 2022-04-12 (v0.2.1):
    - Many chapters merged or relocated.
    - Added captions to all figures.
    - Improved formatting of elements (information boxes such as *note*, *important*, *exercise*, *example*).
  - 2022-03-27 (v0.1.1):
    - First public release – most chapters are drafted, more or less.
    - Using `Sphinx` for building.
  - 2022-01-05 (v0.0.0):

- Project started (lecture notes for my students at Deakin).



---

## Bibliography

---

- [AS72] M. Abramowitz and I.A. Stegun, editors. *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables*. Dover Publications, 1972. URL: <https://personal.math.ubc.ca/~cbm/aands/intro.htm>.
- [Bil95] P. Billingsley. *Probability and Measure*. John Wiley & Sons, 1995.
- [Biso06] C. Bishop. *Pattern Recognition and Machine Learning*. Springer-Verlag, 2006. URL: <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/research/people/cmbishop/>.
- [BHK20] A. Blum, J. Hopcroft, and R. Kannan. *Foundations of Data Science*. Cambridge University Press, 2020. URL: <https://www.cs.cornell.edu/jeh/book.pdf>.
- [Bul03] P.S. Bullen. *Handbook of Means and Their Inequalities*. Springer Science+Business Media, Dordrecht, 2003.
- [CH91] J.M. Chambers and T. Hastie. *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole, 1991.
- [CSN09] A. Clauset, C.R. Shalizi, and M.E.J. Newman. Power-law distributions in empirical data. *SIAM Review*, 51(4):661–703, 2009. doi:10.1137/070710111.
- [Cra46] H. Cramér. *Mathematical Methods of Statistics*. Princeton University Press, 1946. URL: <https://archive.org/details/in.ernet.dli.2015.223699>.
- [DJ03] T. Dasu and T. Johnson. *Exploratory Data Mining and Data Cleaning*. John Wiley & Sons, 2003.
- [Dat03] C.J. Date. *An Introduction to Database Systems*. Pearson, 2003.
- [DFO20] M.P. Deisenroth, A.A. Faisal, and C.S. Ong. *Mathematics for Machine Learning*. Cambridge University Press, 2020. URL: <https://mml-book.com/>.
- [DKLM05] F.M. Dekking, C. Kraaikamp, H.P. Lopuhaä, and L.E. Meester. *A Modern Introduction to Probability and Statistics: Understanding Why and How*. Springer, 2005.
- [DGL96] L. Devroye, L. Györfi, and G. Lugosi. *A Probabilistic Theory of Pattern Recognition*. Springer, 1996. doi:10.1007/978-1-4612-0711-5.
- [DD14] M.M. Deza and E. Deza. *Encyclopedia of Distances*. Springer, 2014.
- [FEHP10] C. Forbes, M. Evans, N. Hastings, and B. Peacock. *Statistical Distributions*. Wiley, 2010.

- [FD81] D. Freedman and P. Diaconis. On the histogram as a density estimator:  $L_2$  theory. *Zeitschrift für Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie und Verwandte Gebiete*, 57:453–476, 1981.
- [Frio06] J.E.F. Friedl. *Mastering Regular Expressions*. O'Reilly, 2006.
- [Gag15a] M. Gagolewski. *Data Fusion: Theory, Methods, and Applications*. Institute of Computer Science, Polish Academy of Sciences, 2015. ISBN 978-83-63159-20-7.
- [Gag15b] M. Gagolewski. Spread measures and their relation to aggregation functions. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 241(2):469–477, 2015. doi:10.1016/j.ejor.2014.08.034.
- [Gag22] M. Gagolewski. stringi: Fast and portable character string processing in R. *Journal of Statistical Software*, 2022. in press. URL: <https://stringi.gagolewski.com>.
- [GBC16] M. Gagolewski, M. Bartoszuk, and A. Cena. *Przetwarzanie i analiza danych w języku Python (Data Processing and Analysis in Python)*. PWN, 2016. ISBN 978-83-01-18940-2. in Polish.
- [Gen03] J.E. Gentle. *Random Number Generation and Monte Carlo Methods*. Springer-Verlag, 2003.
- [Gen09] J.E. Gentle. *Computational Statistics*. Springer-Verlag, 2009.
- [Gen17] J.E. Gentle. *Matrix Algebra: Theory, Computations and Applications in Statistics*. Springer, 2017.
- [Gen20] J.E. Gentle. *Theory of Statistics*. book draft, 2020. URL: <https://mason.gmu.edu/~jgentle/books/MathStat.pdf>.
- [Gol91] D. Goldberg. What every computer scientist should know about floating-point arithmetic. *ACM Computing Surveys*, 21(1):5–48, 1991. URL: <https://perso.ens-lyon.fr/jean-michel.muller/goldberg.pdf>.
- [GMMP09] M. Grabisch, J.-L. Marichal, R. Mesiar, and E. Pap. *Aggregation Functions*. Cambridge University Press, 2009.
- [Gum39] E.J. Gumbel. La probabilité des hypothèses. *Comptes Rendus de l'Académie des Sciences Paris*, 209:645–647, 1939.
- [H+20] C.R. Harris and others. Array programming with NumPy. *Nature*, 585(7825):357–362, 2020. doi:10.1038/s41586-020-2649-2.
- [HTF17] T. Hastie, R. Tibshirani, and J. Friedman. *The Elements of Statistical Learning*. Springer-Verlag, 2017. URL: <https://hastie.su.domains/ElemStatLearn/>.
- [Higo02] N.J. Higham. *Accuracy and Stability of Numerical Algorithms*. SIAM, Philadelphia, PA, 2002. URL: <https://dx.doi.org/10.1137/1.9780898718027>.

- [HU79] J.E. Hopcroft and J.D. Ullman. *Introduction to Automata Theory, Languages, and Computation*. Addison-Wesley, 1979.
- [Hun07] J.D. Hunter. Matplotlib: A 2D graphics environment. *Computing in Science & Engineering*, 9(3):90–95, 2007.
- [HA21] R.J. Hyndman and G. Athanasopoulos. *Forecasting: Principles and Practice*. OTexts, 2021. URL: <https://otexts.com/fpp3/>.
- [HF96] R.J. Hyndman and Y. Fan. Sample quantiles in statistical packages. *American Statistician*, 50(4):361–365, 1996. doi:10.2307/2684934.
- [Kle51] S.C. Kleene. Representation of events in nerve nets and finite automata. Technical Report RM-704, The RAND Corporation, Santa Monica, CA, 1951. URL: [https://www.rand.org/content/dam/rand/pubs/research\\_memoranda/2008/RM704.pdf](https://www.rand.org/content/dam/rand/pubs/research_memoranda/2008/RM704.pdf).
- [Knu97] D.E. Knuth. *The Art of Computer Programming II: Seminumerical Algorithms*. Addison-Wesley, 1997.
- [Kuc22] A.M. Kuchling. *Regular Expression HOWTO*. 2022. URL: <https://docs.python.org/3/howto/regex.html>.
- [Lee11] J. Lee. *A First Course in Combinatorial Optimisation*. Cambridge University Press, 2011.
- [LR02] R.J.A. Little and D.B. Rubin. *Statistical Analysis with Missing Data*. John Wiley & Sons, 2002.
- [Llo02]] S.P. Lloyd. Least squares quantization in PCM. *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory*, 28:128–137, 1957 (1982). Originally a 1957 Bell Telephone Laboratories Research Report; republished in 1982. doi:10.1109/TIT.1982.1056489.
- [McK17] W. McKinney. *Python for Data Analysis*. O'Reilly, 2017.
- [MKK16] M. Modarres, M.P. Kaminskiy, and V. Krivtsov. *Reliability Engineering and Risk Analysis: A Practical Guide*. CRC Press, 2016.
- [New05] M.E.J. Newman. Power laws, Pareto distributions and Zipf's law. *Contemporary Physics*, pages 323–351, 2005. doi:10.1080/00107510500052444.
- [O+21] T. Oetiker and others. *The Not So Short Introduction to LaTeX 2 $\varepsilon$* . 2021. URL: <https://tobi.oetiker.ch/lshort/lshort.pdf>.
- [O+22] F.W.J. Olver and others. *NIST Digital Library of Mathematical Functions*. 2022. URL: <https://dlmf.nist.gov/>.
- [OFK17] J.K. Ord, R. Fildes, and N. Kourentzes. *Principles of Business Forecasting*. Wessex Press, 2017.
- [PVG+11] F. Pedregosa, G. Varoquaux, A. Gramfort, V. Michel, B. Thirion, O. Grisel, M. Blondel, P. Prettenhofer, R. Weiss, V. Dubourg, J. Vanderplas, A. Pas-sos, D. Cournapeau, M. Brucher, M. Perrot, and E. Duchesnay. Scikit-

- learn: Machine learning in Python. *Journal of Machine Learning Research*, 12:2825–2830, 2011.
- [PTVF07] W.H. Press, S.A. Teukolsky, W.T. Vetterling, and B.P. Flannery. *Numerical Recipes. The Art of Scientific Computing*. Cambridge University Press, 2007.
- [PFBG19] R. Pérez-Fernández, B. De Baets, and M. Gagolewski. A taxonomy of monotonicity properties for the aggregation of multidimensional data. *Information Fusion*, 52:322–334, 2019. doi:10.1016/j.inffus.2019.05.006.
- [RS59] M. Rabin and D. Scott. Finite automata and their decision problems. *IBM Journal of Research and Development*, 3:114–125, 1959.
- [RT70] D.M. Ritchie and K.L. Thompson. QED text editor. Technical Report 70107-002, Bell Telephone Laboratories, Inc., 1970. URL: <https://wayback.archive-it.org/all/20150203071645/http://cm.bell-labs.com/cm/cs/who/dmr/qedman.pdf>.
- [RC04] C.P. Robert and G. Casella. *Monte Carlo Statistical Methods*. Springer-Verlag, 2004.
- [RRT99] P.J. Rousseeuw, I. Ruts, and J.W. Tukey. The bagplot: A bivariate boxplot. *The American Statistician*, 53(4):382–387, 1999. doi:10.2307/2686061.
- [Rub76] D.B. Rubin. Inference and missing data. *Biometrika*, 63(3):581–590, 1976.
- [Smio2] S.W. Smith. *The Scientist and Engineer's Guide to Digital Signal Processing*. Newnes, 2002. URL: <https://www.dspguide.com/>.
- [Ste96] K. Steiglitz. *A Digital Signal Processing Primer: With Applications to Digital Audio and Computer Music*. Pearson, 1996.
- [Tij03] H.C. Tijms. *A First Course in Stochastic Models*. Wiley, 2003.
- [vB18] S. van Buuren. *Flexible Imputation of Missing Data*. CRC Press, 2018. URL: <https://stefvanbuuren.name/fimd/>.
- [vdLdJ18] M. van der Loo and E. de Jonge. *Statistical Data Cleaning with Applications in R*. John Wiley & Sons, 2018.
- [V+20] P. Virtanen and others. SciPy 1.0: Fundamental algorithms for scientific computing in Python. *Nature Methods*, 17:261–272, 2020. doi:10.1038/s41592-019-0686-2.
- [Was21] M.L. Waskom. seaborn: Statistical data visualization. *Journal of Open Source Software*, 6(60):3021, 2021. doi:10.21105/joss.03021.
- [Wic11] H. Wickham. The split-apply-combine strategy for data analysis. *Journal of Statistical Software*, 40(1):1–29, 2011. doi:10.18637/jss.v040.i01.
- [Wic14] H. Wickham. Tidy data. *Journal of Statistical Software*, 59(10):1–23, 2014. doi:10.18637/jss.v059.i10.

- [Xie15] Y. Xie. *Dynamic Documents with R and knitr*. Chapman and Hall/CRC, 2015.